

Teach
Yourself[®]

LATIN GRAMMAR

YOU REALLY NEED TO KNOW



- Perfect your Latin translation
- Construct language logically
- Read the Classics with confidence

Gregory Klyve

Latin Grammar You Really Need to Know

This page intentionally left blank

Latin Grammar You Really Need to Know

Gregory Klyve

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd,
130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB.
Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454.
Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour
message answering service. Details about our titles and how to
order are available at www.teachyourself.com

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer
Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA.
Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill
Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada.
Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided
learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide –
the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 500 titles in the fields of
languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record
for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

**First published in UK 2002 as Teach Yourself Latin Grammar
by Hodder Education, part of Hachette UK, 338 Euston Road,
London NW1 3BH.**

First published in US 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2013.

The *Teach Yourself* name is a registered trade mark of Hachette UK.

Copyright © 2002, 2003 2010, 2013 Gregory Klyve

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK
copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or
transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical,
including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and
retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher
or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited.
Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction)
may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited,
of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States
Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced
or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database
or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the
publisher.

Typeset by Cenveo® Publisher Services.

Printed and bound by CPI Group (UK) Ltd, Croydon, CR0 4YY.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs
for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active
at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author
have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee
that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant,
decent or appropriate.

Hachette UK's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable
and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable
forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to
conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Year 2014 2013

Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| <i>Meet the author</i> | vii |
| Introduction | 1 |
| 1 Alphabet, pronunciation and terminology | 5 |
| 2 Tenses (indicative active) | 18 |
| 3 Nouns | 42 |
| 4 Cases | 69 |
| 5 Adjectives and adverbs | 94 |
| 6 Prepositions, conjunctions and numerals | 108 |
| 7 Pronouns and questions | 120 |
| 8 Passive and deponent verbs | 142 |
| 9 Subjunctive verbs | 153 |
| 10 Verbal nouns and adjectives (participles, gerunds, supines and gerundives) | 165 |
| 11 Infinitives and imperatives | 176 |
| 12 Impersonal, defective and irregular verbs | 187 |
| 13 Relative and temporal clauses, ablative absolute | 207 |
| 14 Final, consecutive and conditional clauses | 219 |
| 15 Indirect speech | 234 |
| 16 Other subordinate clauses (clauses of concession, cause, proviso, comparison, fear, doubt and prevention, and the use of <i>quin</i>) | 248 |
| 17 Miscellaneous (dates, money and measures, names, places, inscriptions, timeline, Latin today) | 261 |
| <i>Key to the exercises</i> | 281 |

This page intentionally left blank

Meet the author

I have been an enthusiast of the classical world since my early teenage school years in Wales when I first encountered the Romans and their language. I survived the kinaesthetic methods of my teacher who used to hurl books and wooden board rubbers at her pupils' heads, and was hooked on Latin for life.

My family moved to Blackpool in 1975 where I attended Blackpool Collegiate Grammar School. After doing O-levels in 1978 I concentrated on Latin, Greek and Ancient History for A-level and, following in the footsteps of my inspiring teacher, went to Exeter College, Oxford where I obtained a BA in *Literae Humaniores* (Classics) in 1984 and, after a break teaching, a doctorate in Greek Tragedy in 1995.

I have taught classical subjects at various schools and tutorial colleges since 1984 and have been Head of Classics at Sevenoaks School in Kent and The Leys School in Cambridge.

In addition to teaching, I write scripts for sketches, plays and short films and I am the co-author, with C.G. Oakley, of a comic novel *The Legend of Perseus* (Byronic Books 1989).

This page intentionally left blank

Introduction

How to use this book

Latin Grammar You Really Need to Know takes you through the principal elements of Classical Latin grammar in a graded series of units, starting with explanations and details of how Latin words are formed (known technically as **accidence**), from simple forms of verbs, through nouns, prepositions, adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions and pronouns to more complex forms of verbs, ending with an examination of the normal constructions found in Latin sentence structure (known technically as **syntax**). After the units on grammar there are some sections on Roman dates, money, weights and measures, names, history and the use of Latin today. It has been designed so that you can dip into the book at any point to study a particular piece of grammar, or progress through the book unit by unit from the beginning. It is assumed that you have access to a dictionary and that you will accumulate your own bank of Latin vocabulary as you work. Almost all the Latin words are translated for you. Remember that a dictionary will give all the various meanings of a word and you will need to pick the right one for the context.

You can consolidate your knowledge by attempting the exercises which accompany each unit. These exercises are geared to that particular unit and contain tests on the grammar point which is being examined. Exercises may also contain simple grammatical elements met in previous units as the book progresses. A key with all the answers is provided at the back of the book.

The contents of each unit will vary in size and difficulty. However, clear cross-references are made to other units which further explain

any important item which is mentioned but is not under direct scrutiny.

It is assumed that the reader does not have a knowledge of the technical terms used in grammar and so explanations for all of these are provided at appropriate points.

If you are only just starting Latin, then try to become familiar with grammatical terms as you meet them in the course of the units. Most importantly, do not worry if the terms seem long-winded. You will be able to cope with simple sentences fairly quickly. The wonderful thing about the Latin language is that it has a completely logical structure. Simply follow the examples and consolidation exercises carefully and remember that you are doing it at your own speed so there is no pressure of time and that you can always return to any unit to refresh your memory.

If you already have some knowledge of Latin and are using this book for revision purposes or because you need to read Latin documents for work or pleasure, or just to brush up what you know, then you will find the layout straightforward. Exhaustive detail has been deliberately avoided as this can be very confusing. If you are reading a work of Latin literature, then you should always use a good published commentary on the work. This book does not examine things like literary techniques or the metres of Latin verse.

One very important thing to remember throughout is that there is no word for ‘*a*’ or ‘*the*’ in Latin.

Latin sentences usually have a number of **clauses**. A clause is a group of words which form a sense unit and have a verb. One clause is always more important than the others and is called the **main clause**. The others are called **subordinate clauses** (see 1T for a detailed account). The verb of the main clause is called the **main verb** of a sentence.

Main clauses can stand on their own; subordinate clauses cannot: in ‘I ate the cakes which my mother had made’, ‘I ate the cakes’ is a complete sentence in its own right; ‘which my mother had made’ is a subordinate clause (in this case a relative clause), which cannot stand on its own.

Abbreviations:

| | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| abl. | ablative | nom. | nominative |
| acc. | accusative | n. | neuter |
| dat. | dative | pl. | plural |
| f. | feminine | s. | singular |
| gen. | genitive | voc. | vocative |
| m. | masculine | | |

This page intentionally left blank

Alphabet, pronunciation and terminology

In this chapter you should aim to

- *learn the pronunciation of the Latin alphabet*
- *gain a basic understanding of the grammatical terms used in this book*

Alphabet and pronunciation

There are 24 letters in the Latin alphabet. The Romans had no j or w. In writing, capitals are used for proper nouns and numerals, not to start sentences.

A Pronunciation

There are no silent letters in Latin and long vowels take about twice as long to say as short ones.

| | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
| A | <u>a</u> as in <u>f</u> ather when long, but as in <u>a</u> ct when short | G | <u>g</u> as in <u>g</u> oat, not as in genius |
| B | <u>b</u> as in <u>b</u> ut | H | <u>h</u> as in <u>h</u> ave |
| C | <u>c</u> as in <u>c</u> ut, not as in church, cider or lo <u>ch</u> | I | <u>i</u> as in <u>m</u> ach <u>i</u> ne when long, as in <u>p</u> it when short and as <u>y</u> in <u>y</u> et when used as a consonant |
| D | <u>d</u> as in <u>d</u> og | K | <u>k</u> as in <u>k</u> ing (this Greek letter [kappa] was used only in words of Greek origin) |
| E | <u>e</u> as in <u>pre</u> y when long, but as in <u>je</u> t when short. | | |
| F | <u>f</u> as in <u>f</u> ather | | |

| | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| L | <u>l</u> as in <u>long</u> | T | <u>t</u> as in <u>top</u> , not as in motion |
| M | <u>m</u> as in <u>mother</u> | U | <u>u</u> as in <u>food</u> when long but as in <u>put</u> when short |
| N | <u>n</u> as in <u>newt</u> , but, before c, g and qu it is pronounced <u>ng</u> , as in <u>sing</u> | V | <u>v</u> as in wine, although the Hindi pronunciation of <u>v</u> is closer |
| O | <u>o</u> as in <u>tone</u> (although the French <u>o</u> in <u>ch<u>o</u>se</u> is closer) when long, as in <u>h<u>o</u>t</u> when short | X | <u>x</u> as in <u>ax<u>e</u></u> , not as in exact |
| P | <u>p</u> as in <u>pat</u> | Y | <u>y</u> as in the French <u>vu</u> (this Greek letter [<u>upsilon</u>] was used only in words of Greek origin) |
| Q | <u>q</u> as in <u>queen</u> and always followed by u, as in English | Z | <u>z</u> as in <u>zoo</u> (this Greek letter [<u>zeta</u>] was used only in words of Greek origin) |
| R | <u>r</u> is always rolled, as in Italian | | |
| S | <u>s</u> as in <u>sun</u> , not as in was, treasure or sugar | | |

B Diphthongs are combinations of vowels making one sound.

In Latin they are all long:

ae pronounced ai as in aisle, e.g. praeda → *booty*

au pronounced ou as in house, e.g. aurum → *gold*

oe pronounced oi as in boil, e.g. poena → *penalty*

ei pronounced ei as in reign. Only found in the exclamations ei! eia! heia! → *oh! aba!*

eu pronounced ew as in pew, e.g. seu → *whether*

ui pronounced wea as in weak, e.g. huic → *to this*

The diphthongs ei, eu and ui are rare. Mostly when these vowel combinations are found they are pronounced separately, as in tui → *yours* (pronounced two-ee), fluit → *it flows* (flew-it), mei → *mine* (meyee) and deus → *god* (de-yus). When the u follows the letter q it is pronounced w, as in English.

C Consonantal i and u

- In some Latin words the letter i is pronounced as the consonant y at the beginning or even in the middle of words, e.g. coniungo (*I join together*: pronounced con-yungo) and iam (*already*: pronounced yam). In the English derivatives of many of these words the consonantal i becomes the letter j,

e.g. juvenile comes from **iuvenis** (*young man*), judicial comes from **iudicium** (*judgement*), joke comes from **iocus** (*joke*) and the name Julius from **Iulius**.

- ▶ The Romans made no distinction between **v** and **u** when writing so, for example, in an inscription you might find **EQVVS** for **equus** → *horse*. Some published texts still make no distinction so you may find **uinum** for **vinum** → *wine*.

D When **t**, **c** or **p** are followed by an **h**, they are called aspirated consonants **th**, **ch** and **ph**. They come from the Greek letters *theta*, *chi* and *phi* and exist in Latin words which come from Greek. They should be pronounced as an emphasized version of the letters without the **h** but in practice **th** and **ph** are often pronounced as in the English **thin** and **photo** and **ch** as in the Scottish **loch**.

E Length of vowels and syllables

- ▶ In English the stressed vowel of a word is usually lengthened while unstressed ones are not, e.g. *cider*, *boredom*. In a Latin word, however, any of the vowels may be either long or short. In dictionaries and textbooks the long vowels are usually marked out by a line over the top of the vowel called a macron (ˉ). In some cases, it is important to know whether a vowel is long or short, especially in verse, but when you come to read Latin documents you will not find any distinguishing marks over long vowels. In this book there are no marks used over vowels for the exercises and readers do not need to include them. In the explanatory matter, long syllables are marked when they are of importance.
- ▶ The length of a **syllable**, as opposed to a vowel, is important to know for verse. A syllable is **long** if it has a long vowel or a diphthong, or ends in two consonants, the letter **x** or a single consonant if the next word also begins with a consonant. All other syllables are **short**.

F Stress accent

- ▶ In Latin the stress accent (*ictus*) falls on the first syllable of two syllabled words, e.g. **pater** → *father*. It falls only rarely on the last syllable, e.g. **illic** → *to there* (for **illice**).

- ▶ In words of more than two syllables the ictus is on the last but one (**penultimate**) syllable if that syllable is **long**, e.g. **corruptum** → *corrupted*, but on the one before that (**antepenultimate**) if it is short, e.g. **militibus** → *for the soldiers*.
-

Verbs: essential terminology

Verbs refer to actions (e.g. *I carry*) and are divided into four categories, depending on their usage: moods, voices, tenses and persons.

Brief explanations follow of the terms which you will meet most often when studying verbs. It is important to be familiar with them but do not expect to understand them all straight away.

G Mood

There are four moods. The first three are called **finite** moods because each part of the verb in these moods is limited to a particular **person** (see J).

- ▶ The **indicative mood** is generally used for making statements and asking questions (e.g. *Grass grows. Where is he going?*). The **main verb** (see Introduction) of a Latin sentence will usually be in the indicative mood.
- ▶ The **imperative mood** is used to give commands (Unit 11).
- ▶ The **subjunctive mood** is used mainly as a verb in **subordinate clauses** (see T), often to express anticipated or conditional actions. On the less common occasions when it is a main verb, it usually expresses a wish and is often found in mottos (Unit 9).
- ▶ The **infinitive mood** is so called because no part of the verb is limited to a particular **person** (see J). This mood includes the **infinitive** (Unit 11), **participle**, **gerundive**, **gerund** and **supine** (Unit 10).

H There are two voices:

Verbs have two ‘voices’, *active* and *passive*. In English the sense of the passive is conveyed by the verb *to be* and a participle: ‘*The man*

was *bitten* by the dog.’ In Latin the sense of the passive is conveyed by verb endings.

- ▶ The **active** voice is used when the **subject** (Unit 4A2) of the sentence or clause is performing the action of the verb, e.g. *The elephant chases the mouse.*
- ▶ The **passive** voice (Unit 8) is used when the subject is experiencing the action of the verb, e.g. *The elephant is chased by the mouse.*

I There are six **tenses** (see Unit 2):

A **tense** refers to the time when the action of a verb takes place.

- ▶ **Present** (Unit 2A–F)
- ▶ **Imperfect** (Unit 2J–K)
- ▶ **Future** (Unit 2G–I)
- ▶ **Perfect** (Unit 2L–R)
- ▶ **Future perfect** (Unit 2U–W)
- ▶ **Pluperfect** (Unit 2S–T)

A tense can be either active or passive as well as being either indicative or subjunctive. By convention, if mood and voice are not stated then the tense is indicative and active.

J Person

In each **tense** six **persons** can perform the action:

- 1st person singular:** I
- 2nd person singular:** you (when one person performs the action)
- 3rd person singular:** he, she, it (depending on the context)
- 1st person plural:** we
- 2nd person plural:** you (when two or more people perform the action)
- 3rd person plural:** they

In English we sometimes use a pronoun before the verb (we walk, she sits etc.). In Latin this is not needed because the ending of the verb changes to let us know who is doing it. These endings

are called **personal endings** (see under the units on separate tenses).

K Principal parts

The principal parts of a Latin verb enable us to recognize the various parts of that verb when we meet it in our reading and tell us what conjugation a verb belongs to.

When you look for a verb in your dictionary you will find four Latin words in the entry, followed by the meaning. Sometimes they are written out in full (e.g. **porto, portare, portavi, portatum: I carry**) or they can be abbreviated (e.g. **porto -are -avi -atum: I carry**). These are called the **principal parts** because their **stems** are the bases for every form of that verb. Learn every principal part when you meet a verb.

- 1 The **1st person singular of the present (indicative active)** (Unit 2B), e.g. **porto: I carry**.
- 2 The **present (active) infinitive** (Unit 11B), e.g. **portare: to carry**.
- 3 The **1st person singular of the perfect (indicative active)** (Unit 2N), e.g. **portavi: I carried**.
- 4 The **supine** (e.g. **portatum**), which ends in **-um** and has no equivalent in English (Unit 10G), or, occasionally, as in the Cambridge Latin Course, the **perfect passive participle** (Unit 10C), e.g. **portatus: carried**.

L Conjugation (See Unit 2)

A **conjugation** is a group of verbs which share similarities in appearance (not in meaning or usage). There are four in Latin and you can identify which conjugation a verb belongs to by examining the endings of its first two **principal parts**:

- ▶ The **first conjugation** verbs end in **-o -āre**, like **porto portāre** (*carry*) (Unit 2C).
- ▶ The **second conjugation** verbs end in **-ēo -ēre**, like **habēo habēre** (*have*) (Unit 2D).
- ▶ The **third conjugation** verbs end in **-o -ere**, like **rego regere** (*rule*) (Unit 2E).

N.B. Some verbs of the third conjugation end **-io -ere**, like **capio capere** (*take*) (Unit 2E).

- ▶ The **fourth conjugation** verbs end in **-io -ire**, like **audio audire** (*hear*) (Unit 2F).

M Verbs taking a **direct object** in the **accusative** are called **transitive**; others are called **intransitive**. (See Units 4B1 and 4D1.)

Nouns: essential terminology

Brief explanations follow of the terms which you will meet most often when studying nouns, and other words which decline. It is important to be familiar with them but do not expect to understand them all straight away.

N A **noun** is the name of a person, place, thing or quality. **Proper nouns** are used for the names of particular people or places, e.g. Caesar or Rome. **Concrete nouns** name things which exist in the physical universe (e.g. table or elephant), while **abstract nouns** name qualities that exist only as a mental concept (e.g. wisdom or mercy).

O Number

If a noun is referring to one thing, it is **singular**. If it refers to more than one thing it is **plural**. Some nouns only have a plural, e.g. **arma** (*arms*), **nuptiae** (*marriage*) and **moenia** (*city walls*). Some have only a singular, e.g. **aurum** (*gold*).

P Case (see Unit 4)

The term ‘case’ is grammatical shorthand for the different situations that alter the endings of nouns and adjectives. English has the remnants of a case system in its pronouns.

Latin nouns have six cases, in the singular and plural, which are different forms of the noun used in different contexts. They are:

► **Nominative** (Unit 4A1-3)

This case is used for the **subject** of sentences and for the **complement**. It is the ‘name’ of the noun and is the case you will find first in a dictionary entry.

► **Vocative** (Unit 4A4)

The vocative is the case used when someone is addressing someone else directly. It is almost always the same as the nominative.

► **Accusative** (Unit 4B1-6)

The accusative is used for the **direct object** of verbs, after certain **prepositions**, for expressing duration of time or motion towards something and adverbially. Prepositions are words like *in*, *through*, *with* that describe the relationship of one noun/pronoun to another (see Unit 6A-D).

► **Genitive** (Unit 4C1-8)

The genitive case is used to denote possession (of) but it has a very wide range of meanings beyond this and it contains the **stem** of the noun (see R below).

► **Dative** (Unit 4D1-7)

The dative case is used for the **indirect object** (to or for), but it has a very wide range of meanings beyond this.

► **Ablative** (Unit 4E1-17)

The ablative expresses means, association or separation (by, with or from), but it has a very wide range of meanings beyond these. It is also used after certain **prepositions**.

There is also a specialized case called the **locative**, which is used to denote ‘at’ a particular place (Unit 4F).

Q Gender

- In English, nouns which have genders are those which are obviously either male or female, like man, woman, boy, girl, stallion, mare and so on. Sometimes we also apply gender to inanimate objects like calling a ship, a country or even a car ‘she’.

- ▶ **Fourth declension** nouns: mostly masculine with some feminines and neuters. (Unit 3O–Q)

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| nominative ending -us for | genitive ending -ūs |
| masculine and feminine and | |
| -u for neuter | |
- ▶ **Fifth declension** nouns: all feminine except for one masculine (**dies**: *day*). (Unit 3R)

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| nominative ending -es | genitive ending -eī |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|

NB Do not confuse this genitive ending with that of the second declension whose nominative never ends in **-es**.

Subordinate clauses

T **Simple** sentences make a statement or ask a question in the **indicative**, express a wish in the **subjunctive** or give an order in the **imperative**.

- ▶ In **complex** sentences we encounter more than one clause and one clause almost always has a more important status than the other(s). This is called the **main clause** and the others are called **subordinate clauses**. The arrangement of these clauses is called **syntax** (Units 13–16).
- ▶ The **main clause** can stand on its own and still make sense whereas a **subordinate clause** cannot, e.g. *While I was cooking dinner, the dog stole the cakes*. In this sentence you can identify the main clause, which is *the dog stole the cakes*, because it can stand on its own and still make sense. However, the other clause, *while I was cooking dinner*, does not make complete sense on its own and so is a subordinate clause. The important idea in the sentence is that the dog stole the cakes while the subordinate clause simply sets the main clause in a context. It tells us at what point the dog stole the cakes and what else was going on at the time.
- ▶ Latin sentences are usually much longer than English ones, sometimes as long as a paragraph. They may therefore contain a large number of subordinate clauses. When you

are translating into English, it is a good idea to split a Latin sentence up into a number of smaller English ones to avoid a cumbersome result.

- ▶ Subordinate clauses in English are usually linked to the main clause by a conjunction and this is frequently the same in Latin.

U The key to understanding subordinate clauses lies in the verbs. Each subordinate clause is governed by its own verb. That verb is commonly a **finite** one, often a subjunctive, as in **final clauses** and **consecutive clauses** (Unit 14), **clauses of fearing** and **clauses of doubting** (Unit 16) and **indirect questions** (Unit 15). Indicative verbs are found in some subordinate clauses like **causal** and **concessive clauses** (Unit 16). However, the verb may also be a participle, as in the case of the **ablative absolute** (Unit 13) or an infinitive, as in the **indirect statement** (Unit 15).

Once you have identified the main verb (or verbs) and clause of a sentence, look for all the other verbs, which will be the foundations of the subordinate clauses.

V **Relative clauses** (Unit 13) are also called **adjectival clauses** because they qualify a word or idea in another clause, like an adjective. **Relative particles** like **ubi** (*where*) also introduce adjectival clauses.

W Those clauses known as **adverbial clauses** qualify the main clause like an adverb, answering questions such as *how?*, *why?* or *when?*

- ▶ **Consecutive clauses** (Unit 14): *so that, with the result that*
- ▶ **Final clauses** (Unit 14): *in order that*
- ▶ **Causal clauses** (Unit 16): *because*
- ▶ **Temporal clauses** (Unit 13): *when, until*
- ▶ **Conditional clauses** (Unit 14): *if, unless*
- ▶ **Concessive clauses** (Unit 16): *although, even if*
- ▶ **Clauses of proviso** (Unit 16): *provided that*
- ▶ **Comparisons** (Unit 16): *as, as if, as though*
- ▶ **Clauses of fear** (Unit 16): *lest*

X The **indirect statement, indirect question, indirect command** and **indirect wish** (Unit 15) are called **substantival clauses** because they stand like a noun in relation to the main verb.

Y Sequence of tenses

The tense of the Latin verb in a subordinate clause is not necessarily the same as it would be in English. In Latin something called the **sequence of tenses** is applied. There are exceptions to it but the broad principle is that:

- ▶ If a verb is in the present, future or future perfect indicative or the imperative or in the present or perfect subjunctive, then it is said to be in **primary sequence**.
- ▶ If a verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect indicative or subjunctive, then it is said to be in **historic sequence**.
- ▶ The perfect indicative tense straddles these definitions. If it is used to mean, e.g. *I have eaten* then it has some reference to the present and so is **primary**. If it is used simply to mean e.g. *I ate*, then it has no reference to the present and so is **historic**.
- ▶ If the main verb is **primary**, then it is followed by a verb in a primary tense in the subordinate clause. On the other hand, if a main verb is **historic**, it is followed by a verb in a historic tense in the subordinate clause.
- ▶ In subordinate clauses, the present and imperfect subjunctive tenses are used for incomplete action, while the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive tenses are used for completed action.

Points to remember

- 1 Latin uses the Greek letters th (theta), k (kappa), y (upsilon), ph (phi) and ch (chi) only when writing words of Greek origin.
- 2 There are no silent letters in Latin. Everything is pronounced.

- 3** Latin verbs have four moods: indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and infinitive.
- 4** Latin verbs have six tenses: present, future, imperfect, perfect, future perfect and pluperfect.
- 5** Latin verbs have two voices: active and passive.
- 6** Latin verbs and nouns have two numbers: singular and plural.
- 7** Latin verbs are grouped into four separate conjugations which share similarities in formation but not in meaning. The conjugation of each may be identified from the present infinitive (the second principal part of the verb).
- 8** Latin nouns come in three genders: masculine feminine and neuter.
- 9** Latin nouns are grouped into five separate declensions which share similarities in appearance but not in meaning. The declension of each may be identified from the genitive singular.
- 10** Latin sentences generally have one main clause and one or more subordinate clauses.

2

Tenses (indicative active)

In this chapter you should aim to

- *learn what tenses are used for*
 - *learn how Latin tenses are formed*
 - *recognize the endings of the tenses*
 - *gain a basic vocabulary of verbs*
 - *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*
-

Latin verbs can be split into a stem, which carries the meaning, and an ending, which denotes the person, tense, mood, voice etc. For example, in **porto**, *I carry*, **port-** is the stem and **-o** conveys the sense of 'I', present tense, indicative, active.

Present tense

Endings and the first conjugation.

- A** The **present tense** refers to actions which occur in the present. We can express this in different ways in English, e.g. *I am going to school*, *I go to school*, or even, *I do go to school*. These English expressions have slightly different meanings. Latin, however, only uses one word for all three versions and so the particular meaning must be worked out from the context.
- B** In English we sometimes use a pronoun, e.g. *we*, *you*, or *they*, to explain who is performing an action before using the verb itself (e.g. *we wait*). In Latin this is not always done because the endings of the verb change to let us know who

is performing the action. These endings are called **personal endings**. These are the personal endings for the present tenses of all the conjugations:

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1st person singular | -o | <i>I</i> |
| 2nd person singular | -s | <i>you (singular)</i> |
| 3rd person singular | -t | <i>he/she/it</i> |
| 1st person plural | -mus | <i>we</i> |
| 2nd person plural | -tis | <i>you (plural)</i> |
| 3rd person plural | -nt | <i>they</i> |

C The **first conjugation** verbs can be recognized by the characteristic letter **a** which occurs in the present infinitive **-are** (the second principal part), e.g. **laborare** (*to work*), **amare** (*to love*), **ambulare** (*to walk*) and **portare** (*to carry*).

The **present stem** of these verbs also ends in **-a** and this can be seen in all the persons except the 1st person singular.

- This is the **present tense of the first conjugation**. Notice the characteristic letter **a** at the end of the stem before all personal endings except the first. Remember also that in English there are different ways of expressing the present tense. The verb used in the example is **porto -are -avi -atum: carry**:

| | | |
|---------------------|----------|--|
| 1st person singular | porto | <i>I carry / am carrying</i> |
| 2nd person singular | portas | <i>you (s.) carry / are carrying</i> |
| 3rd person singular | portat | <i>he/she/it carries / is carrying</i> |
| 1st person plural | portamus | <i>we carry / are carrying</i> |
| 2nd person plural | portatis | <i>you (pl.) carry / are carrying</i> |
| 3rd person plural | portant | <i>they carry / are carrying</i> |

Second, third and fourth conjugations.

D The **second conjugation** can be recognized by the characteristic long letter **e** in the present infinitive **-ere** (second principal part). Notice also that there is an **ē** in the stem before all of the personal endings in the present tense, e.g. **habeo habere** (*have*) and **teneo tenere** (*hold*).

| | | | |
|-------|----------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| habeo | <i>I have</i> | habemus | <i>we have</i> |
| habes | <i>you (s.) have</i> | habetis | <i>you (pl.) have</i> |
| habet | <i>he/she/it has</i> | habent | <i>they have</i> |

E The third conjugation is recognizable by the short letter *e* in the present infinitive **-ere** (second principal part), e.g. **ago agere** (*do*), **rego regere** (*rule*) and **dico dicere** (*say*). In the present tense these verbs have a letter *i* before the personal endings, except the 1st person singular (*I*) and the 3rd person plural (*they*).

| | | | |
|------|-----------------------|--------|---------------------|
| ago | <i>I do</i> | agimus | <i>we do</i> |
| agis | <i>you (s.) do</i> | agitis | <i>you (pl.) do</i> |
| agit | <i>he/she/it does</i> | agunt | <i>they do</i> |

- There are some verbs which are technically in the **third conjugation** but which have an *i* before all the personal endings in the present tense and so resemble the fourth conjugation (see F), e.g. **capio capere** (*take*), **facio facere** (*make*) and **iacio iacere** (*throw*).

| | | | |
|-------|------------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| capio | <i>I take</i> | capimus | <i>we take</i> |
| capis | <i>you (s.) take</i> | capitis | <i>you (pl.) take</i> |
| capit | <i>he/she/it takes</i> | capiunt | <i>they take</i> |

F The **fourth conjugation** is distinguished by the letter *i* in the present infinitive **-ire** (second principal part) and before all of the personal endings, e.g. **audio audire** (*hear*), **custodio custodire** (*guard*).

| | | | |
|-------|------------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| audio | <i>I hear</i> | audimus | <i>we hear</i> |
| audis | <i>you (s.) hear</i> | auditis | <i>you (pl.) hear</i> |
| audit | <i>he/she/it hears</i> | audiunt | <i>they hear</i> |

Future tense

First and second conjugations.

G The **future tense** refers to actions that will happen in the future. In English we usually use the words *will* or *shall*

before the verb, e.g. *I shall go*. Normally, the word *shall* is used before the 1st person (singular and plural) and the word *will* is used before the 2nd and 3rd persons (singular and plural). However, when special emphasis is intended, the words are used the other way round, e.g. *You shall go to the ball, Cinderella*. We also use the present tense of the verb *to go* plus an infinitive to indicate future plans (e.g. *I am going to buy a computer*). In Latin the ending of the verb changes.

H In the **first and second conjugations** the **future** endings (placed on the **present stem**) are:

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | -bo | 1st person plural | -bimus |
| 2nd person singular | -bis | 2nd person plural | -bitis |
| 3rd person singular | -bit | 3rd person plural | -bunt |

- ▶ The future tense of the **first conjugation** is as follows. Notice that the stem contains the characteristic letter **a** which distinguishes this conjugation.

| | |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| portabo | <i>I shall carry</i> |
| portabis | <i>you (s.) will carry</i> |
| portabit | <i>he/she/it will carry</i> |
| portabimus | <i>we shall carry</i> |
| portabitis | <i>you (pl.) will carry</i> |
| portabunt | <i>they will carry</i> |

- ▶ The future tense of the **second conjugation** is as follows. Notice that the stem contains the characteristic letter **e** which distinguishes this conjugation.

| | |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| habebo | <i>I shall have</i> |
| habebis | <i>you (s.) will have</i> |
| habebit | <i>he/she/it will have</i> |
| habebimus | <i>we shall have</i> |
| habebitis | <i>you (pl.) will have</i> |
| habebunt | <i>they will have</i> |

Third and fourth conjugations.

I In the **third** and **fourth** conjugations the endings of the **future tense** (placed on the present stem) are:

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1st person singular | -am | 1st person plural | -ēmus |
| 2nd person singular | -ēs | 2nd person plural | -ētis |
| 3rd person singular | -et | 3rd person plural | -ent |

- ▶ The future tense of the **third conjugation** is as follows. Be careful not to confuse the future tense of the third conjugation with the present tense of the second conjugation (see D).

| | |
|--------|--------------------------|
| agam | <i>I shall do</i> |
| ages | <i>you (s.) will do</i> |
| aget | <i>he/she/it will do</i> |
| agemus | <i>we shall do</i> |
| agetis | <i>you (pl.) will do</i> |
| agent | <i>they will do</i> |

- ▶ The future tense of verbs in the **third conjugation** which resemble those in the fourth conjugation, like **capio** (see E), keeps the letter **i** before the endings. For example:

| | |
|----------|----------------------------|
| capiam | <i>I shall take</i> |
| capies | <i>you (s.) will take</i> |
| capiet | <i>he/she/it will take</i> |
| capiemus | <i>we shall take</i> |
| capietis | <i>you (pl.) will take</i> |
| capient | <i>they will take</i> |

- ▶ The future tense of the **fourth conjugation** is as follows. Notice the characteristic letter **i** before the endings.

| | |
|----------|----------------------------|
| audiam | <i>I shall hear</i> |
| audies | <i>you (s.) will hear</i> |
| audiet | <i>he/she/it will hear</i> |
| audiemus | <i>we shall hear</i> |
| audietis | <i>you (pl.) will hear</i> |
| audient | <i>they will hear</i> |

Imperfect tense

J Imperfect means incomplete and the **imperfect tense** is used for actions in the past which did not get finished, went on regularly, lasted for some time before they ended or only just got started; as opposed to single actions which were completed in one go (see L). There is a variety of ways of using an imperfect tense in English:

- ▶ 'I was locking the stable door when the horse bolted.' I did not finish locking the door so the action is imperfect.
- ▶ 'I used to lock the stable door whenever the horse bolted.' I habitually locked the door so the action is imperfect.

We can use the simple past tense if it is clear that the action took place over a period of time, e.g. 'I wrote in my diary every day.'

K The **personal endings** of the **imperfect tense** for all the conjugations are:

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | -bam | 1st person plural | -bamus |
| 2nd person singular | -bas | 2nd person plural | -batis |
| 3rd person singular | -bat | 3rd person plural | -bant |

- ▶ The imperfect tenses are as follows:

| <i>First conjugation</i> | | <i>Second conjugation</i> | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| portabam | <i>I was carrying</i> | habebam | <i>I was having</i> |
| portabas | <i>you (s.) were carrying</i> | habebas | <i>you (s.) were having</i> |
| portabat | <i>he/she/it was carrying</i> | habebat | <i>he/she/it was having</i> |
| portabamus | <i>we were carrying</i> | habebamus | <i>we were having</i> |
| portabatis | <i>you (pl.) were carrying</i> | habebatis | <i>you (pl.) were having</i> |
| portabant | <i>they were carrying</i> | habebant | <i>they were having</i> |

Third conjugation

Fourth conjugation

| | | | |
|----------|-----------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| agebam | <i>I was doing</i> | audiebam | <i>I was hearing</i> |
| agebas | <i>you (s.) were doing</i> | audiebas | <i>you (s.) were hearing</i> |
| agebat | <i>he/she/it was doing</i> | audiebat | <i>he/she/it was hearing</i> |
| agebamus | <i>we were doing</i> | audiebamus | <i>we were hearing</i> |
| agebatis | <i>you (pl.) were doing</i> | audiebatis | <i>you (pl.) were hearing</i> |
| agebant | <i>they were doing</i> | audiebant | <i>they were hearing</i> |

Perfect tense

Formation and first conjugation.

L The **perfect tense** refers mostly to single, completed actions in the past. In English we use either the past tense on its own or together with the verbs *have* or *did*, e.g. *I carried*, *I have carried* or *I did carry*. There is an important difference between saying *I carried* and *I have carried*. ‘I have carried’ suggests that the action took place in the past (often the recent past) and that its consequences are still important in the present, e.g. *I have opened the box* suggests that the contents of the box are now of immediate interest in the present. *I opened the box* could refer to any time in the past and does not have the same suggestion that the contents of the box are of immediate relevance to the present.

M The perfect tense is formed from the **third principal part** (see Unit 1K) which is the 1st person singular of the perfect indicative active. The **perfect stem** is that part of the word before the ending **-i**.

N The **personal endings** for the **perfect tense** of all conjugations are:

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | -ī | 1st person plural | -imus |
| 2nd person singular | -istī | 2nd person plural | -istis |
| 3rd person singular | -it | 3rd person plural | -ērunt |

O First conjugation

- ▶ As a general rule the perfect stem of the first conjugation ends in **-av-**:

| | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| portavi | <i>I carried/have carried</i> |
| portavisti | <i>you (s.) carried/have carried</i> |
| portavit | <i>he/she/it carried/has carried</i> |
| portavimus | <i>we carried/have carried</i> |
| portavistis | <i>you (pl.) carried/have carried</i> |
| portaverunt | <i>they carried/have carried</i> |

- ▶ Some common verbs of the **first conjugation** have different perfect stems, but their endings are always the same, e.g. **do, dare, dedi, datum** (*give*), **sto, stare, steti, statum** (*stand*) and **seco, secare, secui, sectum** (*cut*).

Second, third and fourth conjugations.

P Second conjugation

- ▶ As a general rule the perfect stem of the second conjugation ends in **-u-**:

| | | | |
|----------|------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| habui | <i>I had/have had</i> | habuimus | <i>we had/have had</i> |
| habuisti | <i>you (s.) had/have had</i> | habuistis | <i>you (pl.) had/have had</i> |
| habuit | <i>he/she/it had/has had</i> | habuerunt | <i>they had/have had</i> |

- ▶ Some common verbs of the **second conjugation** have different perfect stems, but their endings are always the same, e.g. **fleo, flere, flevi, fletum** (*weep*), **rideo, ridere, risi, risum** (*laugh*) and **mordeo, mordere, momordi, morsum** (*bite*).

Q Third conjugation

- ▶ The perfect stem of the **third conjugation** has a variety of endings, mostly consonants. In some verbs the vowel of the stem also changes, as in our model verb **ago, agere, egi, actum** (*do*):

| | | | |
|--------|-------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------|
| egi | <i>I did/have done</i> | egimus | <i>we did/have done</i> |
| egisti | <i>you (s.) did/have done</i> | egistis | <i>you (pl.) did/have done</i> |
| egit | <i>he/she/it did/has done</i> | egerunt | <i>they did/have done</i> |

- ▶ The variety of stems can be seen from this selection: **premo**, **premere**, **pressi**, **pressum** (*press*); **rego**, **regere**, **rexī**, **rectum** (*rule*); **colo**, **colere**, **colui**, **cultum** (*worship*); **cresco**, **crecere**, **crevi**, **cretum** (*grow*); **peto**, **petere**, **petivi**, **petitum** (*seek*); **cado**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **casum** (*fall*); **acuō**, **acuere**, **acui**, **acutum** (*sharpen*) and **capio**, **capere**, **cepi**, **captum** (*take*).

R Fourth conjugation

- ▶ The perfect stem of the fourth conjugation is usually **-iv-** or **-i-**:

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| audivi or audii | <i>I heard/have heard</i> |
| audivisti or audiisti | <i>you (s.) heard/have heard</i> |
| audivit or audiit | <i>he/she/it heard/has heard</i> |
| audivimus or audiimus | <i>we heard/have heard</i> |
| audivistis or audiistis | <i>you (pl.) heard/have heard</i> |
| audiverunt or audierunt | <i>they heard/have heard</i> |

- ▶ Some of these verbs have different perfect stems, e.g. **aperio**, **aperire**, **aperui**, **apertum** (*open*); **haurio**, **haurire**, **hausi**, **haustum** (*drain*) and **venio**, **venire**, **veni**, **ventum** (*come*).

Pluperfect tense

- S** The **pluperfect tense** is expressed in English by using *had* before the past participle of the verb to indicate an action which occurred at two stages back in the past, e.g. *When the horse had bolted, I shut the stable door*. The shutting of the door took place in the past and the horse bolting took place at a stage even further back in the past, so the pluperfect is used.

T The **pluperfect tense** is formed by adding the following **personal endings** onto a verb's **perfect stem** (see M):

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | -eram | 1st person plural | -eramus |
| 2nd person singular | -eras | 2nd person plural | -eratis |
| 3rd person singular | -erat | 3rd person plural | -erant |

► The following are examples of the **pluperfect tense** from each conjugation:

| <i>First conjugation</i> | | <i>Second conjugation</i> | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| portaveram | <i>I had carried</i> | habueram | <i>I had had</i> |
| portaveras | <i>you (s.) had carried</i> | habueras | <i>you (s.) had had</i> |
| portaverat | <i>he/she/it had carried</i> | habuerat | <i>he/she/it had had</i> |
| portaveramus | <i>we had carried</i> | habueramus | <i>we had had</i> |
| portaveratis | <i>you (pl.) had carried</i> | habueratis | <i>you (pl.) had had</i> |
| portaverant | <i>they had carried</i> | habuerant | <i>they had had</i> |
| <i>Third conjugation</i> | | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> | |
| egeram | <i>I had done</i> | audi(v)eram | <i>I had heard</i> |
| egeras | <i>you (s.) had done</i> | audi(v)eras | <i>you (s.) had heard</i> |
| egerat | <i>he/she/it had done</i> | audi(v)erat | <i>he/she/it had heard</i> |
| egeramus | <i>we had done</i> | audi(v)eramus | <i>we had heard</i> |
| egeratis | <i>you (pl.) had done</i> | audi(v)eratis | <i>you (pl.) had heard</i> |
| egerant | <i>they had done</i> | audi(v)erant | <i>they had heard</i> |

Future perfect tense

U The **future perfect tense** refers to an action which will have taken place by a certain time in the future. In English, as the name of the tense suggests, we use the auxiliary verbs *will*

(the future element) and *have* (the perfect element), e.g. *They will have decided by the end of the day.*

V The **future perfect tense** is formed by adding the following **personal endings** onto a verb's **perfect stem** (see M):

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | -ero | 1st person plural | -erimus |
| 2nd person singular | -eris | 2nd person plural | -eritis |
| 3rd person singular | -erit | 3rd person plural | -erint |

W The following are examples of the future perfect tense from each conjugation:

| <i>First conjugation</i> | | <i>Second conjugation</i> | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| portavero | <i>I shall have carried</i> | habuero | <i>I shall have had</i> |
| portaveris | <i>you (s.) will have carried</i> | habueris | <i>you (s.) will have had</i> |
| portaverit | <i>he/she/it will have carried</i> | habuerit | <i>he/she/it will have had</i> |
| portaverimus | <i>we shall have carried</i> | habuerimus | <i>we shall have had</i> |
| portaveritis | <i>you (pl.) will have carried</i> | habueritis | <i>you (pl.) will have had</i> |
| portaverint | <i>they will have carried</i> | habuerint | <i>they will have had</i> |

| <i>Third conjugation</i> | | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| egero | <i>I shall have done</i> | audi(v)ero | <i>I shall have heard</i> |
| egeris | <i>you (s.) will have done</i> | audi(v)eris | <i>you (s.) will have heard</i> |
| egerit | <i>he/she/it will have done</i> | audi(v)erit | <i>he/she/it will have heard</i> |
| egerimus | <i>we shall have done</i> | audi(v)-erimus | <i>we shall have heard</i> |
| egeritis | <i>you (pl.) will have done</i> | audi(v)eritis | <i>you (pl.) will have heard</i> |
| egerint | <i>they will have done</i> | audi(v)erint | <i>they will have heard</i> |

The verb 'to be'

- X** The verb **sum, esse, fui** (there is no supine (see Unit 10G)) (*to be*) is irregular in formation. The **indicative** tenses follow. For the **subjunctive** tenses and other moods, see Unit 12P.

► Present tense

| | |
|-------|----------------------|
| sum | <i>I am</i> |
| es | <i>you (s.) are</i> |
| est | <i>he/she/it is</i> |
| sumus | <i>we are</i> |
| estis | <i>you (pl.) are</i> |
| sunt | <i>they are</i> |

► Future tense

| | |
|--------|--------------------------|
| ero | <i>I shall be</i> |
| eris | <i>you (s.) will be</i> |
| erit | <i>he/she/it will be</i> |
| erimus | <i>we shall be</i> |
| eritis | <i>you (pl.) will be</i> |
| erunt | <i>they will be</i> |

► Imperfect tense

| | |
|--------|-----------------------|
| eram | <i>I was</i> |
| eras | <i>you (s.) were</i> |
| erat | <i>he/she/it was</i> |
| eramus | <i>we were</i> |
| eratis | <i>you (pl.) were</i> |
| erant | <i>they were</i> |

► Perfect tense

| | |
|---------|----------------------------|
| fui | <i>I have been</i> |
| fuisti | <i>you (s.) have been</i> |
| fuit | <i>he/she/it has been</i> |
| fuiimus | <i>we have been</i> |
| fuistis | <i>you (pl.) have been</i> |
| fuerunt | <i>they have been</i> |

► Pluperfect tense

| | |
|----------|---------------------------|
| fueram | <i>I had been</i> |
| fueras | <i>you (s.) had been</i> |
| fuerat | <i>he/she/it had been</i> |
| fueramus | <i>we had been</i> |
| fueratis | <i>you (pl.) had been</i> |
| fuerant | <i>they had been</i> |

► Future perfect tense

| | |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| fuiro | <i>I shall have been</i> |
| fueris | <i>you (s.) will have been</i> |
| fuerit | <i>he/she/it will have been</i> |
| fuerimus | <i>we shall have been</i> |
| fueritis | <i>you (pl.) will have been</i> |
| fuerint | <i>they will have been</i> |

Y Word order

- ▶ At the beginning of a sentence without a specific **subject** (see Unit 4A2), e.g. **est canis in horto**: *there is a dog in the garden.*
- ▶ After a subject; immediately after or at the end of a clause (see Introduction), e.g. **canis est in via**, or **canis in via est**: *a dog is in the street.*

Notice the difference in meaning when the verb comes at the beginning.

- ▶ With a noun and its complement (see Unit 4A3), e.g. **Caesar imperator erat** → *Caesar was a general.*

1 Who is performing the action of these verbs?

e.g. **laboramus** (work) → *we work*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a orant (<i>beg</i>) | f paratis (<i>prepare</i>) |
| b dat (<i>give</i>) | g das (<i>give</i>) |
| c curas (<i>care</i>) | h stamus (<i>stand</i>) |
| d poto (<i>drink</i>) | i laborat (<i>work</i>) |
| e probamus (<i>approve</i>) | j potant (<i>drink</i>) |

2 Write out the present tense of these verbs.

e.g. **ambulo** (*I walk*), **ambulo**, **ambulas**, **ambulat**, **ambulamus**, **ambulatis**, **ambulant**

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| a servo (<i>I save</i>) | f computo (<i>I reckon up</i>) |
| b comparo (<i>I procure</i>) | g muto (<i>I change</i>) |
| c loco (<i>I place</i>) | h pugno (<i>I fight</i>) |
| d concito (<i>I hurl</i>) | i adflo (<i>I breathe upon</i>) |
| e voco (<i>I call</i>) | j amo (<i>I love</i>) |

3 Translate these verbs into Latin.

e.g. *he cares* → **curat**

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a we call | d he approves |
| b you (s.) are working | e they are drinking |
| c I approve | f you (pl.) care |

g she is calling

h it walks!

i I stand

j they care

4 Write the present infinitive (second principal part) of these verbs and say what it means.

e.g. **do** (*I give*) → **dare** *to give*

a **puto** (*I think*)

b **cogito** (*I ponder*)

c **lanio** (*I mangle*)

d **mando** (*I command*)

e **praetervolo** (*I fly past*)

f **claro** (*I explain*)

g **demonstro** (*I show*)

h **fatigo** (*I exhaust*)

i **coacto** (*I force*)

j **appello** (*I pronounce*)

5 What conjugation do these verbs belong to?

e.g. **cogo cogere** (*to compel*) → third

a **emunio emunire** (*to strengthen*)

b **mordeo mordere** (*to bite*)

c **perfrico perfricare** (*to scratch*)

d **sternuo sternuere** (*to sneeze*)

e **revincio revincere** (*to tie up at the back*)

f **perficio perficere** (*to finish*)

g **adsentio adsentire** (*to agree*)

h **converto convertere** (*to turn around*)

i **debeo debere** (*to owe*)

j **invigilo invigilare** (*to be awake*)

6 Translate the following verbs.

e.g. **ambulo et (and) specto** → *I walk and watch*

a **currimus et superamus**

b **dormitis et stertitis**

c **quaerit et servat**

d **vides et credis**

e **sciunt et tacent**

f **inspicio et probo**

g **fugiunt et lacrimant**

h **doceo et discitis**

i **ridetis et luditis**

j **salimus et canimus**

7 Write out the present tenses of the following verbs. You will need to check the infinitive to find out what conjugation the verb belongs to.

e.g. **servio** *servire* (*I serve*), **servio**, **servis**, **servit**, **servimus**, **servitis**, **serviunt**

- | | |
|---|--|
| a aperio <i>aperire</i> (<i>I open</i>) | f teneo <i>tenere</i> (<i>I hold</i>) |
| b peto <i>petere</i> (<i>I seek</i>) | g facio <i>facere</i> (<i>I make</i>) |
| c advenio <i>advenire</i> (<i>I arrive</i>) | h vasto <i>vastare</i> (<i>I destroy</i>) |
| d video <i>videre</i> (<i>I see</i>) | i libro <i>librare</i> (<i>I balance</i>) |
| e discedo <i>discedere</i> (<i>I depart</i>) | j fugio <i>fugere</i> (<i>I flee</i>) |

8 Write down the present infinitive (second principal part) of these verbs and say what it means.

e.g. **antifico** (*I anticipate*) → **anticipare** *to anticipate*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a nubo (<i>I marry</i>) | f implico (<i>I entwine</i>) |
| b mereo (<i>I deserve</i>) | g paco (<i>I pacify</i>) |
| c arcesso (<i>I summon</i>) | h sero (<i>I sew</i>) |
| d claudico (<i>I limp</i>) | i statuo (<i>I set up</i>) |
| e gero (<i>I carry</i>) | j voveo (<i>I vow</i>) |

9 Write out the future tenses of the following verbs.

Remember to look up their infinitives to check which conjugation they belong to.

e.g. **moneo** (*I advise*), **monebo**, **monebis**, **monebit**, **monebimus**, **monebitis**, **monebunt**

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a aedifico (<i>I build</i>) | f crepo (<i>I creak</i>) |
| b misceo (<i>I mix</i>) | g sto (<i>I stand</i>) |
| c ardeo (<i>I burn</i>) | h fundo (<i>I secure</i>) |
| d mulceo (<i>I soothe</i>) | i narro (<i>I relate</i>) |
| e sono (<i>I sound</i>) | j horreo (<i>I shudder</i>) |

10 Translate these future tenses into Latin. Remember to look up words you do not know yet.

The word **sed** → *but* is included in this exercise.

e.g. **equitabimus sed ambulabitis** → *we shall ride but you will walk*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a monebunt et suadebunt | d manebimus et spectabimus |
| b portabitis sed ambulabimus | e nuntiabunt sed tacebimus |
| c vocabunt et servabunt | f flebit et lugebit |

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| g ardebo sed mulcebis | i narrabo et spectabit |
| h horrebunt et terrebimus | j aedificabit sed debebunt |

11 Translate the following into Latin. The verb you should use is given in brackets.

e.g. *she will work* (laboro) → laborabit

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a I shall ponder (cogito) | f it will please (placeo) |
| b we shall fly (volo) | g you (s.) will owe (debeo) |
| c they will alter (muto) | h I shall announce (nuntio) |
| d you (pl.) will mourn (lugeo) | i they will call (voco) |
| e she will warn (moneo) | j you (pl.) will have (habeo) |

12 Translate the following into English. There is a mixture of present and future tenses in this exercise.

e.g. *stupet et ridebunt* → *he is amazed and they will laugh*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a dant sed debebitis | f aedificant sed debebimus |
| b pulsabunt et vocabo | g cogito sed pugnabunt |
| c pacas et tacebunt | h stat et manebit |
| d portamus sed aedificabitis | i paro et probabitis |
| e ambulas sed festinabimus | j comparabimus et computabitis |

13 Write out the future tenses of the following verbs.

Remember to look up their infinitives to check which conjugation they belong to.

e.g. *salio* (*I leap*), *saliam*, *salies*, *saliet*, *saliemus*, *salietis*, *salient*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a cingo (<i>I surround</i>) | f facio (<i>I make</i>) |
| b scribo (<i>I write</i>) | g iacio (<i>I hurl</i>) |
| c claudio (<i>I shut</i>) | h rapio (<i>I seize</i>) |
| d colo (<i>I cultivate</i>) | i dico (<i>I say</i>) |
| e peto (<i>I seek</i>) | j aperio (<i>I open</i>) |

14 Translate these future tenses into English. Remember to look up words you do not know.

The words *sed* → *but*, *et* → *and* and *non* → *not* are included.

e.g. *curretis et ludemus* → *you will run and we shall play*

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| a dicam et credetis | f fugient sed resistemus |
| b arcessemus sed non audient | g aperiam sed claudet |
| c fodietis et traham | h quaerent sed non invenient |
| d non dormiet | i discedes et adveniam |
| e incipietis sed non perficietis | j adsentiemus sed dissentietis |

15 Translate the following into Latin. The verb you should use is given in brackets.

e.g. *they will not leap* (salio) → non salient

- | | |
|---|---|
| a I shall dig (fodio) | f they will arrive (advenio) |
| b they will not begin (incipio) | g she will capture (capio) |
| c you (s.) will not play (ludo) | h you (pl.) will not believe (credo) |
| d he will agree (adsentio) | i we shall not yield (cedo) |
| e I shall run (curro) but you (s.) will resist (resisto) | j they will sleep (dormio) but we shall drag (traho) |

16 Translate the following into English. There is a mixture of present and future tenses in this exercise.

e.g. *dormit et custodient* → *he is sleeping and they will guard*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a resistetis et non cedetis | f scribunt et non ludent |
| b claudio sed aperient | g non dicent |
| c non adveniemus | h peto et inveniam |
| d currit sed non fugiet | i dicit sed non credetis |
| e ludis sed fodiam | j scribis et non audies |

17 Write out the imperfect tenses of the following verbs. Remember to check the infinitives to see which conjugation they belong to.

e.g. *scribo* (*I write*), *scriebam*, *scriebas*, *scriebat*, *scriebamus*, *scriebatis*, *scriebant*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a maneo (<i>I remain</i>) | f venio (<i>I come</i>) |
| b munio (<i>I fortify</i>) | g lenio (<i>I soften</i>) |
| c ceno (<i>I dine</i>) | h ambulo (<i>I walk</i>) |
| d coquo (<i>I cook</i>) | i pono (<i>I put</i>) |
| e rego (<i>I rule</i>) | j sedeo (<i>I sit</i>) |

18 Translate these imperfect tenses into English. Remember to look up words which you do not know.

The words *sed* → *but*, *non* → *not* and *et* → *and* are included.

e.g. *laborabamus et fodiebamus* → *we were working and digging*

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| a sedebamus sed non dormiebamus | f tenebant et vocabant |
| b pugnabatis et resistebatis | g dicebas et non tacebant |
| c audiebas et spectabas | h trahebam et gemebam |
| d coquebam sed cenabant | i ludebamus sed non ridebamus |
| e ambulabat et canebat | j aedificabam et portabatis |

19 Translate the following into imperfect tenses in Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.

e.g. *we were writing and they were playing* → *scribebamus et ludebant*

- a** I slept (*dormio*) but they were not quiet (*taceo*)
- b** we spoke (*dico*) and they listened (*audio*)
- c** you (s.) did not watch (*specto*)
- d** I arrived (*advenio*) but you (pl.) departed (*discedo*)
- e** he used to agree (*assentio*)
- f** we were dragging (*traho*) and they were digging (*fodio*)
- g** she stood (*sto*) but we sat (*sedeo*)
- h** he summoned (*arcesso*) and you (s.) came (*venio*)
- i** we used to laugh (*rideo*) and they used to cry (*fleo*)
- j** I did not see (*video*)

20 Translate the following into English. There is a mixture of present, future and imperfect tenses.

e.g. *pulsabat et aperient* → *he was knocking and they will open*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| a imperabat et parebatis | f portabamus, fodimus et aedificabimus |
| b non mutabit | g currebam sed ambulabam |
| c parabam, coquis et cenabunt | h horrebant et timebamus |
| d resistebamus sed fugitis | i sedebant et dormient |
| e non scribebat | j dabatis et accipiebam |

21 What is the third principal part of the following verbs? Write out the word in full. The verbs are from different conjugations.

e.g. *terreo (I frighten)* → *terru*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a <i>timeo (I fear)</i> | f <i>traho (I drag)</i> |
| b <i>paro (I prepare)</i> | g <i>tango (I touch)</i> |
| c <i>rego (I rule)</i> | h <i>spargo (I scatter)</i> |
| d <i>cubo (I lie down)</i> | i <i>frango (I break)</i> |
| e <i>facio (I make)</i> | j <i>sentio (I feel)</i> |

22 Write out the perfect tenses of the following first conjugation verbs. Remember that you will need to look up the verb to find the third principal part.

e.g. *sto (I stand)*, *steti*, *stetisti*, *stetit*, *stetimus*, *stetistis*, *steterunt*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a <i>demonstro (I show)</i> | f <i>iuvo (I help)</i> |
| b <i>seco (I cut)</i> | g <i>ambulo (I walk)</i> |
| c <i>do (I give)</i> | h <i>mico (I glitter)</i> |
| d <i>curo (I care for)</i> | i <i>amo (I love)</i> |
| e <i>veto (I forbid)</i> | j <i>neco (I slay)</i> |

23 Translate the following perfect tense first conjugation verbs into English.

e.g. *stetimus* → *we stood*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a <i>aedificavistis</i> | f <i>comparaverunt</i> |
| b <i>dederunt</i> | g <i>paravit</i> |
| c <i>appellavi</i> | h <i>oravi</i> |
| d <i>servavisti</i> | i <i>secuisti</i> |
| e <i>locavimus</i> | j <i>vetuimus</i> |

24 Translate the following into the perfect tense of the first conjugation in Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.

e.g. *they have walked (ambulo)* → *ambulaverunt*

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| a they hoped (<i>spero</i>) | c I gave (<i>do</i>) |
| b we have loved (<i>amo</i>) | d they have shown (<i>demonstro</i>) |

- | | |
|---|---|
| e you (pl.) have forbidden (veto) | h I have built (aedifico) |
| f it has stood (sto) | i you (s.) have swum (no) |
| g she has related (narro) | j he has called (voco) |

25 It is important to be able to find out which verb a particular perfect stem belongs to. Use your dictionary to find out which verb the following perfect tenses come from and translate the verb. You should look for a verb which starts with the same few letters and check the third principal part. This will take some patience but do not give up because you will be practising a very important skill. There is a mixture of conjugations in this exercise.

e.g. *movi* → *moveo* (*I move*)

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| a credidi | f vinxi |
| b vetui | g sedi |
| c veni | h custodivi |
| d vidi | i tenui |
| e potavi | j fugi |

26 Write out the perfect tenses of the following verbs. There is a mixture of conjugations.

e.g. *scribo* (*I write*), *scripsi*, *scripsisti*, *scripsit*, *scripsimus*, *scripsistis*, *scripserunt*

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a quaero (<i>I seek</i>) | f ludo (<i>I play</i>) |
| b cedo (<i>I yield</i>) | g vinco (<i>I conquer</i>) |
| c pono (<i>I put</i>) | h curro (<i>I run</i>) |
| d effluo (<i>I rush out</i>) | i rideo (<i>I smile</i>) |
| e rumpo (<i>I burst</i>) | j deleo (<i>I destroy</i>) |

27 Translate the following into the perfect tense in Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.

e.g. *we have heard* → *audivimus*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a he has found (invenio) | d I dragged (traho) |
| b they have seen (video) | e we have worshipped (colo) |
| c you (pl.) have waited (maneo) | f you (s.) have said (dico) |

e she had escaped (**effugio**)
f it had slept (**dormio**)
g you (pl.) had thrown (**iacio**)

h I had sat (**sedeo**)
i he had guarded (**custodio**)
j we had placed (**pono**)

32 Translate the following into English. This exercise contains a mixture of perfect and pluperfect tenses. Remember to check the verbs in your dictionary.

e.g. **mansi sed discesseras** → *I remained but you (s.) had left*

a non celaveram sed flevērunt
b dormivit et laboraveratis
c aedificaveramus sed deleverunt
d portaverant et foderamus
e clauserat sed aperui

f ambulaverunt sed cucurreramus
g docuerat et audiverant
h spectaveras sed non vidisti
i non mutaveratis
j coxeram et cenaverunt

33 Write out the future perfect tenses of these verbs.

e.g. **mitto** (*I send*), **misero**, **miseris**, **miserit**, **miserimus**, **miseritis**, **miserint**

a cano (*I sing*)
b accipio (*I receive*)
c verto (*I turn*)
d tendo (*I stretch*)
e trado (*I betray*)

f praebeo (*I offer*)
g compleo (*I fill*)
h veho (*I convey*)
i surgo (*I rise*)
j discedo (*I depart*)

34 Translate the following future perfect tenses into English. Remember to check which verb they come from.

e.g. **traxerint** → *they will have dragged*

a duxeris
b manseritis
c vocavero
d monuerint
e feceritis

f ambulaverimus
g cepero
h venerint
i posueris
j discesserimus

35 Translate the following into Latin. The verbs you should use are in brackets.

e.g. *we shall have seen* → **viderimus**

- | | |
|--|---|
| a she will have felt (sentio) | g we shall have lived (vivo) |
| b it will have changed (muto) | h you (s.) will have sought (peto) |
| c they will have watched (specto) | i they will have assembled (convenio) |
| d I shall have owed (debeo) | j I shall have turned (verto) |
| e he will have wept (fleo) | |
| f you (pl.) will have made (facio) | |

36 Translate the following into English. This exercise contains a mixture of perfect and future perfect tenses. Remember to check the verbs in your dictionary.

e.g. *advenero sed discessit* → *I shall have arrived but he has left*

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| a timui et timueris | f cucurreris sed ambulavero |
| b mansitis sed effugerint | g narravit et audiverint |
| c laboraverimus et dormiveritis | h imperavit et paruerint |
| d dederō et acceperit | i rogavisti et responderit |
| e discesserint sed non advenistis | j coxit et cenavero |

37 Translate the following into Latin. Notice that *non* not comes before the verb

e.g. *we have not been* → *non fuimus*

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a I shall be | f you (s.) had been |
| b it is not | g she will have been |
| c we used to be | h I was |
| d they were being | i I have been |
| e you (pl.) will be | j we have been |

38 Translate the following into English.

e.g. *fuistis* → *you (pl.) have been*

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| a erant | f sumus |
| b fuerint | g eramus |
| c fuerunt | h fueram |
| d erit | i estis |
| e sunt | j erunt |

39 What tense do these parts of the verb come from?

e.g. **fuerat** → pluperfect

a eratis

b est

c fuerunt

d erunt

e sumus

f fuisti

g fuerant

h fueris

i erit

j eramus

Points to remember

- 1 Present tense endings are **-o, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**.
- 2 Future tense endings for the first and second conjugations are **-bo, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt**.
- 3 Future tense endings for the third and fourth conjugations are **-am, -es, -et, -emus, -etis, -ent**.
- 4 Imperfect tense endings are **-bam, -bas, -bat, -bamus, -batis, -bant**.
- 5 Perfect tense endings are **-i, -isti, -it, -imus, -istis, -erunt**.
- 6 Pluperfect tense endings are **-eram, -eras, -erat, -eramus, -eratis, -erant**.
- 7 Future Perfect tense endings are **-ero, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint**.
- 8 Some verbs in the third conjugation, like **capio** (*I take*) and **facio** (*I make*), have the letter **i** at the end of their stems, like fourth conjugation verbs.
- 9 The formation of the present, future and imperfect tenses are based on the first principal part of a verb.
- 10 The formation of the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses are based on the third principal part of the verb.

3

Nouns

In this chapter you should aim to

- **learn the names of the cases**
 - **learn how Latin nouns are formed**
 - **recognize the endings of the nouns**
 - **gain a basic vocabulary of nouns and their genders**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

First declension

- A** The first declension has mostly **feminine** nouns but the names of some male roles are **masculine**, e.g. *agricola agricolae* → *farmer*, *poeta, poetae* → *poet* and *scriba scribae* → *scribe*.
- B** The **case endings** for the **first declension** which are added to the present stem are as follows. Notice the ending **-ae** in the genitive singular which characterizes this declension.

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|-----------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| nominative | -a | nominative | -ae |
| vocative | -a | vocative | -ae |
| accusative | -am | accusative | -ās |
| genitive | -ae | genitive | -ārum |
| dative | -ae | dative | -īs |
| ablative | -ā | ablative | -īs |

Notice that some cases end in the same way so we need to know the context in which a word is used to know which case is which. Notice also that the ablative singular ends in a long *a*.

- The model for a regular first declension noun is **puella** -ae f. → *girl*.

Singular

| | | |
|------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| nom. | puella | <i>girl</i> (subject) |
| voc. | puella | <i>o girl</i> (when addressing her) |
| acc. | puellam | <i>girl</i> (object) |
| gen. | puellae | <i>of a girl</i> |
| dat. | puellae | <i>to or for a girl</i> |
| abl. | puella | <i>by, with or from a girl</i> |

Plural

| | | |
|------|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| nom. | puellae | <i>girls</i> (subject) |
| voc. | puellae | <i>o girls</i> (when addressing them) |
| acc. | puellas | <i>girls</i> (object) |
| gen. | puellarum | <i>of girls</i> |
| dat. | puellis | <i>to or for girls</i> |
| abl. | puellis | <i>by, with or from girls</i> |

- C** The nouns **filia** (*daughter*) and **dea** (*goddess*) have as their dative and ablative plural endings **filiābus** and **deābus**, to avoid confusion with **filiīs** and **deīs**, the dative and ablative plurals of the nouns **filius** (*son*) and **deus** (*god*) from the second declension.

Second declension

Basic forms.

- D** Most nouns of the second declension are either **masculine**, like **taurus** → *bull*, **filius** → *son*, **puer** → *boy* and **ager** → *field* or **neuter**, like **templum** → *temple*. The very few **feminine** words in it decline like **taurus**, e.g. **humus** → *ground* or **pinus** → *pine tree*.

There are three unusual singular neuter nouns which end in **-us** in the nominative, vocative and accusative: **pelagus** → *sea* (for the plural, the Greek form **pelage** is used), **virus** → *venom* and **volgus** (or **volgus**) → *crowd* (sometimes masculine).

E The standard case endings for the second declension are as follows. Note the long **-ī** in the ending of the genitive singular which characterizes this declension.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------------|---|--------------------------------|
| nominative | -us, -ius or -er (m.) -um (n.) | -ī (m.) -a (n.) |
| vocative | -e, -i or -er (m.) -um (n.) | -ī (m.) -a (n.) |
| accusative | -um | -ōs (m.) -a (n.) |
| genitive | -ī | -ōrum |
| dative | -ō | -īs |
| ablative | -ō | -īs |

- ▶ Most **masculine** nouns of this declension decline like **taurus -i** (*bull*).

Notice that the vocative singular is different from the nominative in nouns like this (see Unit 4A4).

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------|-----------------|
| nom. | taurus | tauri |
| voc. | taure | tauri |
| acc. | taurum | tauros |
| gen. | tauri | taurorum |
| dat. | tauro | tauris |
| abl. | tauro | tauris |

- ▶ All **neuter** nouns in the second declension decline like **templum -i** (*temple*).

Notice that, as with all neuter nouns, the nominative, vocative and accusative cases have the same endings in the singular and the same endings in the plural.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| nom. and voc. | templum | templa |
| acc. | templum | templa |
| gen. | templi | templorum |
| dat. | templo | templis |
| abl. | templo | templis |

F Forms in -er and -ius.

- ▶ Words in this declension which go like **puer pueri** m. → *boy* and **ager agri** m. → *field* end in **-er** in the nominative and vocative singular but otherwise the endings are the same as those for **taurus**. Notice that the **stem** of **ager** (*agr-*) does not contain the letter **e** which was in the nominative and vocative. Words like **ager** (e.g. **magister magistri** m. → *teacher*) do not have the letter **e** in their stem but words like **puer pueri** *always* do.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| nom. and voc. | ager | agri |
| acc. | agrum | agros |
| gen. | agri | agrorum |
| dat. | agro | agris |
| abl. | agro | agris |

- ▶ The declension of **filius -ii** m. → *son* is slightly different from that of **taurus**.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| nom. | filius | fili |
| voc. | fili | fili |
| acc. | filium | filios |
| gen. | fili (or fili) | filiorum |
| dat. | filio | filiis |
| abl. | filio | filiis |

Notice that the **vocative singular** ends in **-i** and that the genitive singular can end in **-i** or **-ii**. The word **genius** → *spirit* and proper names ending in **-ius**, like **Valerius**, decline like **filius**. Neuter nouns ending in **-ium** have a genitive singular ending **-i** or **-ii**.

G The declension of **vir viri m.** → *man* or *hero*, is slightly different from **puer**.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| nom. and voc. | vir | virī |
| acc. | virum | viros |
| gen. | virī | virorum (or virum) |
| dat. | viro | virīs |
| abl. | viro | virīs |

H The declension of **deus dei m.** → *god* is different from **taurus** (nominative and vocative are the same).

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| nom. and voc. | deus | dei or di |
| acc. | deum | deos |
| gen. | dei | deorum or deum |
| dat. | deo | deīs or dis |
| abl. | deo | deīs or dis |

Romans usually called on deities by name, like Mars or Venus.

I A genitive plural in **-um** rather than **-orum** is sometimes found, especially in words for coins, sums, weights and measures like **talentum** → *talent* and **nummus** → *coin*. This can also happen with **socius** → *ally*, **faber** → *craftsman*, **liberi** → *children* and **superi** → *the gods*.

Third declension

Increasing nouns.

J Knowing the **stem** (Unit 1R) of a noun is important for understanding the **third declension** because the nominatives often look quite different from the genitives. Take care to check the genitive when you look words up in a dictionary. There are two categories:

- ▶ Nouns with more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative are called **increasing nouns**. These have a genitive plural ending in **-um** and are sometimes called nouns with consonant stems.
- ▶ Nouns with the same number of syllables in the genitive singular as in the nominative are sometimes called **non-increasing nouns**. These have a genitive plural ending in **-ium** and are also called nouns with vowel stems.

K The structure and **case endings** of **increasing nouns** follow. Notice the ending **-is** in the genitive singular which characterizes this declension. The nominatives have various endings.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|---|--|
| nom. | various | stem+-ēs (m. and f.) -a (n.) |
| voc. | various | stem+-ēs (m. and f.) -a (n.) |
| acc. | stem+-em (m. and f.) various (n.) | stem+-ēs (m. and f.) -a (n.) |
| gen. | stem+-is | stem+-um |
| dat. | stem+-ī | stem+ -ibus |
| abl. | stem+-e | stem+ -ibus |

- ▶ A good example of the **masculine** and **feminine** nouns of this type is **leo leonis** (m.) → *lion*:

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| nom. and voc. | leo | leones |
| acc. | leonem | leones |
| gen. | leonis | leonum |
| dat. | leoni | leonibus |
| abl. | leone | leonibus |

- A good model for the **neuter** nouns is **corpus corporis** → *body*:

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| nom. and voc. | corpus | corpora |
| acc. | corpus | corpora |
| gen. | corporis | corporum |
| dat. | corpori | corporibus |
| abl. | corpore | corporibus |

L Exceptions

- There are some nouns which increase the number of syllables in the genitive singular but are technically non-increasing nouns with vowel stems. These decline like **urbs urbis** f. → *city* with a genitive plural ending in **-ium** (see **N**).
- There are also some nouns with consonant stems which are non-increasing and have a genitive plural ending in **-um**. Most of these are the ‘family’ words: **pater patris** m. → *father*, **mater matris** f. → *mother*, **frater fratris** m. → *brother*, **iuvenis iuvenis** m. → *young man* and **canis canis** m. or f. → *dog*. These decline like **senex** (see **X**)

Non-increasing nouns.

- M** The structure and standard case endings of **non-increasing** nouns are as follows. Note the genitive singular ending **-is** which characterizes the declension.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|--|--|
| nom. | stem + -is or -ēs (m. and f.) -e, -l or -r (n.) | stem + -ēs (m. and f.) -ia (n.) |
| voc. | stem + -is or -ēs (m. and f.) -e, -l or -r (n.) | stem + -ēs (m. and f.) -ia (n.) |
| acc. | stem + -em or -im (m. and f.) -e, -l or -r (n.) | stem + -ēs or -īs (m. and f.) -ia (n.) |
| gen. | stem + -is | stem + -ium |
| dat. | stem + -ī | stem + -ibus |
| abl. | stem + -ī or -e | stem + -ibus |

There are some nouns of this type with nominatives in **-er**, e.g. **venter ventris m.** → *stomach*.

- ▶ An example of the **masculine** and **feminine** nouns of this type is **civis, civis m.** → *citizen*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| nom. and voc. | civis | cives |
| acc. | civem | cives or civis |
| gen. | civis | civium |
| dat. | civi | civibus |
| abl. | civi or cive | civibus |

Nouns which have the accusative ending **-im** are not common. Examples are **vis f.** → *force*, **sitis f.** → *thirst*, **turris f.** → *tower*, **puppis f.** → *stern deck*, **securis f.** → *axe* and **Tiberis m.** → *the river Tiber*.

- ▶ In the **neuter** nominative singulars the last vowel of the stem (**-i**) is dropped (**animal animalis** → *animal*) or changes to an **-e** (**cubile cubilis** → *couch*).

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| nom. and voc. | cubile | cubilia |
| acc. | cubile | cubilia |
| gen. | cubilis | cubilium |
| dat. and abl. | cubili | cubilibus |

In the ablative singular **rete** → *net* ends in **-e**, while **mare** → *sea* ends in either **-i** or **-e**.

N Some nouns which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative still decline like **non-increasing** nouns with a genitive plural ending in **-ium**. They are mostly nouns of one syllable ending in a double consonant like **urbs urbis f.** → *city* (see **L**).

Other examples: **mons montis** m. → *mountain*, **arx arcis** f. → *citadel*, **ars artis** f. → *art*, **nox noctis** f. → *night*, **dens dentis** m. → *tooth*.

| | Singular | Plural |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| nom. and voc. | urbs | urbes |
| acc. | urbem | urbes |
| gen. | urbis | urbium |
| dat. | urbi | urbibus |
| abl. | urbe | urbibus |

Fourth declension

O The nouns of the **fourth declension** are mostly masculine, like **gradus** → *step*. Common feminine nouns are **manus** → *hand*, **porticus** → *colonnade*, **tribus** → *tribe* and **Idus** → *Ides* (see Unit 17C). Common neuter nouns are **genu** → *knee*, **cornu** → *horn* and **veru** → *a spit*.

P The following are the **case endings** for **fourth declension** nouns. Notice the genitive ending **-us** (with a long **u**) which is characteristic of this declension.

| | Singular | | Plural | |
|------|------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| nom. | -us (m. and f.) | -ū (n.) | -ūs (m. and f.) | -ua (n.) |
| voc. | -us (m. and f.) | -ū (n.) | -ūs (m. and f.) | -ua (n.) |
| acc. | -um (m. and f.) | -ū (n.) | -ūs (m. and f.) | -ua (n.) |
| gen. | -ūs | | -uum | |
| dat. | -uī (m. and f.) | -ū (n.) | -ibus | |
| abl. | -ū | | -ibus | |

- The **masculine** and **feminine** nouns of this declension decline like **gradus m.** → *step*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| nom. and voc. | gradus | gradus |
| acc. | gradum | gradus |
| gen. | gradus | gradu |
| dat. | gradui | gradibus |
| abl. | gradu | gradibus |

- The very few **neuter** nouns in the fourth declension decline like **genu** → *knee*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| nom. and voc. | genu | genua |
| acc. | genu | genua |
| gen. | genus | genuum |
| dat. and abl. | genu | genibus |

- Q** In some words the dative and ablative plural ends in the more ancient form **-ubus**, rather than **-ibus**. This is always found in **arcus m.** → *bow* (**arcubus**), **tribus f.** → *tribe* (**tribubus**) and occasionally in **partus m.** → *offspring* (**partubus**), **artus m.** → *limb, joint* (**artubus**) and some other words.

Fifth declension

- R** All **fifth declension** nouns are feminine except for **dies m.** → *day* and its compound **meridies m.** → *midday*. However, even **dies** can be feminine if the day referred to is an appointed day. There are no neuters. Some nouns in this declension do not have plural forms.

S The **case endings** for the **fifth declension** are as follows. Notice the genitive singular ending in **-ei**, which is characteristic of this declension.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------|---------------|
| nom. | -ēs | -ēs |
| voc. | -ēs | -ēs |
| acc. | -em | -ēs |
| gen. | -eī | -ērum |
| dat. | -eī | -ēbus |
| abl. | -ē | -ēbus |

► The declension of **dies m.** → *day* looks like this.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------|---------------|
| nom. | dies | dies |
| voc. | dies | dies |
| acc. | diem | dies |
| gen. | diei | dierum |
| dat. | diei | diebus |
| abl. | die | diebus |

► The word **res rei f.** → *thing* has a huge number of meanings. It basically means *thing* but it can also mean *issue, matter, story, object, affair, business, fact, the universe* and so on.

When it combines with the feminine adjective **publica** → *public* it means *state* or *republic* and both parts of the word decline.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-------------------|----------------------|
| nom. | respublica | respublicae |
| voc. | respublica | respublicae |
| acc. | republicam | respublicas |
| gen. | republicae | rerumplicarum |
| dat. | republicae | rebuspublicis |
| abl. | republica | rebuspublicis |

Greek nouns

As Greek literature had a great influence on the Roman world, we find many Greek nouns used in Latin, mostly proper names. These took on Latin forms and, often, Latin endings. However, you will meet some which retain their Greek endings. Some nouns are found with both Latin and Greek forms in their endings. They may appear confusing at first because of the large variety of forms but the general pattern is easy to get used to.

T First declension Greek nouns are of three types and most are proper names. The **plurals** are the same as the normal first declension nouns (see B).

- ▶ Examples are Aeneas m. (a Trojan hero) Anchises m. (Aeneas' father) and Circe f. (a goddess).

| | | | |
|------|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| nom. | Aenēās | Anchisēs | Circē (or -a) |
| voc. | Aenēā | Anchisē (or -ā) | Circē (or -a) |
| acc. | Aenēān | Anchisēn (or -an) | Circēn (or -am) |
| gen. | Aenēae | Anchisae | Circēs (or -ae) |
| dat. | Aenēae | Anchisae | Circae |
| abl. | Aenēā | Anchisē (or -ā) | Circē (or -ā) |

- ▶ **Patronymics** are names which mean 'son of' and end in **-ides**, like **Atrides** → *son of Atreus* (Agamemnon) or **Pelides** → *son of Peleus* (Achilles). These are declined like Anchises and their genitive plural ends in **-um**.

U Second declension Greek nouns are mostly proper names of two types. Examples are **Delos** f. (the Aegean island where Apollo and Artemis were born) and **Pelion** n. (a Greek mountain).

| | | | | | |
|------|-------------------------------|---------------|------|-------------|--------------|
| nom. | Delos | Pelion | gen. | Delī | Pelī |
| voc. | Delos | Pelion | dat. | Delō | Peliō |
| acc. | Delon (or -um) | Pelion | abl. | Delō | Peliō |

V Third declension Greek nouns

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| nom. | cratēr | cratēres |
| voc. | cratēr | cratēres |
| acc. | cratēra (or -em) | cratēras (or -es) |
| gen. | cratēros (or -is) | cratērum |
| dat. | cratērī | cratēribus |
| abl. | cratēre | cratēribus |

- ▶ The declension of **crater crateris** (m.) *mixing bowl* gives the basic structure.
- ▶ There is a great variety of endings in the nominative of third declension Greek nouns, e.g. **heros herois** m. → *hero*, **Socrates Socratis** m. → *Socrates* (a philosopher), **Orpheus Orphei** m. → *Orpheus* (a poet), **Dido Didonis** f. → *Dido* (queen of Carthage) and **Paris Paridis** m. → *Paris* (a Trojan prince). Individual entries in a good dictionary will give you any unusual case endings.
- ▶ The third declension names in **-eus**, **-es** or **-is** can also form their vocative by dropping the **-s**, e.g. **Pari** (as well as **Paris**). They can also end their accusatives with **-n** or **-m**, e.g. **Socraten** or **Socratem**; **Parin** or **Parim** (as well as **Parida** or **Paridem**).

Irregular nouns

W domus domus f. → *house* has endings from the second and fourth declensions. The special locative forms (Unit 4F4) of **domus** are **domum** → *homeward*, **domi** → *at home* and **domo** → *from home*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| nom. | domus | domūs |
| voc. | domus | domūs |
| acc. | domum | domūs or domōs |
| gen. | domūs | domuum or domōrum |
| dat. | domuī or domō | domibus |
| abl. | domō | domibus |

X Important **third declension** irregular nouns are:

- ▶ **vis** f. → *violence, force*. This noun is **defective**. In other words it does not have all its cases. In the plural it means *strength*. Be careful not to confuse it with **vir** → *man* (see Unit G).

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------|----------------|
| nom. | vis | virēs |
| voc. | — | virēs |
| acc. | vim | virēs |
| gen. | — | virium |
| dat. | — | viribus |
| abl. | vī | viribus |

- ▶ **senex senis** m. → *old man* is a non-increasing noun but has a genitive ending in **-um**.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------|----------------|
| nom. | senex | senēs |
| voc. | senex | senēs |
| acc. | senem | senēs |
| gen. | senis | senum |
| dat. | senī | senibus |
| abl. | sene | senibus |

► **bos bovis** m. → *ox*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| nom. | bōs | bovēs |
| voc. | bōs | bovēs |
| acc. | bovem | bovēs |
| gen. | bovis | bovm |
| dat. | bovī | bōbus or būbus |
| abl. | bove | bōbus or būbus |

► **Jupiter**, king of the gods.

| | |
|------|-----------------|
| nom. | Iuppiter |
| voc. | Iuppiter |
| acc. | Iovem |
| gen. | Iovis |
| dat. | Iovi |
| abl. | Iove |

1 Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following first declension nouns.

e.g. *ianua* → *ianuae*, feminine, *door*

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| a charta | f area |
| b insula | g incola |
| c nauta | h via |
| d agricola | i nebula |
| e ancilla | j mensa |

2 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of the following nouns.

e.g. *ara* (*altar*)

| | | | | | |
|--------|-------------|-------------|--------|-------------|---------------|
| | Singular | Plural | | Singular | Plural |
| nom. → | ara | arae | gen. → | arae | ararum |
| voc. → | ara | arae | dat. → | arae | aris |
| acc. → | aram | aras | abl. → | ara | aris |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a ripa (<i>river bank</i>) | f porta (<i>gate</i>) |
| b regina (<i>queen</i>) | g clementia (<i>mercy</i>) |
| c carina (<i>keel</i>) | h dea (<i>goddess</i>) |
| d matrona (<i>lady</i>) | i cauda (<i>tail</i>) |
| e taberna (<i>shop</i>) | j femina (<i>woman</i>) |

3 Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the genitive plural of ora (*shore*) → orarum

- a** the accusative plural of sagitta (*arrow*)
- b** the genitive plural of rosa (*rose*)
- c** the accusative singular of vacca (*cow*)
- d** the dative singular of sapientia (*wisdom*)
- e** the ablative plural of hasta (*spear*)
- f** the dative plural of sella (*seat*)
- g** the genitive singular of ballista (*war catapult*)
- h** the ablative plural of ala (*wing*)
- i** the ablative singular of iustitia (*justice*)
- j** the vocative plural of fera (*wild beast*)

4 What case and number are these first declension nouns?

If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

Get used to using the abbreviations for case and number.

e.g. ranae (*frog*) → 1. gen. sing. 2. dat. sing. 3. nom. pl. 4. voc. pl.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| a pennam (<i>feather</i>) | e capellis (<i>nanny goat</i>) | i fortunarum (<i>luck,</i> |
| b casis (<i>cottage</i>) | f linguas (<i>tongue</i>) | <i>fortune</i>) |
| c formicas (<i>ant</i>) | g arca (<i>box</i>) | j curae (<i>concern</i>) |
| d togae (<i>toga</i>) | h Italiam (<i>Italy</i>) | |

5 Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following second declension nouns. They all decline like taurus or templum.

e.g. dominus → domini, masculine, *master*

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| a discipulus | e colus | i bellum |
| b frumentum | f annus | j umerus |
| c ventus | g somnus | |
| d maritus | h eventum | |

6 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of the following nouns.

e.g. *equus* (*horse*)

| | Singular | Plural | | Singular | Plural |
|------|----------------|--------------|------|---------------|----------------|
| nom. | → <i>equus</i> | <i>equi</i> | gen. | → <i>equi</i> | <i>equorum</i> |
| voc. | → <i>eque</i> | <i>equi</i> | dat. | → <i>equo</i> | <i>equis</i> |
| acc. | → <i>equum</i> | <i>equos</i> | abl. | → <i>equo</i> | <i>equis</i> |

- | | |
|---|---|
| a <i>oculus</i> (<i>eye</i>) | f <i>ludus</i> (<i>play, school</i>) |
| b <i>legatus</i> (<i>delegate</i>) | g <i>stilus</i> (<i>pen</i>) |
| c <i>lapillus</i> (<i>pebble</i>) | h <i>pullus</i> (<i>chicken</i>) |
| d <i>rostrum</i> (<i>beak, prow</i>) | i <i>animus</i> (<i>mind</i>) |
| e <i>praefectus</i> (<i>prefect</i>) | j <i>iocus</i> (<i>joke</i>) |

7 Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the accusative plural of *cuniculus* (*rabbit*) → *cuniculos*

- a** the genitive singular of *digitus* (*finger, toe*)
- b** the dative plural of *officium* (*duty*)
- c** the vocative singular of *camelus* (*camel*)
- d** the ablative singular of *somnium* (*dream*)
- e** the accusative singular of *campus* (*plain*)
- f** the nominative plural of *odium* (*hatred*)
- g** the genitive plural of *initium* (*beginning*)
- h** the ablative plural of *medicus* (*doctor*)
- i** the accusative plural of *funambulus* (*tightrope walker*)
- j** the dative singular of *ferrum* (*iron, sword*)

8 What case and number are these second declension nouns?

If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. *dona* (*gift*) → 1. nom. pl. 2. voc. pl. 3. acc. pl.

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| a <i>tribuni</i> (<i>tribune</i>) | e <i>unguento</i> (<i>ointment, perfume</i>) | h <i>psittaco</i> (<i>parrot</i>) |
| b <i>rivulis</i> (<i>brook</i>) | f <i>vinum</i> (<i>wine</i>) | i <i>ovi</i> (<i>egg</i>) |
| c <i>gladium</i> (<i>sword</i>) | g <i>cumulorum</i> (<i>heap</i>) | j <i>servi</i> (<i>slave</i>) |
| d <i>tela</i> (<i>weapon</i>) | | |

9 Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following second declension nouns.

e.g. *alabaster* → *alabastri*, masculine, *perfume box*

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| a Auster | e administer | i furcifer |
| b Hister | f aquilifer | j laniger |
| c caper | g culter | |
| d cancer | h aper | |

10 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural where appropriate, of the following nouns. Remember to check the genitive.

e.g. *gener* (*son-in-law*)

| | Singular | Plural |
|------|------------------|------------------|
| nom. | → gener | generi |
| voc. | → gener | generi |
| acc. | → generum | generos |
| gen. | → generi | generorum |
| dat. | → genero | generis |
| abl. | → genero | generis |

- | | |
|--|---|
| a arbiter (<i>umpire</i>) | f socer (<i>father-in-law</i>) |
| b Lucifer (<i>the morning star, the planet Venus</i>) (singular only) | g liber (<i>book</i>) |
| c ingenium (<i>nature, disposition</i>) | h socius (<i>ally</i>) |
| d Cornelius (<i>Cornelius</i>) | i armiger (<i>armour bearer</i>) |
| e Alexander (<i>Alexander</i>) (singular only) | j studium (<i>zeal, study</i>) |

11 Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the dative plural of *aper* (*boar*) → *apris*

- a** the genitive plural of *liberi* (*children*)
- b** the dative singular of *trifurcifer* (*hardened criminal*)
- c** the accusative singular of *minister* (*attendant*)
- d** the ablative plural of *puer* (*boy*)
- e** the dative plural of *oleaster* (*wild olive*)

- f** the nominative plural of **fiber** (*beaver*)
- g** the vocative singular of **Tiberius** (*Tiberius*)
- h** the genitive singular of **faber** (*craftsman*)
- i** the accusative plural of **magister** (*teacher*)
- j** the ablative singular of **semivir** (*half-man*)

12 What case and number are these second declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. **deum** (*god*) → 1. acc. sing. 2. alternative gen. pl.

- | | |
|---|---|
| a libros (<i>book</i>) | f fabrum (<i>craftsman</i>) |
| b socer (<i>father-in-law</i>) | g ministri (<i>attendant</i>) |
| c magistro (<i>teacher</i>) | h socii (<i>ally</i>) |
| d pueri (<i>boy</i>) | i liberis (<i>children</i>) |
| e Iuli (<i>Julius</i>) | j ingenia (<i>nature, disposition</i>) |

13 Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following third declension nouns.

e.g. **imperator** → **imperatoris**, masculine, *general*

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| a tempus | e coniunx | i opus |
| b consul | f iudex | j dolor |
| c caput | g tempestas | |
| d miles | h clamor | |

14 When you meet third declension increasing nouns in your reading they will often not be in the nominative case and you will need to be able to look the noun up in a dictionary from knowing only the word you have in front of you. You should look for a noun which starts with the same few letters and check the genitive singular. If the stem of the genitive is the same as the stem of the word you are checking then that is your noun.

Use your dictionary to find out which nouns the following cases come from and write down the nominative singular and meaning. This will take some patience but do not give up because you will be practising a very important skill.

e.g. *lapidibus* → *lapis* (*stone*)

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| a amorum | e nomina | i aequoribus |
| b pariete | f salem | j homines |
| c aetates | g virtutum | |
| d custodis | h pecudi | |

15 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of these nouns.

e.g. *rex* (*king*)

| | Singular | Plural | | Singular | Plural |
|------|----------------|--------------|------|----------------|----------------|
| nom. | → <i>rex</i> | <i>reges</i> | gen. | → <i>regis</i> | <i>regum</i> |
| voc. | → <i>rex</i> | <i>reges</i> | dat. | → <i>regi</i> | <i>regibus</i> |
| acc. | → <i>regem</i> | <i>reges</i> | abl. | → <i>rege</i> | <i>regibus</i> |

| | |
|--|---|
| a <i>flos</i> (<i>flower</i>) | f <i>anser</i> (<i>goose</i>) |
| b <i>dignitas</i> (<i>worthiness</i>) | g <i>laus</i> (<i>praise</i>) |
| c <i>pes</i> (<i>foot</i>) | h <i>virgo</i> (<i>maiden</i>) |
| d <i>aestas</i> (<i>summer</i>) | i <i>sol</i> (<i>sun</i>) |
| e <i>princeps</i> (<i>chief</i>) | j <i>carmen</i> (<i>song</i>) |

16 What case and number are these third declension nouns?

If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. *legionibus* (*legion*) → 1. dat. pl. 2. abl. pl.

| | |
|--|---|
| a <i>segetem</i> (<i>crop</i>) | f <i>corda</i> (<i>heart</i>) |
| b <i>libertate</i> (<i>freedom</i>) | g <i>quietis</i> (<i>rest</i>) |
| c <i>cineri</i> (<i>cinder</i>) | h <i>obsides</i> (<i>hostage</i>) |
| d <i>honorum</i> (<i>honour</i>) | i <i>nepotibus</i> (<i>grandson</i>) |
| e <i>ebur</i> (<i>ivory</i>) | j <i>litora</i> (<i>shore</i>) |

17 Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following third declension nouns.

e.g. *nubes* → *nubis*, feminine, *cloud*

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| a <i>clades</i> | e <i>vectigal</i> | i <i>clavis</i> |
| b <i>ignis</i> | f <i>sedile</i> | j <i>iubar</i> |
| c <i>imber</i> | g <i>avis</i> | |
| d <i>amnis</i> | h <i>valles</i> | |

When you meet third declension non-increasing nouns in your reading they will not often be in the nominative case. As with increasing nouns, it is important to be able to find the nominative singular of the noun you are looking at. This is generally easier to do with non-increasing nouns because their nominative endings are more predictable (see exercise 14 above).

18 Use your dictionary to find which nouns the following cases belong to, then write down the nominative singular and meaning.

e.g. cubilia → cubile (*couch*)

a arietibus

e oves

i orbi

b ense

f crinis

j conclavia

c cutem

g axium

d securibus

h fronde

19 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of these nouns.

e.g. rudis (*practice sword*)

| | Singular | Plural |
|------|----------------|----------------|
| nom. | → rudis | rudes |
| voc. | → rudis | rudes |
| acc. | → rudem | rudes or rudis |
| gen. | → rudis | rudium |
| dat. | → rudi | rudibus |
| abl. | → rudi or rude | rudibus |

a puppis (*stern deck*)

b moles (*mass, bulk*)

20 What case and number are these third declension nouns?

If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. calcar (*spur*) → 1. nom. sing. 2. voc. sing. 3. acc. sing.

a fami (*hunger*)

d bellis (*daisy*)

h stirpe (*stem*)

b nectaris (*nectar*)

e lintrem (*boat*)

i ancilia (*shield*)

c tribunal (*platform, judgement seat*)

f vermis (*worm*)

j vulpibus (*fox*)

g artium (*art*)

21 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of these fourth declension nouns.

e.g. *veru* (*a spit*)

| | Singular | Plural |
|------|----------------|----------------|
| nom. | → veru | verua |
| voc. | → veru | verua |
| acc. | → veru | verua |
| gen. | → verus | veruum |
| dat. | → veru | veribus |
| abl. | → veru | veribus |

- | | | |
|--|--|------------------------------------|
| a saltus (<i>leap, mountain pass</i>) | d tribus (<i>tribe</i>) | h exitus (<i>exit</i>) |
| b portus (<i>harbour</i>) | e porticus (<i>colonnade</i>) | i impetus (<i>attack</i>) |
| c cornu (<i>horn</i>) | f ictus (<i>stroke, blow</i>) | j manus (<i>hand</i>) |
| | g gemitus (<i>groan</i>) | |

22 What case and number are these fourth declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. *genibus* (*knee*) → 1. dat. pl. 2. abl. pl.

- | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| a artuum (<i>limb</i>) | d tonitru (<i>thunder</i>) | h luctu (<i>lamentation</i>) |
| b abitum (<i>departure</i>) | e versus (<i>verse</i>) | i monitus (<i>warning</i>) |
| c magistratibus (<i>magistrate</i>) | f arcui (<i>bow</i>) | j orsuum (<i>beginning</i>) |
| | g partubus (<i>offspring</i>) | |

23 You will need to avoid confusion between the fourth and second declensions. Look up these nouns, check their genitives and say which declension they belong to.

e.g. *sonitus* (*sound*) → fourth declension

- | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a coniectus (<i>heap, mass</i>) | e mercatus (<i>trade</i>) | i reditus (<i>return</i>) |
| b mundus (<i>world, universe</i>) | f questus (<i>complaint</i>) | j morsus (<i>bite</i>) |
| c quercus (<i>oak</i>) | g modulus (<i>measure</i>) | |
| d nodus (<i>knot</i>) | h ramus (<i>branch</i>) | |

24 Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the ablative singular of *gradus* (*step*) → *gradu*

- a** the genitive singular of *census* (*census*)
- b** the dative plural of *circumiectus* (*enclosure*)
- c** the accusative plural of *currus* (*chariot*)
- d** the nominative plural of *electus* (*choice*)
- e** the genitive plural of *anus* (*old woman*)
- f** the dative singular of *usus* (*use*)
- g** the ablative plural of *fructus* (*fruit, income*)
- h** the accusative singular of *cursus* (*passage, course*)
- i** the ablative singular of *domitus* (*taming*)
- j** the vocative plural of *rictus* (*gaping jaws*)

25 Write out the genitive singular and meaning of the following fifth declension nouns.

e.g. *facies* → *faciei*, *face*

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| a progenies | f congeries |
| b pauperies | g temperies |
| c caesaries | h materies |
| d tristities | i macies |
| e permities | j planities |

26 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of the following fifth declension nouns.

e.g. *facies* (*face, appearance*)

| | Singular | Plural |
|--------|---------------|-----------------|
| nom. → | <i>facies</i> | <i>facies</i> |
| voc. → | <i>facies</i> | <i>facies</i> |
| acc. → | <i>faciem</i> | <i>facies</i> |
| gen. → | <i>faciei</i> | <i>facierum</i> |
| dat. → | <i>faciei</i> | <i>faciebus</i> |
| abl. → | <i>facie</i> | <i>faciebus</i> |

- | | |
|--|--|
| a <i>glacies</i> (<i>ice</i>) (sing.) | c <i>acies</i> (<i>glance, battle line</i>) |
| b <i>canities</i> (<i>grey hair, old age</i>) (sing.) | d <i>effigies</i> (<i>likeness, statue</i>) |

e superficies (*surface*)

f fides (*pledge, trust*)

g meridies (*noon*)

h spes (*hope*)

i species (*form, appearance*)

j diluvies (*flood*)

27 Which case and number are these fifth declension nouns?

If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. rei (*thing*) → 1. gen. sing. 2. dat. sing.

a seriem (*row, series*)

b dierum (*day*)

c faciebus (*face, appearance*)

d meridiei (*midday*)

e sanie (*venom*)

f vastities (*ruin*)

g scabiem (*roughness, itch*)

h eluvie (*overflow, discharge*)

i rabiem (*madness*)

j carie (*dry rot*)

28 Write out the full declensions of the following first declension Greek nouns, in the singular only for proper names.

e.g. campe (*evasion*)

| | | Singular | Plural |
|------|---|----------|----------|
| nom. | → | campe | campae |
| voc. | → | campe | campae |
| acc. | → | campen | campas |
| gen. | → | campes | camparum |
| dat. | → | campae | campis |
| abl. | → | campe | campis |

a Hylas (a friend of Hercules)

b Daphne (a nymph loved by Apollo)

c Atrides (son of Atreus)
(include the plural)

d Hecate (goddess of witchcraft)

e harpe (*scimitar*)

f Boreas (the North Wind)

g crambe (*cabbage*)

h Cybele (an oriental goddess)

i Cyrene (a city in North Africa)

j Hebe (a nymph)

29 Write out the full declensions of the following second and third declension Greek nouns, in the singular only for proper names. Remember to check the genitive to see which declension they come from and to find their stems.

e.g. Socrates (*Socrates*)

Singular

| | | |
|------|---|----------------------|
| nom. | → | Socrates |
| voc. | → | Socrates or Socrate |
| acc. | → | Socraten or Socratem |
| gen. | → | Socratis |
| dat. | → | Socrati |
| abl. | → | Socrate |

a lampas (*torch*)

b lynx (*lynx*)

c Babylon (a city)

d Agamemnon (Greek leader in Trojan War)

e Pericles (an Athenian statesman)

f Rhodos (Rhodes, an Aegean island)

g Paris (a Trojan prince)

h Orpheus (a poet)

i Chios (an Aegean island)

j heros (*hero*)

30 What case and number are the following Greek nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. Panos (the god Pan) → gen. sing.

a chryso (*gold*)

b Xerxen (Xerxes, king of Persia)

c Platonis (Plato, a philosopher)

d Naxi (Naxos, an Aegean island)

e Didonem (Dido, queen of Carthage)

f dorcadas (*gazelle*)

g Tydeu (a hero, father of Diomedes)

h xiphiae (*swordfish*)

i Typhoea (Typhoeus, a monster under Mt Etna)

j Zancles (Messana, a town)

31 Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following Greek nouns. If you can, try to identify the proper names as well.

e.g. Mithridates → Mithridatis, masculine, Mithridates (a king of Pontus)

- | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| a poema | e Sophocles | i Theseus |
| b Euripides | f Eurydice | j Lemnos |
| c Phlegethon | g psephisma | |
| d Tros | h Dione | |

32 Say what case and number the following nouns are and whether they come from *vis* → strength or *vir* → man. If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. *viro* → 1. dat. sing. 2. abl. sing. from *vir*

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| a vim | f virorum |
| b viris | g vi |
| c viros | h viri |
| d virum | i virium |
| e viribus | j vires |

33 Write out the declensions of the following words which decline like *senex* → old man. Remember to check the genitive.

| | Singular | Plural |
|--------|----------|---------|
| nom. → | senex | senes |
| voc. → | senex | senes |
| acc. → | senem | senes |
| gen. → | senis | senum |
| dat. → | seni | senibus |
| abl. → | sene | senibus |

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a frater (<i>brother</i>) | f sedes (<i>seat</i>) |
| b iuvenis (<i>young man</i>) | g accipiter (<i>hawk</i>) |
| c mater (<i>mother</i>) | h mensis (<i>month</i>) |
| d canis (<i>dog</i>) | i volucris (<i>bird</i>) |
| e pater (<i>father</i>) | j vates (<i>prophet</i>) |

Points to remember

- 1 The declension of a noun is shown by its genitive singular ending, which appears after the nominative in dictionary entries. These are **-ae** (first), **-ī** (second), **-is** (third), **-ūs** (fourth) and **-ēi** (fifth).
- 2 The gender of nouns denoting male or female occupations is obvious. E.g. **mater** (*mother*) is feminine and **pater** (*father*) is masculine. Otherwise nouns can be of any gender. E.g. **fluvius** (masculine) and **flumen** (neuter) both mean *river*. As a general rule abstract nouns are feminine.
- 3 There are no neuter nouns in the first declension but plenty of masculine nouns and names. E.g. **nauta** (*sailor*), **scriba** (*scribe*), **agricola** (*farmer*), **poeta** (*poet*) and **Sulla** (the Roman dictator).
- 4 A second declension noun to watch out for is **vir** (*man* or *hero*) because it doesn't look exactly like the others in the declension. Be particularly careful not to confuse it with **vis** (*force*) from the third declension.
- 5 The increasing nouns in the third declension have one more syllable in the genitive singular than in the nominative singular.
- 6 The non-increasing nouns in the third declension have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular.
- 7 The masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension are not common and are easy to confuse with the masculine nouns of the second declension because their nominatives are the same. Watch out for this.
- 8 The nouns of the fifth declension are few in number and all feminine except for **dies** (*day*).
- 9 In the compound word **respublica** (*republic*), the nouns **res** and **publica** decline separately in their own declensions (fifth and first respectively).
- 10 Greek nouns used in Latin (mostly names) sometimes retain their original case endings. Note especially the third declension genitive singular ending **-os**.

4

Cases

In this chapter you should aim to

- *understand the functions of cases in an inflected language*
 - *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*
-

A Nominative and vocative

1 Nominatives and vocatives are alike except in the singular of the second declension (see Unit 3E).

2 The subject

- ▶ The nominative case is the name of a noun and is used when that noun is the **subject** of a sentence. If the verb of a sentence is active (see Unit 1H), the subject is the person or thing performing the action of the verb.
e.g. *mus elephantum terret* → *the mouse frightens the elephant.*
The mouse is doing the frightening so it is the subject.
- ▶ If the verb of the sentence is passive (see 1H and Unit 8), the subject is the person or thing experiencing the action of the verb.
e.g. *mus ab elephanto terretur* → *the mouse is frightened by the elephant.* The mouse is now experiencing the fright so it is the **subject**.
- ▶ In English we usually start our sentences with the subject but in Latin the subject can come anywhere in a sentence or clause (see Introduction).
e.g. *legiones Gallos superaverunt* → *the legions have overcome the Gauls*
Caesaerem Brutus necavit → *Brutus killed Caesar*
plaustrum trahunt boves → *the oxen pull the wagon*

3 The complement

The nominative is also used when one noun is the complement of another. In other words, the subject of the sentence is referred to by another noun.

e.g. Caesar electus est *imperator* → *Caesar has been chosen as general*. The noun *imperator* (*general*) refers to the subject (Caesar) and so is the **complement** and is in the nominative.

4 The vocative case

The vocative case is used when addressing someone or something.

e.g. *ave Caesar!* → *hail Caesar!*

salvete filii → *hello sons*

salve sol → *hello sun*

Examples of second declension vocatives are:

- ▶ *et tu Brute?* → *you too Brutus?* (Julius Caesar's dying words in Latin)
- ▶ *salve Valeri* → *hello Valerius*
- ▶ *o fili* → *o son*

5 Technically, the nominative case is known as the *casus rectus* but you will probably never meet this term. However, you will probably meet the term *oblique cases* which is another way of referring to all cases apart from the nominative.

B Accusative

Nouns in the accusative belong to one of the following categories.

1 The direct object

- ▶ The direct object, usually just called the object, is the noun which experiences or suffers the action of the verb when the verb is active (see Unit 1H) and transitive (see Unit 1M). When the verb is passive there is no object. The object is in the accusative case.

e.g. *mus elephantum terret* → *the mouse frightens the elephant*. The elephant suffers the fright so it is the object.

- ▶ In English we usually put the object after the verb but in Latin the object can come anywhere in a sentence or clause (see Introduction).
e.g. *anserem vulpes spectat* → *the fox is watching the goose*
corvus caseum gustat → *the crow is tasting the cheese*
senator salutavit amicum → the senator greeted his *friend*
- ▶ Some verbs, usually of making, calling and teaching, take two accusatives, one of the person and another of the thing,
e.g. *puerum Latinam doceo* → *I am teaching the boy Latin.*
Tarquinium regem fecerunt → *they made Tarquin king.*

2 Extent of time or space

- ▶ For the accusative expressing duration of time see G1.
- ▶ To express age, e.g. *puer decem annos natus* → *a ten-year-old boy* (i.e. born *for ten years*).
- ▶ To express extent of space, e.g. *tria mila ambulabamus* → *we walked for three miles*, *draco multa milia aberat* → *the dragon was many miles away*, *rupes est centum pedes alta* → *the crag is a hundred feet high*.

3 Direction towards

The accusative can mean motion towards, e.g. **Romam** → *to Rome*. (For more details and the locative case, see F.)

4 The accusative is used after certain prepositions, e.g. **ad curiam** → *to the senate house*. (See Unit 6 for a detailed account of prepositions.)

5 Internal accusative

This is also called the accusative of respect and the adverbial accusative. It is not used as the object of a verb, often refers to part of the body and is usually poetic, e.g. **saucius artus** → *wounded in (respect of) his limbs*.

6 Accusative of exclamation

This expresses amazement, disbelief, outrage or distress, often with an adjective, e.g. **o fortunatam Romam** → *o fortunate Rome* and **me miserum!** → *o wretched me!*

C Genitive

A good general rule is that the genitive is used for nouns which in English have the word 'of' before them. It has a wide variety of uses in Latin. Do not be put off by the official names. All the uses are straightforward.

1 Possessive genitive

- ▶ This is used as in English to express possession, e.g. *liber puellae* → *the girl's book* (i.e. the book *of the girl*) or *equus regis* → *the king's horse*.
- ▶ As in English this can be used to express association as well as ownership. This is sometimes called the subjective genitive, e.g. *libri Ovidii* → *the works of Ovid* (i.e. *books written by Ovid*), *coniuratio Catilinae* → *the conspiracy of Catiline* or *amor matris* → *the love of a mother* (i.e. the love felt by a mother).

2 Attributive genitive

This is used as in English to describe the content or material of which something consists, e.g. *acervus frumenti* → *a pile of corn* or *vincula ferri* → *shackles of iron*.

3 Appositional genitive or genitive of definition

This is used with another noun which it defines further, e.g. *ars scribendi* → *the art of writing* (for the verbal noun *scribendi* see gerund Unit 10E), *hoc nomen regis* → *this title (of) king* or *ipsum verbum veneni* → *the very word (of) poison*.

4 Genitive of characteristic

This is used where in English the characteristic, nature or duty of something is expressed, e.g. *est custodis curare portas* → *it is (the duty) of a guard to look after the gates*; *est viri pii deos colere* → *it is (the nature) of a pious man to worship the gods*.

5 Genitive of quality, description

This is used as in English with an adjective or number to express a quality of a person or thing, as well as size, number and age, e.g. *vir egregiae virtutis* → *a man of outstanding valour*; *fossa viginti*

pedum → a ditch of twenty feet; *natio quinque tribuum* → a nation of five tribes; *puer annorum septem* → a boy of seven years.

6 Objective genitive

This is used with nouns and adjectives (especially those ending in *-ax*) which contain a strong verbal sense, e.g. *odium belli* → a hatred of war and *amor matris* → the love of a mother (i.e. felt for a mother), *laudem tuam nostri amamus* → we like your praise of us (see also Unit 7A for the genitive pronoun *nostri*) and *mens ingenii capax* → a mind capable of genius.

7 Partitive genitive or genitive of the whole

- ▶ This is used when a part of a larger amount or number is referred to.

e.g. *pars villae* → part of the estate

partem thesauri celavit → he hid part of the treasure

multi militum → many of the soldiers

complures nostrum → several of us (see also Unit 7A on the genitive pronoun *nostrum*)

- ▶ The partitive genitive is often found with the following neuter pronouns and adjectives of quantity in a way not used in English. We generally leave out the 'of'.

e.g. *plus vini* → more (of) wine (see also Unit 5L on *plus* → more)

aliquid novi → some (of) news

quid novi? → what (of) news?

multum sanguinis → much (of) blood

satis clamorum → enough (of) shouting

nimis violentiae → too much (of) violence

parum cibi → not enough (of) food

tantum doloris → so much (of) grief

nihil virium → no strength (nothing of strength)

quantum aquae? → how much (of) water?

minus papyri → less (of) paper

hoc temporis → at this (point in/of) time

quicquam panis → any (of) bread

- ▶ The partitive genitive *gentium* (of nations) and *terrarum* (of countries) is used in questions like *ubi gentium sum?* → where in the world am I? (*where of the nations?* in Latin).

8 After verbs and adjectives

Some verbs and adjectives are followed by a genitive, as in English. A dictionary entry will tell you whether this happens for a particular verb or adjective. (For **impersonal verbs** which take the genitive see Unit 12D). It generally occurs after:

- ▶ Verbs and adjectives of condemning, accusing, acquitting or convicting, e.g. *maiestatis convictus est* → *he was convicted of treason*.
- ▶ Verbs and adjectives of want or fullness, e.g. *plenus aquae* → *full of water* and *armorum indiget* → *he is in need of weapons*. The deponent verb *potior* → *take possession of* (see Unit 8) is of this type.
- ▶ Verbs and adjectives of remembering, forgetting or reminding, e.g. *periculi memor* → *mindful of the danger* or *verborum oblitus sum* → *I forgot the words*.
- ▶ Verbs of valuing, buying and selling. The genitive is usually an adjective or pronoun and is called the **genitive of value**. The commonest examples are *magni*, *parvi*, *plurimi*, *minimi*, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris* and *minoris*, e.g. *divitias parvi aestimat* → *he values riches (of) little*, *canem magni pretii emit* → *he bought the dog for a great price (of a great price in Latin)*, *felem minoris emit* → *he bought the cat for less (of less in Latin)*.

D Dative case

The dative case has a wide variety of uses. It is generally used for nouns which in English have ‘to’ or ‘for’ before them.

1 Dative of indirect object

- ▶ In Latin (as in English), when transitive verbs of giving, sending, saying, telling, promising or showing etc. take a direct object in the accusative (see B1), the person (or thing) to whom the object is given, shown or sent etc. is the indirect object. In Latin the indirect object is in the dative, e.g. *epistulam imperatori misisti* → *you sent a letter to the emperor*. In English we do not always need the ‘to’, e.g. *dic mihi causas* → *tell me the reasons*.

- Some verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin and so, instead of taking a direct object in the accusative, they take the dative. The most common are the verbs below. Most of them contain the idea of being favourable to someone (or the opposite).

credo -ere credidi creditum → *believe*

desum deesse defui → *fail in one's duty, be lacking*

faveo -ere favi fautum → *support*

fido -ere fisus sum (semi-deponent: see Unit 8N) → *trust*

(and its compounds like **diffido** → *mistrust*)

ignosco -ere ignovi ignotum → *forgive*

impero -are -avi -atum → *order*

indulgeo -ere indulsi → *indulge*

intersum interesse interfui → *be among*

invideo -ere invidi invisum → *envy*

irascor irasci iratus sum → *be angry with* (deponent:

see Unit 8J)

minor -ari -atus sum → *threaten* (deponent)

noceo -ere -ui -itum → *harm*

nubo -ere nupsi nuptum → *marry a man* (only with a woman as the subject)

obsum obesse obfui → *be a hindrance to* (cf. **obviam ire** + dative → *meet*)

parco -ere peperi parsum → *spare*

pareo -ere -ui -itum → *obey*

placeo -ere -ui -itum → *please*

praesum praeesse praefui → *be in command of*

prosum proesse profui → *be of benefit to*

resisto -ere restiti → *resist*

servio -ire -ivi -itum → *serve, be a slave to*

studeo -ere -ui → *study, be keen on*

suadeo -ere suasi suasum → *advise* (and the compound **persuadeo** → *persuade*)

subvenio -ire subveni subventum → *come to help*

supersum superesse superfui → *survive*

For impersonal verbs with the dative, see Unit 12C.

- ▶ It can be used in the same way with adjectives which express likeness, help, proximity, trust etc, e.g. *fidelis amico erat* → *he was faithful to his friend*; *filia simillima matri est* → *the daughter is very like her mother*; *Marcus par fratri est* → *Marcus is equal to his brother*.

Some of these adjectives can also take the genitive (see C8).

2 Dative of advantage and disadvantage

The person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage something is done is in the **dative**, e.g. *hoc nobis facimus* → *we are doing this for ourselves* (for *hoc* see Unit 7E), *Brutus Caesari vitam abstulit* → *Brutus stole the life from Caesar*.

3 Dative of reference and ethic dative

- ▶ The **dative of reference** indicates the person who is interested or involved in the action. It is often best translated by phrases such as *in the eyes of x*, *in x's judgement* or *as far as x is concerned* etc., e.g. *Caesar Cassio regnare cupit* → *in Cassio's eyes Caesar wants to be a king*.
- ▶ The so-called **ethic dative** of a personal pronoun (Unit 7A) is used to mark interest or call attention in familiar conversation, e.g. *haec vobis mox fecit* → *he soon did this, mind you*.

4 The **dative of possession** is used with the verb *to be* to indicate ownership, e.g. *sunt mihi quinque equi* → *I have five horses* (literally: *there are five horses for me*).

5 The **dative of agent** refers to the person or thing by whose agency something must be done and is used with the **gerundive** (see Unit 10J), e.g. *laborandum est mihi* → *I must work* (literally: *work must be done by me*).

6 The **dative of purpose** expresses the intended purpose for which something is done, e.g. *Caesar locum proelio delegit* → *Caesar chose a site for the battle*.

7 Predicative dative

- ▶ The predicative dative is not easily translatable into English. It is a specialized use of the dative, always accompanied by a dative of reference (or dative of advantage or dative of disadvantage). The verb most usually found in these expressions is *to be*, although other verbs do occur. The best way to translate it is to treat it as ‘a source of’, e.g. *Britanni auxilio erant Gallis* → *the Britons were a source of help to the Gauls* (literally: *the Britons were for a help to the Gauls*). The Gauls (*Gallis*) are in the dative of advantage.
- ▶ Other common examples apart from **auxilio esse** are:
 - beneficio esse** → *to be a benefit to*
 - bono esse** → *to be a source of good to*, e.g. *cui bono?* → *for whom is it good?* (who benefits?)
 - curae esse** → *to be a source of concern to*
 - dedecori esse** → *to be a disgrace to*
 - honori esse** → *to be an honour to*
 - odio esse** → *to be a source of hatred to*
 - periculo esse** → *to be a danger to*
 - subsidio esse** → *to be a support to*
 - decori esse** → *to be a source of glory to*
 - exemplo esse** → *to be an example to*
 - laudi esse** → *to be a credit to*
 - oneri esse** → *to be a burden to*
 - saluti esse** → *to be a salvation to*
 - usui esse** → *to be of use to*

E Ablative case

The ablative case is the one with the widest range of meanings in Latin. Broadly speaking, it corresponds to nouns in English which have ‘by’, ‘with’ or ‘from’ before them.

- 1 The **ablative of separation** is used with the adverb *procul* (*far away*) and verbs and adjectives which express the idea of keeping away from something, lacking something or being free of something.

- e.g. *agricola leones gregibus abegit* → *the farmer drove the lions away from his flocks*
procul negotio, ad villam ambulat → *far from business, he is walking to the estate*
procul patria fugit → *he fled far from his fatherland*
- 2** The ablative of origin is used to indicate descent or origin, e.g. *Aeneas dea natus est* → *Aeneas was born of (from) a goddess.*
- 3** The ablative of comparison is used to show the point of comparison after comparative adjectives and adverbs instead of *quam* → *than* + nominative or accusative (see Unit 5M), e.g. *cameleopardus elephanto altior est* → *the giraffe is taller than the elephant.*
- 4** The ablative of association is used with verbs and adjectives with the sense of plenty, etc., e.g. *insula materia abundat* → *the island abounds with timber.*
- 5** The ablative of respect is used like the accusative of respect (see B5) and means ‘in respect of’. It is normally translated with the word ‘in’ before it. The adjective *dignus* → *worthy* regularly takes this kind of ablative.
 e.g. *Philoctetes pede vulneratus est* → *Philoctetes has been wounded in the foot*
miles nautam viribus superat → *the soldier surpasses the sailor in strength*
Augustus certe laude dignus erat → *Augustus was certainly worthy of praise*
- 6** The ablative of quality or description is used with an adjective to describe something, e.g. *praestanti forma femina* → *a woman of outstanding beauty.*
- 7** The ablative of manner or of attendant circumstances expresses the way or the circumstances in which something happens or is done.
 e.g. *draco lento gradu appropinquavit* → *the dragon approached with slow step*
silentio ambulabat → *he was walking in silence*
per vias clamoribus ambulabat → *he was walking through the streets amid the shouting*
- 8** For the ablative absolute construction see Unit 13.
- 9** For the ablative after prepositions see Unit 6B.

- 10** For the **ablative of time when and time within which** see G2–3.
- 11** For the **ablative with impersonal verbs** see Unit 12F.
- 12** The **ablative of the agent** is used after **passive verbs** with the preposition **ab/a** to indicate the person (**agent**) by whom something is done (Unit 8E), e.g. *Caesar a Bruto necatus est* → *Caesar was slain by Brutus*.
- 13** The **ablative of instrument or means**
- ▷ This is used after **verbs** without a preposition and indicates the thing (instrument) by or with which something is done, e.g. *Brutus Caesarem pugione necavit* → *Brutus killed Caesar with a dagger*.
 - ▷ It is also used after certain verbs (mostly **deponent**: see Unit 8M) which are transitive in English but **intransitive** in Latin. The most common are:
 - abutor abuti abusus sum* → *use up, exhaust*
 - fruor frui fructus sum* → *enjoy*
 - fungor fungi functus sum* → *perform*
 - utor uti usus sum* → *use*
 - vescor vesci* → *feed on*
- 14** The **ablative of cause** is used with adjectives and verbs (especially when describing a mental state) to express the reason for or cause of something, e.g. *servi domino parent formidine poenae* → *the slaves obey their master through fear of punishment*.
- 15** The **ablative of measure of difference** is used to express a degree of difference with comparatives and superlatives. The most common are:
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>hoc</i> → <i>by this much</i> | <i>eo</i> → <i>by that much</i> |
| <i>quo</i> → <i>by which</i> | <i>nihilo</i> → <i>by nothing</i> |
| <i>nimio</i> → <i>by too much</i> | <i>dimidio</i> → <i>by half</i> |
| <i>quanto</i> → <i>by how much</i> | <i>tanto</i> → <i>by so much</i> |
| <i>paulo</i> → <i>by a little</i> | <i>multo</i> → <i>by much</i> |
| <i>aliquanto</i> → <i>by a little</i> | |
- e.g. *elephantus multo maior quam mus est* → *the elephant is (by) much bigger than the mouse*.
- 16** The **ablative of price** is used with verbs and adjectives of buying and selling, e.g. *equum tribus talentis emit* → *he bought the horse for three talents*.

NB **magno** → *at a great price*, **parvo** → *at a small price*, **vili** → *at a cheap price* and **minimo** → *very cheaply*.

- 17** The **ablative of place** (see also the **locative case** at F) is more common in verse and is used to indicate the place where something happens, e.g. *summo monte castra posuerunt* → *they pitched camp on the top of the mountain*; *terra marique monstrum petivit* → *he searched for the monster on land and sea*. (For the ending **-que** → *and*, see Unit 6E).

F Locative case

The **locative** is the remnant of a case which once existed independently in Latin. It is used to express location and is *never* accompanied by a preposition.

- 1** The names of cities, towns and small islands have a **locative** form. The locative endings for the different declensions follow. You will see that they look like the genitives or ablatives of the same noun. Remember that in Latin some place names exist in the plural. We do not find place names in the fourth and fifth declensions.

| | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1st declension singular | Roma → <i>Rome</i> | Romae → <i>at Rome</i> |
| 1st declension plural | Athenae → <i>Athens</i> | Athenis → <i>at Athens</i> |
| 2nd declension singular | Corinthus → <i>Corinth</i> | Corinthe → <i>at Corinth</i> |
| 2nd declension plural | Philippi → <i>Philippi</i> | Philippis → <i>at Philippi</i> |
| 3rd declension singular | Carthago → <i>Carthage</i> | Carthagini → <i>at Carthage</i> |
| 3rd declension plural | Gades → <i>Cadiz</i> | Gadibus → <i>at Cadiz</i> |

- 2** Direction towards a place is expressed in the **accusative**, e.g. *Romam iter facimus* → *we are making a journey to Rome*.
- 3** Direction away from a place is expressed by the **ablative**, e.g. *Roma discessit* → *he departed from Rome*.
- 4** The nouns **domus -us f.** → *house*, **rus ruris n.** → *countryside*, **bellum -i n.** → *war*, **humus -i f.** → *ground* and **militia -ae f.** → *military service* also have special locative forms:

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| domi → <i>at home</i> | rus → <i>to the countryside</i> |
| domum → <i>homewards</i> | ruri → <i>in the countryside</i> |
| domo → <i>from home</i> | humi → <i>on the ground</i> |
| belli → <i>at war</i> | militiae → <i>on military service</i> |

G Expressions of time

- ▶ The **accusative** is used to express *how long* something takes to happen, e.g. *multos annos terram errabat* → *he wandered the land for many years*. Notice that the accusative *terram* is the direct object of the verb, e.g. *totam noctem vigilabant* → *they stayed awake for the whole night*.
- ▶ The **ablative** is used to express the time **when** something happens, e.g. *tertio die ad oppidum pervenerunt* → *they arrived at the town on the third day*; *hieme ursi in speluncis dormiunt* → *in winter the bears sleep in caves*; *vesperi cantamus* → *in the evening we sing*.
- ▶ The **ablative** is also used to express time **within which** something happens, e.g. *paucis diebus pueri advenient* → *the boys will arrive in (within) a few days*.

1 Identify only the subjects in the following English sentences.

e.g. *Five red foxes ran through the farmyard* → foxes

- | | |
|---|---|
| a This box is not to be opened. | f Marius was a great general. |
| b Do the pirates have a flag? | g Diamonds are a girl's best friend. |
| c We have been released. | h How heavy are those ostriches? |
| d It is finished. | i Are you going out? |
| e Where are the onions and cabbages? | j The dish ran away with the spoon. |

2 Translate the following sentences into English. The nominatives are used for the subjects. Remember that there is no word for 'the' in Latin so you will have to supply it if it helps the sense.

e.g. *canes saliebant* → *the dogs were leaping*

- a** *pedites ambulaverunt sed legatus equitavit.*
- b** *grues avolaverant.*
- c** *non ridet imperator.*
- d** *lepus non vicit.*

- e gladiatores sumus.
- f Cassius dormit.
- g miles et nauta bibebant.
- h pontifex dixit et plebs parebit.
- i magister docebat sed discipuli non audiebant.
- j Hercules diu laborabat

3 Translate the following sentences in which the nominative is used both for the subject and the complement.

e.g. *senatores erant proditores* → *the senators were traitors*

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a Merlinus erat magus. | f raptores captivi sunt. |
| b pauper erit princeps. | g oratores sunt mendaces. |
| c canis est pestis. | h Romani erant victores. |
| d Pheidias erat artifex. | i praetoriani erunt percussores. |
| e templa sunt aedificia. | j Brutus fuerat consul. |

4 Translate these sentences which have a mixture of nominatives and vocatives.

e.g. *non manebimus, pueri* → *we shall not wait, boys*

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a domine, hospites discedunt. | f Valeri, Iulius et Tiberius currunt. |
| b salvete agricolae! | g ave fili. |
| c Valeria, Tite, iuvenis cadit. | h pater, ver appropinquat. |
| d centurio, captivi effugerunt. | i ubi es, Marce? |
| e hostes adveniunt o milites! | j Fortuna, dea es. |

5 Identify the objects in the following sentences.

e.g. *we all like figs* → *figs*

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| a Asterix is chasing his dog. | f Why do flies eat dung? |
| b How many boxes have you filled? | g When will Hadrian visit the wall? |
| c Wars cause misery. | h I cannot see the signal. |
| d The wind helps boats. | i We are awaiting our orders. |
| e The otters are watching their mother. | j The doctor has cured the disease. |

6 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *ranae muscas capiebant* → *the frogs were catching flies*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a venatores clamores audiverunt. | g milites Claudium imperatorem fecerunt. |
| b magistri pueros docebant. | h actorem puellae plauserunt. |
| c druides taurum sacrificaverunt. | i avarus nummos amat. |
| d domine, servi panem portant. | j navis scopulum percussit. |
| e nuces sciuri celabant. | |
| f fabri murum aedificant. | |

7 Translate the following simple sentences into Latin.

e.g. *the priests were leading the procession* → *sacerdotes pompam ducebant*

- a** The senator is calling the allies.
- b** The river has flooded the fields.
- c** Hercules attacked the hydra.
- d** The boys love Amelia.
- e** The Gauls fear the Romans.
- f** The guards have closed the gates.
- g** The dogs are watching the shepherd.
- h** The farmer has freed the birds.
- i** They are hiding the gold.
- j** Cats do not like water.

8 Translate these sentences which contain accusatives of respect, accusatives of extent and accusatives of exclamation. The adjectives are easy to find in a dictionary.

e.g. *deus oculos nitidus est* → *the god is shining in his eyes (i.e. his eyes are shining)*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| a o incredibilem foeditatem. | f saucius eram manus. |
| b corpus valeo. | g lacus erat centum pedes altus. |
| c viginti gradus ambulavit. | h equus crurem claudicat. |
| d o mirabilem fortitudinem. | i o gloriam inconstantem. |
| e miles sex pedes altus est. | j nudus erat artus. |

9 Translate the following sentences into English. There is a mixture of types of genitive in them.

e.g. *tecta urbis video* → *I see the roofs of the city*

- | | |
|---|--|
| a puer versus Vergilii recitat. | l cives virum honestatis probant. |
| b disco artem equitandi. | m Hannibal visum oculi amisit. |
| c ianuam domus numquam aperio. | n aquae fluminis leniter fluebant. |
| d pastor filiam regis amat. | o corona gemmarum fulsit. |
| e voces liberorum audivistis. | p est ducis urbem curare. |
| f capillos capitis senis tonsor numerat. | q elephantum massas saxorum portant. |
| g catervam militum timemus. | r vulnera militum non videmus. |
| h est medici aegrotos sanare. | s exploratores culmina montium aspectabant. |
| i minae hostium liberos terrebant. | t linguam Romanorum discebant. |
| j acervi stercoris viam claudunt. | |
| k sonitus tonitrus ancillae audiverunt. | |

10 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Different types of genitive are included among them.

e.g. *The birds' voices delighted the listeners* → *voces avium auditores delectaverunt*

- a** The burdens press the donkeys' backs.
- b** Cassius is a man capable of cruelty.
- c** The men of the town will not fight.
- d** The slaves are washing the master's togas.
- e** We love the waves of the sea.
- f** The love of war destroys humanity.
- g** They did not see the light of the fire.
- h** I do not like the dog's breath.
- i** The wisdom of the queen has saved the ship.
- j** I have a weight of silver.
- k** It is a sailor's job to navigate.
- l** The prize of valour is glory.

- m** You (s.) will like the poet's house.
- n** Love of money is the root of evil.
- o** We have found the pile of eggs.
- p** The love of a mother sustains children.
- q** The Romans did not like the title king.
- r** We are seeking the wizard's treasure.
- s** Brutus' mother was sleeping.
- t** I know a man of a hundred years.

11 Translate the following sentences into English. There is a mixture of types of genitive in them.

e.g. *tantum felicitatis vidisti* → *you have seen so much happiness*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a agricola memor belli est. | k minus proelii imperator vidit. |
| b cives dignitatem magni aestimant. | l puellae aliquid panis portabant. |
| c fossores aliquid auri invenerunt. | m tantum casei vulpes cepit. |
| d ubi terrarum eramus? | n partem muri delevimus. |
| e quanti pretii domum emisti? | o quicquam pecuniae habes? |
| f pauperes calceorum indigebant. | p liberi nimis aquae biberunt. |
| g fur honestatem parvi aestimat. | q multi gladiatorum pugnabant. |
| h multum veneni senator devoraverat. | r complures captivorum aegrotant. |
| i satis onerum portat. | s pars pompae constitit. |
| j ascendatores parum funium habuerunt. | t naves magni pretii emerunt. |

12 Translate the following sentences into Latin. There is a mixture of types of genitive in them.

e.g. *Caesar had too much glory* → *Caesar nimis gloriae habebat*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a We desire enough houses. | d The lake is full of fish. |
| b The horses are dragging too much wood. | e The crow has taken some grain. |
| c Do you (s.) have any news? | f He is mindful of the danger. |

- g** Peace makes much wealth.
h Many of the children were playing.
i I have seen too much weeping.
j We are in need of water.
k At this point in time the guards are sleeping.
l He bought the farm for a small price.
m The shepherd is guarding part of the flock.
- n** Part of the battle line was approaching.
o The boy is carrying more fruit.
p We have not enough salt.
q How much of the story do they know?
r We saved part of the tree.
s The general values cowards little.
t Several of us disagreed.

13 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *agricolae plaustrum demonstravimus* → *we have shown the farmer the wagon*

- a** liberis fabulam narras.
b auxilium sociis misimus.
c divisor suffragatoribus non persuadebit.
d dona matronis promisi.
e poetae civibus recitabant.
f oratori senatores non crediderunt.
g pauperes divitibus non invident.
h sorores fratribus subveniebant.
i Caesar inimicis pepercit.
j Arminius Germanis praeerat.
- k** candidato non favemus.
l praestigiatores hospitibus placuerunt.
m cives sacerdotibus fidunt.
n Romanis barbari diu resistebant.
o Vitellia par matri erat.
p custodes captivis deerant.
q servis domini imperaverunt.
r Sulla inimicis nocuit.
s militibus non serviemus.
t magister discipulis libros dedit.

14 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *I shall send corn to the colonists* → *frumentum colonis mittam*

- a** You (s.) used to trust the queen.
b The hunters were studying the stag's footprints.
- c** The runners mistrust the ice.
d The women will be among the spectators.

- | | |
|--|---|
| e You (pl.) have not persuaded the allies. | m The lady sent the rings to her daughters. |
| f I envy the victors. | n The priests gave sacrifices to the gods. |
| g The cowards will not come to help the boys. | o The judge will not forgive the assassin. |
| h The master indulges the slaves. | p Portia has married Brutus. |
| i The sheep are a hindrance to the carts. | q The young men believed the messenger. |
| j The orders do not please the soldiers. | r Cats do not trust dogs. |
| k He is supporting his mother. | s The dam will resist the waves. |
| l The foxes will not harm the chickens. | t The witnesses are telling the judge the truth. |

15 Translate the following into English. They contain datives of advantage and disadvantage.

e.g. *servi stolas matronis laverunt* → *the slaves washed the dresses for the ladies*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a pueri carbonem fabris colligebant. | f insidias paravistis hostibus. |
| b pacem posteritati faciemus. | g panem portat uxori. |
| c Romani thermas aedificaverunt incolis. | h Brutus Caesarem reipublicae necavit. |
| d elephanti stipites traxerunt silvicolis. | i hostes agros agricolis vastaverunt. |
| e pater equos filiabus emit. | j puella mala sorori carpsit. |

16 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *est magnus murus Seribus* → *the Chinese have a great wall*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a nomen peregrino fuit Ulysses. | g est nix culminibus montium. |
| b sunt elephanti Carthaginiensibus. | h exploratores locum castris invenerunt. |
| c gemmas aviae dono misi. | i sunt Graecis centum naves. |
| d civibus erat dux fortis. | j operarii stadium certamini verrebant |
| e pueri locum pugnae delegerunt. | |
| f artifices pulchritudini aedificium petiverunt. | |

17 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *Hector erat decori Troianis* → *Hector was a source of glory to the Trojans*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a naves erant beneficio Carthaginiensibus. | f maritus erit subsidio uxori. |
| b Brutus honori erat Romanis. | g pedicae periculo sunt ursis. |
| c captivi sunt oneri militibus. | h flumen saluti fuit viatoribus. |
| d Milo erat odio Clodio. | i filius curae erat matri. |
| e Cloelia est exemplo puellis. | j Catilina dedecori erat senatoribus. |

18 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use a mixture of types of dative.

e.g. *we have been an example to the children* → *exemplo liberis fuimus*

- a** We are carrying the chickens for a joke.
- b** The chieftains were a burden to the citizens.
- c** As far as the old man is concerned we are sleeping.
- d** The ovens are of use to the bakers.
- e** The Romans built an amphitheatre for spectacles.
- f** The charioteer has twenty horses.
- g** In the voters' judgement the candidate was not listening.
- h** The thieves took the gold from the miser.
- i** The rioters have clubs.
- j** You (s.) will remove the obstacles for the procession.

19 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of separation.

e.g. *fugitivi procul proelio fugerunt* → *the fugitives fled far from the battle*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a cives servitutine liberabimus. | f milites hostes urbe arcent. |
| b raptores corporibus arma spoliaverunt. | g philosophus vino semper abstinebat. |
| c senatores proditore honores privaverunt. | h puellae vespas crepundiis pellunt. |
| d obsides cibo et aqua carent. | i reum crimine solvo. |
| e pugil pugnat nudus vestimentis. | j trabibus et clavis egemus. |

20 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of origin and association.

e.g. *pater filium equo donavit* → *the father presented his son with a horse*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a pecunia agricolas mercatores locupletaverunt. | g promus hospites vino implevit. |
| b senatus cives pane praebuit. | h olim metallum argento abundabat. |
| c fluvius rivis natus est. | i magus avaritiam regis auro explevit. |
| d ancillae urnas aqua implebunt. | j Mars geminis feminam gravidavit. |
| e legati consules corona donaverunt. | |
| f Romulus deo natus est. | |

21 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of respect, quality, manner and circumstance.

e.g. *sonitibus tonitrus dormiebas* → *you slept through the noises of thunder*

- a** navem nauta tempestate gubernat.
- b** Caesar tergo saucius fuit.
- c** anseres non silentio volant.
- d** ursi homines celeritate petiverunt.
- e** ignavi genibus tremuerunt.
- f** latrones fraude pecuniam comparabant.
- g** canis pede claudicabat.
- h** avarus avaritia poetam superat.
- i** Cassius est vir praestanti dignitate.
- j** liberi hilaritate ludebant.

22 Translate the following sentences into Latin. They contain a mixture of types of ablative.

e.g. *the scouts were in need of light* → *exploratores luce indigebant*

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| a We shall not drive the exiles from the land. | c The desert lacks water. |
| b Achilles was born of a goddess. | d In war fathers bury sons. |
| e The farm abounds in cattle. | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| f Horatius is worthy of honour. | i The victors will refrain from violence. |
| g We cross the river in fear. | |
| h You (pl.) have filled the vat with milk. | j Marcus has hit Titus in the head. |

23 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain the ablative of means.

e.g. *pistores panem farina faciebant* → *the bakers were making bread with flour*

- | | |
|--|--|
| a piscatores pisces retibus capiunt. | f hortum rosis topiarii ornaverunt. |
| b discipuli stilis scribebant. | g orator cives verbis agitabat. |
| c senatores Catilinam contumeliis exprobraverunt. | h securibus libertatem defendemus. |
| d pueri aleis ludebant. | i casas facibus incenderunt. |
| e boves virgis bubulci impellunt. | j victimam sacerdos cultro percussit. |

24 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of cause and measure of difference.

e.g. *servitudinis causa gemebant* → *they groaned by reason of their slavery*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a portam terrore tenebrarum non aperit. | f serpens longior quam vermibus viginti pedibus est. |
| b celeritate venti lente ambulabant. | g pacis amore arma deposuerunt. |
| c Cassius nihilo melior quam Brutus est. | h canes herbam amant multo minus quam asini. |
| d exspectatione latronum aurum celavi. | i quanto maior est bufo quam rana? |
| e liberi gaudio saliant. | j odio regum Romani Tarquinius expulerunt. |

25 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of place and price.

e.g. *arietem dumis invenit* → *he found the ram in the thorn bushes*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a villam emi centum talentis. | g vaccam quinque fabis vendidit. |
| b navis aequore navigat. | h legiones urbibus hibernabunt. |
| c sicarius horto corpus celavit. | i luscinia cacumine arboris canebat. |
| d libros Tarquinius auro emit. | j victoriam sanguine et ferro confecit. |
| e amici thermis conveniunt. | |
| f equi viginti talentis constant. | |

26 Translate the following sentences into Latin. They contain different types of ablative.

e.g. *the workmen were building a bridge with stones* → **fabri pontem saxis aedificabant.**

- | | |
|---|---|
| a The philosopher conquered his enemies with kindness. | g The mother feeds her children with honey. |
| b Aeneas was the best man by a little. | h We shall buy the mine at a small price. |
| c You (s.) have frightened the birds with a noise. | i The Romans attacked the Carthaginians by land and sea. |
| d The cavalymen rode on the plain. | j Horatius fought through love of his fatherland. |
| e I sold the maps for four talents. | |
| f The gods approve the plan with omens. | |

27 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *heri cenabam domi Caesaris* → *yesterday I was dining at Caesar's house*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a aula episcopi Antiochiae erat. | f senex humi dormiebat. |
| b domi Bruti coniurati convenerunt. | g vulpes et lepores ruri ludunt. |
| c Londinii manebo tres dies. | h classem exspectamus Brundisii. |
| d Claudius Romae habitabat. | i finis terrae Gadibus est. |
| e Romani Veiis castra posuerunt. | j Plato et Aristoteles Athenis docebant. |

28 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *Rhodon peregrinatores iter facient* → *the pilgrims will journey to Rhodes*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a cras rus ambulabimus. | g aestate liberos Massiliam semper mittimus. |
| b domum pueri terrore festinabant. | h domo nuntius cucurrit. |
| c Sicila mox discedemus. | i Romani non semper belli vicerunt. |
| d Athenis legati Spartam venerunt. | j Tyrum et Sidonem naves rex misit. |
| e Alexandria medicus effugit. | |
| f Carthaginem mercatores navigaverunt. | |

29 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *decem annos captivus erat* → *he was a prisoner for ten years*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a quattuor diebus cameli advenient. | e septem dies iuvenes pontem custodient. |
| b quinque annos fundum colebant. | f mane agricola agrum arat. |
| c tertio anno patrimonium excepisti. | g novem mensibus parentes erimus. |
| d hieme arbores frondes non habent. | h centum annis phoenix surget. |
| | i vesperi caelum rubescit. |
| | j anseres sex noctes clamabant. |

30 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *In the morning you (s.) will milk the cows* → *mane vaccas mulgebis*

- a** I have left the gift at home.
- b** The fishermen drifted for eight days.
- c** Within five days the pilgrims came to Delphi.
- d** You (pl.) will wait for father in Paris.
- e** In winter the philosopher lives in Athens.
- f** Tomorrow the singer will come from Corinth.
- g** We shall not depart from London in the evening.
- h** Within six months the craftsmen will have finished the house.
- i** The tortoise lived for a hundred years.
- j** The ships carried the grain to Ostia.

Points to remember

- 1 The nominative is used for the subject of a verb and its complement.
- 2 The vocative is used when addressing someone and only differs from the nominative in the masculine singular of the second declension.
- 3 The accusative is used principally for the objects of verbs but also after some prepositions and for expressing extent of time, motion towards something, exclamations and reference to parts of the body.
- 4 The genitive is used where in English we would use the word *of*.
- 5 The dative is used for the indirect object, after certain verbs and in a small number of specialized constructions.
- 6 The ablative is the case with the widest range of uses. Broadly speaking it represents ideas of abstraction (*from*), agency or instrument (*by* or *with*) and (especially in poetry) location and time (*in*, *on* or *at*).
- 7 The locative is used to denote location in a town or on a small island. It is also a specialized case still attached to a small number of nouns, e.g. **domus** (*house*) and **rus** (*the countryside*).
- 8 The variety of uses for each case means that you will often meet multiple examples of the same case performing different functions in the same sentence. Watch out for this, especially with the ablative.
- 9 For expressions of time, Latin uses the accusative for duration of time and the ablative for time when or within which.
- 10 Remember, if cases seem confusing, that they also survive in English, in some pronouns, e.g. the nominatives *I*, *he*, *she*, *we*, *who*, the accusatives *me*, *him*, *her*, *us*, *whom*, and the genitives *mine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours* and *whose*.

5

Adjectives and adverbs

In this chapter you should aim to

- *learn how Latin adjectives and adverbs are formed*
 - *learn how the agreement of adjectives works in Latin*
 - *recognize the endings of adjectives*
 - *gain a basic vocabulary of adjectives and adverbs*
 - *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*
-

Adjectives: first and second declension

An adjective describes a noun. Adjectives in Latin are used as in English except that they need not be written before the noun, e.g. *miles gloriosus* → **the boastful soldier**. An adjective can also stand in for a noun, e.g. *boni* → **good (men)**.

- A** When you look up a first and second declension adjective in the dictionary you will find the **nominative singular** of its **masculine**, **feminine** and **neuter** forms, e.g. *bonus bona bonum* → *good*. This is often abbreviated, e.g. *bonus -a -um*.
- B** An adjective **agrees** with the noun it is describing, i.e. it is in the same **number**, **gender** and **case** as that noun so that we can tell exactly which noun it is describing. It is important to know this because in Latin adjectives are not always written next to nouns.
- C** In **first and second declension** adjectives the **masculine** and **neuter** forms are **second declension** while the **feminine** forms are **first declension**.

| | Singular | | | Plural | | |
|------|-----------|----------|--------|-----------|----------|---------|
| | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter |
| nom. | bonus | bona | bonum | boni | bonae | bona |
| voc. | bone | bona | bonum | boni | bonae | bona |
| acc. | bonum | bonam | bonum | bonos | bonas | bona |
| gen. | boni | bonae | boni | bonorum | bonarum | bonorum |
| dat. | bono | bonae | bono | bonis | bonis | bonis |
| abl. | bono | bona | bono | bonis | bonis | bonis |

- ▶ The majority decline like **bonus -a -um** → *good*.
- ▶ Some adjectives in these declensions go like the nouns **puer** and **ager** in the masculine (see Unit 3F). Their declension differs from **bonus** only in the **nominative** and **vocative masculine singular**. They decline like **tener** → *tender*, which keeps an *e*, or **pulcher** → *beautiful*, which loses an *e*. The adjective **dexter** → *on the right* can decline either like **tener** or **pulcher**, with either **dexteri** or **dextri** as its genitive masculine singular.

| | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter |
|------|-----------|----------|---------------------------------|
| nom. | tener | tenera | tenerum |
| voc. | tener | tenera | tenerum |
| acc. | tenerum | teneram | tenerum etc. like bonus |
| nom. | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| voc. | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| acc. | pulchrum | pulchram | pulchrum etc. like bonus |

- ▶ The adjectives **medius** → *middle*, **imus** → *bottom* or *lowest*, **summus** → *top* or *highest*, **primus** → *first* and **ultimus** → *furthest* are used in two ways. First, they follow a noun to express order in both time and space, e.g. **mons summus** → *the highest mountain*, **hora media** → *the middle hour*. Second, they precede a noun to refer to a part of it, e.g. **summus mons** → *the top (part) of the mountain*, **media hora** → *the middle (part) of the hour*.

Third declension

- D** Adjectives in the third declension decline like nouns of the third declension (Units 3K and 3M). Notice particularly that third declension adjectives end in **-i** in the ablative singular, unless they are standing in for a noun, e.g. compare **puer servatus est ab ingenti nauta** → *the boy was saved by a huge sailor* with **puer servatus est ab ingente** → *the boy was saved by a huge (man)*.
- E** Third declension adjectives which have **one ending** for all genders in the nominative singular decline like **ingens ingentis** → *huge*, as do **present participles** (see Unit 10B). Note that in dictionary entries these adjectives are given with their nominative and genitive singular.

| | Singular | | Plural | |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| | Masc. & Fem. | Neuter | Masc. & Fem. | Neuter |
| nom. and voc. | ingens | ingens | ingentes | ingentia |
| acc. | ingent em | ingens | ingentes or -is | ingentia |
| gen. | ingent is | ingent is | ingent ium | ingent ium |
| dat. and abl. | ingent i | ingent i | ingent ibus | ingent ibus |

- F** Third declension adjectives which have **two endings** in the nominative singular, one for both masculine and feminine and another for the neuter, decline like **fortis -is -e** → *brave, strong*.

| | Singular | | Plural | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| | Masc. & Fem. | Neuter | Masc. & Fem. | Neuter |
| nom. and voc. | fort is | fort e | fort es | fort ia |
| acc. | fort em | fort e | fort es or fort is | fort ia |
| gen. | fort is | fort is | fort ium | fort ium |
| dat. and abl. | fort i | fort i | fort ibus | fort ibus |

- G** Third declension adjectives with **three endings** in the nominative singular, one for each gender, decline like **acer acris acre** → *keen*.

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| nom. and voc. | acer | acris | acre |
| acc. | acrem | acrem | acre |
| gen. | acris | acris | acris etc. like fortis |

H Some third declension adjectives resemble nouns in their declension, e.g. **vetus veteris** → *old*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| | <i>Masc. & Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Masc. & Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
| nom. and voc. | vetus | vetus | veter es | veter a |
| acc. | veter em | vetus | veter es | veter a |
| gen. | veter is | veter is | veter um | veter um |
| dat. | veter i | veter i | veter ibus | veter ibus |
| abl. | veter e | veter e | veter ibus | veter ibus |

Like **vetus**, and also often used as nouns, are **pauper -eris** → *poor* and **dives -itis** → *rich*, although **dives** has the contracted forms: sing. nom. **dis**, acc. **ditem**, gen. **ditis**, dat. and abl. **diti**, plural nom. and acc. **dites** (m. and f.), **ditia** (n.), gen. **ditium**, dat. and abl. **ditibus**.

Comparison of adjectives

I There are three degrees of comparison:

- ▶ **positive** e.g. **fortis -is -e** → *brave*
- ▶ **comparative** e.g. **fortior fortior fortius** → *braver, rather brave, too brave*
- ▶ **superlative** e.g. **fortissimus -a -um** → *bravest, very brave, most brave*

J The **comparative adjective** is formed by adding **-ior -ior -ius** to the positive stem, e.g. **durus** → *harsh*: **durior** → *harsher*. These are third declension and decline like **fortior** → *braver*.

| | Singular | | Plural | |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| | Masc. & Fem. | Neuter | Masc. & Fem. | Neuter |
| nom. and voc. | fortior | fortius | fortiores | fortiora |
| acc. | fortiorem | fortius | fortiores | fortiora |
| gen. | fortioris | fortioris | fortiorum | fortiorum |
| dat. | fortiori | fortiori | fortioribus | fortioribus |
| abl. | fortiore | fortiore | fortioribus | fortioribus |

K Superlative adjectives are first and second declension and decline like **bonus -a -um** (see C).

- ▶ These are formed mostly by adding **-issimus -issima -issimum** to the **stem** of the positive form, e.g. **durus** → *harsh*: **durissimus** → *very harsh*.
- ▶ The superlatives of adjectives which end in **-er**, like **tener** → *tender*, **acer** → *keen*, etc. end in **-errimus -errima -errimum**, e.g. **acer** → *keen*: **acerrimus** → *very keen*.
- ▶ The superlatives of six adjectives which end in **-ilis** (**facilis** → *easy*, **difficilis** → *difficult*, **similis** → *like*, **dissimilis** → *unlike*, **gracilis** → *slender, graceful* and **humilis** → *lowly*) all end in **-illimus -illima -illimum**, e.g. **facilis** → *easy*: **facillimus** → *very easy*.
- ▶ Adjectives ending in **-eus, -ius** or **-uus** use the adverbs **magis** → *more* and **maxime** → *most*, e.g. **dubius** → *doubtful*, **magis dubius** → *more doubtful* and **maxime dubius** → *most doubtful*. However, adjectives ending in **-uus** can be regular, e.g. **antiquus** → *old*, **antiquior** → *older*, **antiquissimus** → *oldest*.

L Irregular forms of comparison

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| bonus → <i>good</i> | melior → <i>better</i> | optimus → <i>best, very good</i> |
| inferus → <i>lower</i> | inferior → <i>lower</i> | inifimus (or imus) → <i>lowest</i> |
| magnus → <i>big</i> | maior → <i>bigger</i> | maximus → <i>biggest, very big</i> |
| malus → <i>bad</i> | peior → <i>worse</i> | pessimus → <i>worst, very bad</i> |
| multi → <i>many</i> | plures → <i>more</i> | plurimi → <i>most, very many</i> |
| multus → <i>much</i> | plus → <i>more</i> | plurimus → <i>most, very much</i> |
| nequam → <i>wicked</i> | nequior → <i>more wicked</i> | nequissimus → <i>most wicked, very wicked</i> |

parvus → *small* minor → *less, smaller* minimus → *least, very small*
 superus → *upper* superior → *higher* supremus (or summus) →
highest

Plus (*more*) is used in the singular only as a neuter noun. In the plural it is an adjective.

| | Singular Neuter | Plural Masc. & Fem. | Neuter |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------|
| nom., voc. and acc. | plus | plures | plura |
| gen. | pluris | plurium | plurium |
| dat. | — | pluribus | pluribus |
| abl. | plure | pluribus | pluribus |

M In Latin comparisons are expressed in one of two ways.

- ▶ With **quam** → *than*, using the same case after **quam** as before it. This is how we express comparison in English, e.g. **Brutus altior quam Cassius est** → *Brutus is taller than Cassius*.
- ▶ With the ablative of comparison (see Unit 4E3). This is only used if the thing or person being compared is in the nominative or accusative, e.g. **nihil libertate melius est** → *nothing is better than freedom*.

N Comparatives are also used with the ablative of measure of difference (see Unit 4E15), e.g. **formica nihilo maior musca est** → *the ant is no bigger than the fly*.

O For comparatives in a purpose clause, see Unit 14E.

P The word **quam** is used with the superlative to mean as ... as possible, e.g. **quam plurimas urbes Romani ceperunt** → *the Romans took as many cities as possible*.

Adverbs

Adverbs describe the action of a verb as well as adjectives, phrases or even other adverbs.

Q Formation

Adverbs do not decline. Most are formed from the stems of the positive forms of adjectives.

- ▶ Those which come from first and second declension adjectives end in **-e** (or sometimes **-o**), e.g. **durē** → *harshly*, from **durus**, **dignē** → *worthily*, from **dignus** and **tuto** → *safely*, from **tutus**.
- ▶ Those which come from third declension adjectives usually end in **-iter** or **-ter**, e.g. **fortiter** → *bravely*, from **fortis**, **prudenter** → *prudently*, from **prudens**.
- ▶ Some adverbs are formed from the accusatives or ablatives of adjectives, e.g. **primum** or **primo** → *firstly*, **multum** → *much* and **paulum** → *little*, **facile** → *easily*.
- ▶ Some are formed from verbs, e.g. **statim** → *at once*, from **sto** → *I stand*; **cursim** → *quickly*, from **curro** → *I run*.
- ▶ Some words used as adverbs are also used as prepositions, e.g. **ante** → *before*, **post** → *after*.

R Negatives

- ▶ The negative adverbs are **non** → *not*, **haud** → *not*, which is used with other adverbs, adjectives and some verbs of knowing or thinking and **ne** → *do not / let not*, which is used to make commands negative (see Unit 11Q) and to make subjunctives in a main clause negative (see Unit 9H). A common phrase is **ne ... quidem** → *not even*, e.g. **ne Brutus quidem** → *not even Brutus*.
- ▶ Note also that **neve** or **neu** are used for **et ne** and the following conjunctions are often used: **nec** → *nor*, **nec ... nec** → *neither ... nor*, and **neque ... neque** → *neither ... nor*.

S Comparison

- ▶ The regular **comparative adverb** is the **neuter accusative singular** of the corresponding comparative adjective (see J), e.g. **fortius** → *more bravely*, from **fortis**; **tutius** → *more safely*, from **tutus**.
- ▶ The regular **superlative adverb** ends in **-issime**, **-errime** or **-illime**, e.g. **fortissime** → *very bravely*, **celerrime** → *very quickly* and **facillime** → *very easily*.
- ▶ When it follows **quam**, the superlative adverb means *as ... as possible*, e.g. **quam celerrime** → *as quickly as possible*, **quam facillime** → *as easily as possible*.

T Irregular and other forms

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| bene → <i>well</i> | melius → <i>better</i> | optime → <i>best</i> |
| diu → <i>for a long time</i> | diutius → <i>for a longer time</i> | diutissime → <i>for a very long time</i> |
| intus → <i>within</i> | interius → <i>further within</i> | intime → <i>furthest within</i> |
| magnopere → <i>greatly</i> | magis → <i>more greatly</i> | maxime → <i>very greatly</i> |
| male → <i>badly</i> | peius → <i>worse</i> | pessime → <i>worst</i> |
| multum → <i>much</i> | plus → <i>more</i> (in quantity) | plurimum → <i>most</i> |
| nequiter → <i>wickedly</i> | nequius → <i>more wickedly</i> | nequissime → <i>most wickedly</i> |
| nuper → <i>recently</i> | (no comparative) | nuperrime → <i>most recently</i> |
| paulum → <i>little</i> | minus → <i>less</i> | minime → <i>least</i> |
| post → <i>after</i> | posterius → <i>later on</i> | postremo → <i>finally</i> |
| (prae → <i>before</i>) | prius → <i>earlier</i> | primum, primo → <i>earliest</i> |
| prope → <i>near</i> | propius → <i>nearer</i> | proxime → <i>very near</i> |
| saepe → <i>often</i> | saepius → <i>more often</i> | saeplissime → <i>very often</i> |
| (no positive) | potius → <i>rather</i> | potissimum → <i>especially</i> |

1 What number, gender and case are the following phrases?

If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. **puellis pulchris** → 1. dat. f. pl. 2. abl. f. pl.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a manum teneram | f diei festi |
| b tempestates magnae | g leonibus magnis |
| c virginum pulchrarum | h hominem scelestum |
| d deabus benignis | i maria alta |
| e agricolas bonos | j clamore claro |

2 Translate the following into English.

e.g. *ad summum montem ascendemus* → *we shall climb to the top of the mountain*

- | | |
|---|--|
| a pulchras gemmas in arca lignea inveni. | g profugi miseri per terras errabant. |
| b scelera scelesti boni non probant. | h dextras manus Gallorum Caesar abscidit. |
| c heri quinque equos albos emi. | i ad saxa rubra iuvenes pugnabunt. |
| d noctem atram liberi timent. | j navis parva in imo mari iacet. |
| e ursi villosi in densis silvis hibernant. | |
| f nubes opacas supra mare nautae viderunt. | |

3 Translate the following into Latin using first and second declension adjectives.

e.g. *the little ship sails on the blue sea* → *navis parva in mari caeruleo navigat*

- a** The mischievous ghost lived in the bottom of the well.
- b** The great and the good are sometimes cowardly.
- c** The angry voters do not like the candidate's dirty toga.
- d** The brown bears are walking next to a beautiful river.
- e** The wily magician wrote in a secret book.
- f** The haughty king neglected the wretched peasants.
- g** Dread goddesses will punish the wicked.
- h** The ancient tree stood on the top of the hill.
- i** The tender chicks are sleeping in the high nest.
- j** Tomorrow the tired women will arrive at the first gate.

4 Write the word for *good* which agrees in number, gender and case with the following nouns. If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. agricolae → boni or bono

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| a rebus | f urbi |
| b regis | g imperatore |
| c capitum | h manuum |
| d cives | i mare |
| e domine | j legionem |

5 Translate the following sentences into English. The adjectives decline like *ingens*.

e.g. canem ingentem habeo → *I have a huge dog*

- a** iuvenes audaces trans flumen nataverunt.
- b** togam viri felicis pueri tangebant.
- c** pugiles viribus paribus pugnaverunt.
- d** moenia ingentia circum urbem aedificaverunt.
- e** speluncae ferarum ferocium in montibus sunt.
- f** senex cum adolescente per vias ambulabat.
- g** prudentem maritum feminae probant.
- h** magistratus impotentes erant.
- i** cives regi atroci resistebant.
- j** mentem ingenii capacem philosophus habet.

6 Translate the following sentences into English. The adjectives go like *fortis*.

e.g. per ianuam humilem insignis venit → *the famous man came through the lowly door*

- a** clamores fortium audio.
- b** fabulas tristes fidicen cantabat.
- c** oratori insigni cives parent.
- d** iter facile fortibus est.
- e** saporem mellis dulcis amo.
- f** liberis omnibus pater dona dedit.

- g** Athenienses communem thesaurum habebant.
- h** pompae grandes per vias procedebant.
- i** onera gravia trans pontem aselli portant.
- j** in loco tuto gemmas celavi.

7 Translate the following sentences into English. The adjectives go like *acer* or *vetus*.

e.g. *fabulas veteres liberi amant* → *the children love old stories*

- a** sonitum equorum acrium audio.
- b** vetera templa Augustus renovavit.
- c** cum monstris volucris Iason pugnavit.
- d** aquas salubres ad fontem bibimus.
- e** cursus non semper celeribus est.
- f** actorem celebrem in theatro plaudimus.
- g** pauper ad portas divitis sedebat.
- h** peregrinatores ad delubrum sospites advenerunt.
- i** alacris gradibus nuntii festinaverunt.
- j** elephantum omnium memores sunt.

8 Translate the following sentences into Latin using third declension adjectives.

e.g. *we were sitting in a packed inn* → *in taberna frequenti sedebamus*

- a** The swift runner greeted the sad citizens.
- b** I shall send a letter to the cruel tyrant.
- c** Marcus is the son of a poor man.
- d** The house is on a green hill.
- e** Pericles persuaded everyone.
- f** Young men respect the old.
- g** Lions like the taste of bold children.
- h** The Gauls closed the road with huge rocks.
- i** You (pl.) will not overcome the brave.
- j** We seek a swift horse.

9 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *mare altius quam lacus est* → *the sea is deeper than the lake*

- a est ovum avis maioris.
- b fabulam peiorem numquam vidi.
- c puella filium divitioris amat.
- d nihil durius quam adamas est.
- e iter longius via quam mari est.
- f Alpes multo altiores quam colles Romani sunt.
- g Romani hostibus fortioribus quam Graecis resistebant.
- h clamores equitum plurimum audivimus.
- i aedificia meliora Romani habent quam Galli.
- j ovis paulo minor quam caper est.

10 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *glacies gelidior aqua est* → *ice is colder than water*

- a Socrates sapientissimus hominum erat.
- b verba proditoris maxime dubia erant.
- c monstrum dentes acutissimos habet.
- d sanguis densior aqua est.
- e grues gracillimi super tecta volabant.
- f stilus gladio fortior est.
- g horti magis idonei agris sunt.
- h puella quam plurimas rosas matri colligebat.
- i plurimi civium aurum quaesiverunt.
- j elephantum multo gravidiores tauris sunt.

11 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *boves lente in agro ambulant* → *the oxen are walking slowly in the field*

- a puellae in lacum ultro desiluerunt.
- b avarus liberos parum alebat.
- c machinam fabri male refecerunt.
- d senex iuvenes sapienter erudiebat.
- e crimen vehementer reus abiuravit.

- f** Marcus facile altissimus erat.
- g** Ciceronem magnopere laudavisti.
- h** fere mille naves Graeci habebant.
- i** haud bene negotium agebant.
- j** Iuliettam Romeo valde amabat.

12 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **statim ad patrem cucurrit** → *he ran to his father immediately*

- a** civibus semper fideles erimus.
- b** domine, hospites mox advenient.
- c** nusquam feminam pulchriorem vidi.
- d** alibi hostes oppugnabimus.
- e** cenam non multo ante paraverat.
- f** haud diu in cubiculo mansi.
- g** Cicero Catilinam iterum vituperavit.
- h** cras Caesarem fortasse videbis.
- i** identidem filium advocavit.
- j** pacem legati profecto petent.

13 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **responsum regi minime placuit** → *the reply pleased the king very little*

- a** sicarii senatorem nequissime necaverunt.
- b** poeta versus postremo perfecerat.
- c** sacerdotes e templo tutissime fugerunt.
- d** quam celerrime ad custodes festinavi.
- e** facilius ambulo quam curro.
- f** Varus bellum peius quam Caesar gessit.
- g** nuntium diutius exspectavimus.
- h** Cyclops minus callidus erat quam Ulysses.
- i** equites ad urbem pervenerunt celerius quam pedites.
- j** ancilla multo melius saltat quam cantat.

Points to remember

- 1 Positive adjectives which combine elements of the first and second declensions decline like **bonus-a-um** (*good*), **miser misera miserum** (*wretched*) and **pulcher pulchra pulchrum** (*beautiful*).
- 2 Positive third declension adjectives have a very wide variety of nominatives, just like the nouns. Sometimes they only have one nominative ending, like **ingens** (*huge*) and **audax** (*bold*).
- 3 Comparative adjectives decline like **fortior fortius** (*braver*).
- 4 Superlative adjectives decline like **bonus-a-um** (*good*) and have the endings **-issimus-a-um**, **-errimus-a-um** and **-illimus-a-um**.
- 5 Adjectives ending in **-eus**, **-ius** or **-uus** keep the same formation but use the adverbs **magis** (*more*) and **maxime** (*most*), e.g. **magis dubius** (*more doubtful*).
- 6 Adjectives can be used as nouns, e.g. **boni** (*good men*), **bona** (*goods*).
- 7 The commonest endings of adverbs are **-e** (**digne** *worthily*), **-ter** (**fortiter** *bravely*), **-um** (**multum** *much*) or **-im** (**cursim** *quickly*).
- 8 Comparative adverbs are formed from the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjectives (e.g. **fortius** *more bravely*) and superlative adverbs are formed from the stems of the superlative adjectives (e.g. **celerrime** *very quickly*).
- 9 Comparison is expressed either with **quam** (*than*) followed by the same case after it as before it, or with the ablative of comparison.
- 10 **quam** is used with the superlative adverb to mean *as... as possible*, e.g. **quam celerrime** (*as quickly as possible*).

6

Prepositions, conjunctions and numerals

In this chapter you should aim to

- **understand the use of prepositions and conjunctions**
 - **gain an extensive vocabulary of prepositions and conjunctions**
 - **learn about Roman numbers**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

Prepositions

A preposition is a word which denotes the relationship (usually spatial) between one noun and another. In Latin most prepositions are followed by (govern) either the accusative case or the ablative case, except **in**, **sub**, **super** and **subter** which can take either, depending on whether there is movement involved (accusative) or not (ablative).

A Prepositions governing (followed by) the accusative case are:

ad → *to, at*

adversus / adversum →
opposite, towards, against

ante → *before*

apud → *among, near, at the house of*

circum → *around*

circa / circiter → *about*

cis / citra → *on this side of*

clam → *unknown to*

contra → *against*

erga → *towards*

extra → *outside*

in → *into, onto, against*

infra → *below*

inter → *amongst, between*

intra → *within*

iuxta → next to
ob → in the way of, on account of
penes → in the power of
per → through
pone → behind
post → after, behind
praeter → beside, except, past
prope → near
propter → on account of, near

secundum → according to, next to, along
sub → up to
subter → close up to
super → over
supra → above
trans → across
ultra → beyond
versus / versum → towards

B Prepositions governing (followed by) the ablative case are:

a (**ab** before a vowel or **h**) → by, from
absque → without
coram → in the presence of
cum → with, in the company of
de → from, down from, concerning
e (**ex** before a vowel or **h**) → out of, from

in → in or on
palam → in the sight of
prae → before, in front of
pro → before, on behalf of, for
sine → without
sub → under
subter → underneath
super → upon
tenus → as far as, reaching

C In the case of **gratia** → *sake* and **causa** → *reason*, the ablative of the noun has almost come to be used as a preposition which takes the genitive.

e.g. **ars gratia artis** → *art for the sake of art*
exempli gratia → *for the sake of example* (abbreviated to e.g.)
honoris causa → *by reason of honour*

D Many Latin words have prepositions as prefixes, i.e. the preposition is added to the start of the word. These are called **compound** words. The meaning of the preposition alters the sense of the word accordingly, e.g. **praesideo** → *I sit in front of* (hence *president*).

Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words like *and* or *because* that are used to join (**coniungo**) linguistic units together. They may join words, phrases, clauses or entire sentences. Notice that some are used in a number of different ways.

E Coordinating conjunctions connect either two or more nouns in the same case or two or more simple sentences.

- ▶ **Connective:** *et, -que* (ending), *atque, ac* → *and*; *neque, nec* → *nor*; *et, etiam, quoque, item* → *also*.
- ▶ **Separative:** *aut, vel, -ve* (ending) → *either, or*; *sive, seu* → *whether, or*.
- ▶ **Adversative:** *sed, ast, at* → *but*; *autem* → *but, however*; *atqui* → *but yet*; *ceterum, verum, vero* → *moreover, but*; *at enim* → *but it will be said*; *tamen* → *however, nevertheless*; *attamen, verumtamen* → *but nevertheless*.
- ▶ **Causal:** *nam, namque, enim, etenim* → *for and enimvero* → *for indeed*.
- ▶ **Conclusive:** *ergo, itaque, igitur* → *therefore*; *quare, quamobrem, quapropter, quocirca* → *wherefore*.
- ▶ **Interrogative** (see also Unit 7U and V): *num* → *surely not?*; *nonne* → *surely?*; *-ne* (an ending which turns a statement into a question); *utrum ... an* → *whether ... or*; *annon, necne* → *or not?*

F Subordinating conjunctions are used to introduce a clause which is grammatically subordinate to another (see Unit 1T).

- ▶ **Consecutive:** *ut* → *so that, with the result that*; *ut non* → *so that not*; *quin* → *but that*.
- ▶ **Final:** *ut* → *so that, in order that*; *ne, ut ne* → *lest*; *neve, neu* → *and lest*; *quo* → *whereby, in order that*; *quominus* → *whereby not, in order that not*.
- ▶ **Causal:** *quod, quia* → *because*; *cum, quoniam, quandoquidem* → *since*; *quippe* → *seeing that*; *siquidem* → *inasmuch as*.
- ▶ **Temporal:** *cum, ut* → *when, since*; *quando, ubi* → *when*; *dum, donec, quoad* → *while, as long as, until*; *quatenus* → *how*

long; antequam, priusquam → *before*; *postquam* → *after*;
simul ac → *as soon as*; *quotiens* → *as often as*.

- ▶ **Conditional:** *si* → *if*; *sin* → *but if*; *sive, seu* → *whether, or if*;
nisi, ni → *unless*; *si non* → *if not*; *si modo* → *if only*; *modo,*
tantum → *only*; *modo, dummodo* → *provided that*.
- ▶ **Concessive:** *etsi, etiamsi* → *even if, although*; *tametsi* → *although*;
quamquam, utut → *however, although*; *quamvis* → *although,*
however much; *cum* → *whereas*; *ut, licet* → *granted that*.
- ▶ **Comparative:** *ut, uti, velut, veluti, sicut, sicuti ceu* → *as*;
quomodo, quemadmodum → *as, how*; *quam* → *as*; *utpote* →
as being; *quasi, ut si* → *as if*; *ceu, tamquam* → *as though*.

G The following pairings of conjunctions are commonly found:

adeo ... ut → *so far ... that*

aut ... aut and *vel ... vel* →
either ... or

et ... et, -que ... -que and *-que ...*
et → *both ... and*

ita ... ut → *so ... that*

neque ... neque, nec ... nec, and

neve ... neve → *neither ... nor*

sic ... ut → *so ... as*

sive ... sive and *seu ... seu* →
whether ... or

tam ... quam → *so (as) ... as*

ut ... ita → *as ... so*

H Position

Some conjunctions never appear as the first word in their phrase, clause or sentence, notably *enim* → *for*, *autem* → *however*, *igitur* → *therefore* and *vero* → *but*. When translating you should usually put them first in the clause or phrase in English, unless sense dictates otherwise, e.g. *pater autem ianuam clausit.* → *However, father closed the door.*

Numerals

I There are four types of numerals, each answering a question: **cardinal** (*how many*), **ordinal** (*in what order*), **distributive** (*how many each or at a time*) and **numeral adverbs** (*how often*).

J Selected numbers from 1 to 2000. Note that there is no zero in Latin.

| | <i>Numeral</i> | <i>Cardinal</i> | <i>Ordinal</i> | | <i>Numeral</i> | <i>Cardinal</i> | <i>Ordinal</i> |
|----|----------------|-----------------|----------------------|------|----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1 | I | unus -a -um | primus -a -um | 29 | XXIX | undetriginta | undetrice(n)simus |
| 2 | II | duo -ae -o | secundus | 30 | XXX | triginta | trice(n)simus |
| 3 | III | tres tria | tertius | 40 | XL | quadraginta | quadrage(n)simus |
| 4 | IV | quattuor | quartus | 50 | L | quingquaginta | quingquage(n)simus |
| 5 | V | quinque | quintus | 60 | LX | sexaginta | sexage(n)simus |
| 6 | VI | sex | sextus | 70 | LXX | septuaginta | septuage(n)simus |
| 7 | VII | septem | septimus | 80 | LXXX | octoginta | octoge(n)simus |
| 8 | VIII | octo | octavus | 90 | XC | nonaginta | nonage(n)simus |
| 9 | IX | novem | nonus | 99 | XCIX | undecentum | undecente(n)simus |
| 10 | X | decem | decimus | 100 | C | centum | cente(n)simus |
| 11 | XI | undecim | undecimus | 101 | CI | centum et unus | cente(n)simus primus |
| 12 | XII | duodecim | duodecimus | 200 | CC | ducenti -ae -a | ducente(n)simus |
| 13 | XIII | tredecim | tertius decimus | 300 | CCC | trecenti | trecente(n)simus |
| 14 | XIV | quattuordecim | quartus decimus | 400 | CCCC | quadringenti | quadringente(n)simus |
| 15 | XV | quindecim | quintus decimus | 500 | D | quingenti | quingente(n)simus |
| 16 | XVI | sedecim | sextus decimus | 600 | DC | sescenti | sescente(n)simus |
| 17 | XVII | septendecim | septimus decimus | 700 | DCC | septingenti | septingente(n)simus |
| 18 | XVIII | duodeviginti* | duodevice(n)simus | 800 | DCCC | octingenti | octingente(n)simus |
| 19 | XIX | undeviginti* | undevince(n)simus | 900 | CM | nongenti | nongente(n)simus |
| 20 | XX | viginti | vice(n)simus | 1000 | M | mille | mille(n)simus |
| 21 | XXI | unus et viginti | unus et vice(n)simus | 2000 | MM | duo milia | bismille(n)simus |

* or **octodecim** → *eighteen* and **novendecim** → *nineteen*

K The **cardinal numbers** *one, two* and *three* decline. Note the endings **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-i** in the dative singular. These endings are also found in some pronouns (see Unit 7).

The Latin cardinal numbers **unus, duo, tres** (*one, two, three*) change for gender as well as for case: **cum duobus amicis** *with two (female) friends*; **cum duobus amicis** *with two (male) friends*.

► One

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. and voc. | unus | una | unum | | uni | nae | una |
| acc. | unum | unam | unum | | unos | nas | una |
| gen. | unius | unius | unius | | unorum | narum | unorum |
| dat. | uni | uni | uni | | unis | unis | unis |
| abl. | uno | una | uno | | unis | unis | unis |

► Two

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. and voc. | duo | duae | duo |
| acc. | duos | duas | duo |
| gen. | duorum | duarum | duorum |
| dat. | duobus | duabus | duobus |
| abl. | duobus | duabus | duobus |

► Three

| | <i>Masc. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| nom. and voc. | tres | tria |
| acc. | tres | tria |
| gen. | trium | trium |
| dat. | tribus | tribus |
| abl. | tribus | tribus |

- L Cardinal numbers** from 4 to 100 do not decline. Hundreds from 200 to 900 decline like the plural of *bonus* (see Unit 5C). The singular *mille* → 1000 is an adjective which does not decline but its plural *milia* is a noun which goes like *cubilia* (see Unit 3M) and is followed by a genitive, e.g. *multa milia passuum* → *many thousands of paces* (i.e. many miles).
- M In compound numbers** between 20 and 99 either the smaller number with *et* comes first or the larger number without *et*. Usually *unus* comes first but in numbers above 100 the larger comes first, whether with *et* or without it. Thousands are expressed either by putting cardinal numbers before *milia* (as in the preceding list) or by putting numeral adverbs like *bis* before *mille*.
- N Ordinal and distributive numbers** decline like *bonus* (see Unit 5C).
- ▶ Distributive numbers are *singuli* → *one each, one at a time*, *bini* → *two each, two at a time*, *terni* → *three each, three at a time*, *quaterni* → *four each, four at a time*, *quini* → *five each, five at a time*, *seni* → *six each, six at a time* etc.
 - ▶ Distributive numbers are used instead of cardinals with nouns which are plural in form but singular in meaning (e.g. *terna castra* → *three camps*), except that the plural of *unus* is used with such words instead of *singuli*, e.g. *una castra* → *one camp*.
 - ▶ Distributive numerals are also used in the multiplication of numbers, e.g. *bis terna sunt sex* → *twice three are six*.
- O Numeral adverbs** are *semel* → *once*, *bis* → *twice*, *ter* → *thrice*, *quater* → *four times*, *quinq̄iens* (or *-es*) → *five times*, etc.
- P** When answering the question ‘**times how much?**’, the ‘multiplicative’ adjectives are used, e.g. *simplex -icis* → *single, times one*, *duplex -icis* → *double, twofold*, *triplex -icis* → *triple, threefold*, *quadruplex -icis* → *times four, fourfold*, *decemplex -icis* → *times ten, tenfold*, etc.

Q Titles like **triumvir** → *member of a board of three*, **duumvir** → *member of a board of two* and **decemvir** → *member of a board of ten*, refer to positions of authority in Rome and the empire. They are usually not translated but left in their Latin nominative form. They are declined like **vir** (see Unit 3G. In the plurals **duoviri** and **tresviri**, both parts of the word decline, e.g. **duorumvirorum** → *of the duoviri*).

1 Translate the following sentences into English. The prepositions take the accusative.

e.g. **Hannibal ad portas est** → *Hannibal is at the gates*

- a** pueri ob capros sedent.
- b** cervae ad silvas cucurrerunt.
- c** apud Marcum praestigiatores hospitibus placent.
- d** murum circum hortum senex aedificaverat.
- e** corvi super cacumina arborum volant.
- f** equi trans flumen natabant.
- g** servus poculum pone sedem celavit.
- h** Cicero orationes in Marcum Antonium scripsit.
- i** valles inter montes iacebat.
- j** duces citra urbem convenerunt.

2 Translate the following sentences into English. The prepositions take the ablative.

e.g. **monstrum sub ponte latebat** → *the ogre was hiding under the bridge*

- a** palam civibus Horatius Etruscis resistebat.
- b** orator prae multitudine stetit.
- c** iudex pro reo dixit.
- d** sine comitibus ambulo.
- e** Catilinam Cicero coram senatoribus incusavit.
- f** avarus aurum sub pavimento sepelivit.
- g** de fundo controversiam habuimus.
- h** aqua e fonte fluebat.
- i** pueri cum puellis in area ludebant.
- j** delphinus in portu natabat.

3 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain a mixture of prepositions.

e.g. *trans mare amoris causa natavit* → *he swam across the sea because of love*

- a panem super mensam pistor posuit.
- b Galli tenus urbe agros vastaverunt.
- c cameli ante meridiem non bibunt.
- d gemmas iuxta coronam ponunt.
- e puero osculum dedit palam parentibus.
- f ad tabernam propter pluviam currimus.
- g crocodilus subter ripa latet.
- h potestatem gratia pecuniarum petis.
- i aestate liberi extra cubicula dormient.
- j thesaurum in speluncis petimus.

4 Translate the following into Latin.

e.g. *I watched the man through the door* → *virum per ianuam spectabam*

- a You (s.) will write the poem for honour's sake.
- b She rode between the cottages.
- c Unknown to the guards, they opened the gates.
- d Tomorrow we shall depart from the woods.
- e I am working on behalf of the merchants.
- f The animals were asleep except for the geese.
- g We are walking close up to the riverbank.
- h The statues are standing in front of the temple.
- i The islands lie beyond the sea.
- j After noon we sleep in the sun.

5 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *aut Caesar aut nullus ero* → *I shall either be a Caesar or a nobody*

- a panem circensesque civibus imperator praebuit.
- b cogito ergo sum.
- c non modo pontes sed etiam aquaeductus aedificabant.

- d** Milo extra portas stat nam custos est.
- e** actores male recitaverant; spectatores tamen plauserunt.
- f** neque aurum neque argentum inveni.
- g** omnes tacebant nam dominus aegrotabat.
- h** et Brutus et Cassius Caesarem petiverunt
- i** nonne templum visitabis?
- j** laborem perfecimus itaque domum ambulamus.

6 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *cenam non edebam quod ova non amo* → *I did not eat dinner because I do not like eggs*

- a** quotiens canes latrant, corvi avolant.
- b** simul ac tuba sonuit, hostes impetum fecerunt.
- c** ut caelum tepescet, ita maria dilatabunt.
- d** liberi dum ludunt discunt.
- e** postquam mater discessit pueri clamabant.
- f** quoniam ludos edidit Caesarem laudamus.
- g** etiamsi mons altus est, ascendemus.
- h** quia hostes ubique sunt idcirco Romani semper pugnant.
- i** sive manebis sive discedes, civibus semper fidelis ero.
- j** Titus decedit quod celerius currebat.

7 Translate the following into English. Put the Roman numerals into Arabic numerals.

e.g. *DCCCLXXXVIII* → 888

- a** duobus diebus aedificium perfecimus.
- b** *MCMLXVI*
- c** rex septem et triginta annos regnabat.
- d** princeps ternos equos fratribus dedit.
- e** animalia bina in navem intrabant.
- f** nonagensimo anno Graeci foedus renovaverunt.
- g** viginti milia militum exploratores viderunt.
- h** cives decemviros valde timebant.

Points to remember

- 1** Prepositions generally denote spatial relationships between one noun and another. They can also refer to temporal relationships.
- 2** Most prepositions are followed by either the accusative or ablative case. Some take both and alter their meaning accordingly. Note especially that **in** plus accusative means *into* or *onto*, whereas **in** plus ablative means *in* or *on*.
- 3** The ablatives of the words **gratia** (*sake*) and **causa** (*reason*) became tantamount to prepositions taking the genitive, e.g. **ars gratia artis** (*art for art's sake*).
- 4** Many Latin words are compounds with prepositions used at the front of the word as a prefix, e.g. **praesideo** (*I sit in front of*).
- 5** Compound words formed with prepositions which end in a consonant sometimes alter or lose that final consonant, often doubling the following one, e.g. **traicio** (*I throw across*) from **trans iacio**, **colligo** (*I gather*) from **cum lego** and **attingo** (*I touch upon*) from **ad tango**.
- 6** Conjunctions link clauses and sentences together and some never appear as the first word in their clause, e.g. **enim** (*for*) and **igitur** (*therefore*).
- 7** The numerals are **I** 1, **V** 5, **X** 10, **L** 50, **C** 100, **D** 500 and **M** 1,000. The Romans had no zero.
- 8** The cardinal numbers **unus-a-um** (*one*), **duo duae duo** (*two*) and **tres tria** (*three*) decline. Those from 4–100 do not.

- 9 Note especially the endings **-ius** and **-i** in the genitive and dative singular of **unus-a-um**. This word does not decline like **bonus-a-um** (*good*).
- 10 **mille** (*a thousand*) is a singular indeclinable adjective but its plural **milia** (*thousands*) is a noun which is followed by the genitive, e.g. **mille passus** (*a thousand paces or a Roman mile*) and **multa milia passuum** (*many thousands of paces or many Roman miles*).

7

Pronouns and questions

In this chapter you should aim to

- *learn the different types of pronouns*
- *recognize the endings of pronouns*
- *gain an extensive vocabulary of pronouns*
- *understand direct questions in Latin*
- *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*

Personal pronouns

A Personal pronouns (*I, you, etc.*) are used only in place of nouns. They decline in Latin.

| | <i>1st person singular</i> | | <i>2nd person singular</i> | |
|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| nom. and voc. | ego | I | tu | you |
| acc. | me | me | te | you |
| gen. | mei | my, mine, of me | tui | of you, your, yours |
| dat. | mihi or mi | to, for me | tibi | to, for you |
| abl. | me | by, with, from me | te | by, with, from you |

| | <i>Plural</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|---------------|---------------|----|---------------|-----|
| nom. and voc. | nos | we | vos | you |
| acc. | nos | us | vos | you |

(Contd)

| | Plural | | Plural | |
|------|------------|-------------------|---------|---------------------|
| gen. | nostri | of us, our, ours | vestri | of you, your, yours |
| | or nostrum | of us | or | of you |
| | | | vestrum | |
| dat. | nobis | to, for us | vobis | to, for you |
| abl. | nobis | by, with, from us | vobis | by, with, from you |

- ▶ The genitives **nostri** and **vestri** are **objective genitives** (see Unit 4C6), e.g. **nostri memor** → *mindful of us*, while the genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are **partitive genitives** (see Unit 4C7), e.g. **multi vestrum** → *many of you*.
- ▶ For the **personal pronoun** of the 3rd person (*he, she, it* and *they*) Latin makes use of the pronouns **is, ea, id** → *he, she, it* or *that* (see D).
- ▶ The **nominatives** of personal pronouns are usually used only for emphasis in Latin because the endings of verbs already tell us who is performing the action.
- ▶ If **cum** → *with* is used with the **ablative** of personal pronouns it is always written after the word: **mecum** → *with me*, **tecum** → *with you*, **nobiscum** → *with us* and **vobiscum** → *with you*.

Reflexive pronouns

B Reflexive pronouns (*myself, yourself, himself, etc.*) are used only in place of nouns. **NB** These must not be confused with the emphatic pronoun **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (see I).

- ▶ The **reflexive pronouns** of the 1st and 2nd person (*myself, yourself, ourselves, yourselves*) are the same as the personal pronouns but without the nominative, e.g. **me lavavi** → *I washed myself*, **vos fraudavistis** → *you have cheated yourselves*.

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | is | ea | id | | ei | cae | ea |
| acc. | eum | eam | id | | eos | cas | ea |
| gen. | eius | eius | eius | | eorum | earum | eorum |
| dat. | ei | ei | ei | | eis, iis | eis, iis | eis, iis |
| abl. | eo | ea | eo | | eis, iis | eis, iis | eis, iis |

The genitives **eius** and **eorum** are used to mean *his, her, its* or *their* when referring to someone other than the subject, e.g. **fratrem eius agnovit** → *he recognized his (someone else's) brother*, but **fratrem suum agnovit** → *he recognized his (own) brother* (see C).

E The demonstrative pronoun **hic haec hoc** → *this*

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | hic | haec | hoc | | hi | hae | haec |
| acc. | hunc | hanc | hoc | | hos | has | haec |
| gen. | huius | huius | huius | | horum | harum | horum |
| dat. | huic | huic | huic | | his | his | his |
| abl. | hoc | hac | hoc | | his | his | his |

F The demonstrative pronoun ille illa illud → *that (over there)* can also be used to mean *he, she* or *it*. It is where the French articles *le* and *la* come from.

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | ille | illa | illud | | illi | illae | illa |
| acc. | illum | illam | illud | | illos | illas | illa |
| gen. | illius | illius | illius | | illorum | illarum | illorum |
| dat. | illi | illi | illi | | illis | illis | illis |
| abl. | illo | illa | illo | | illis | illis | illis |

G The demonstrative pronoun **iste ista istud** → *that* declines like **ille** and means ‘*that near you*’ as opposed to ‘*that over there*’. It is often disparaging in tone, e.g. **iste amicus me vituperavit** → *that friend of yours has insulted me*.

Definitive pronoun

H The definitive pronoun **idem eadem idem** → *the same* is like **is** *ea id*, with **-dem** added.

| | Singular | Masc. | Fem. | Neuter | Plural | Masc. | Fem. | Neuter |
|------|----------|---------|---------|--------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------|
| nom. | idem | eadem | idem | | eidem | eaedem | eadem | |
| acc. | eundem | eandem | idem | | eosdem | easdem | eadem | |
| gen. | eiusdem | eiusdem | eiusdem | | eorundem | earundem | eorundem | |
| dat. | eidem | eidem | eidem | | eisdem or iisdem | eisdem or iisdem | eisdem or iisdem | |
| abl. | eodem | eadem | eodem | | eisdem or iisdem | eisdem or iisdem | eisdem or iisdem | |

Emphatic pronoun

I The emphatic pronoun: **ipse ipse ipsum**

The **emphatic** (or **intensive**) pronoun **ipse ipsa ipsum** → *self* draws attention to something and is used as an adjective. It must not be confused with the reflexive pronoun (see B), which is used as a noun and is an essential part of the sentence structure whereas **ipse** is not. It can be translated in a variety of ways into English provided that there is some emphasis, e.g. **Marcus equum ipsum delegit** → *Marcus chose the very horse*, or *Marcus chose the horse itself*.

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | ipse | ipsa | ipsum | | ipsi | ipsae | ipsa | |
| acc. | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | | ipsos | ipsas | ipsa | |
| gen. | ipsius | ipsius | ipsius | | ipsorum | ipsarum | ipsorum | |
| dat. | ipsi | ipsi | ipsi | | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis | |
| abl. | ipso | ipsa | ipso | | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis | |

Relative pronoun

J The relative pronoun: **qui quae quod** (see also Unit 13-AF).

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | qui | quae | quod | | qui | quae | quae | |
| acc. | quem | quam | quod | | quos | quas | quae | |
| gen. | cuius | cuius | cuius | | quorum | quarum | quorum | |
| dat. | cui | cui | cui | | quibus | quibus | quibus | |
| abl. | quo | qua | quo | | quibus | quibus | quibus | |

NB The dative and ablative plurals of this word can also be **quīs**.

- ▶ The relative pronoun **qui quae quod** → *who, which* is used to introduce **relative clauses**. These clauses give us some more information about a word in the main clause, e.g. in the sentence **canem quem avia mihi dedit amo** → *I like the dog which my grandmother gave to me*, the relative clause (in bold italics) tells us something about the dog and the relative pronoun **quem** → *which*, introduces the clause and relates to the word *dog* in the main clause.
- ▶ The word to which a relative pronoun relates is called the **antecedent** (**canem** → *dog* in the preceding example). In Latin, the relative pronoun always agrees in **number** and **gender** with the antecedent but its **case** always depends on its function in the clause, e.g. in the previous example the word **quem** → *which*

is accusative in Latin because it is the object of the clause ‘which my grandmother gave to me’.

- ▶ In English, when the relative pronoun refers to a person it is one of the few words which decline (compare the personal pronouns in A): nom. *who*, acc. *whom* and gen. *whose*. In English, however, we sometimes use the word *that* instead of *who* or *which*, or even omit the relative pronoun altogether where the sense is obvious.

e.g. I know the man *whom* you mean. I know the man you mean.

I know the man *that* you mean.

- ▶ In Latin, the antecedent can sometimes be omitted in the main clause if the sense is clear, e.g. **virum quem tu vidisti ego quoque vidi** → *I too have seen the man whom you saw* can also be written **quem tu vidisti ego quoque vidi**. Furthermore, the antecedent can even be repeated in the relative clause, e.g. **virum quem tu vidisiti ego virum quoque vidi**.
- ▶ The relative pronoun is far more common in Latin than in English. In addition to situations where we would use ‘*who*’ or ‘*which*’ in English, the Romans frequently used **qui quae quod** where we would use a demonstrative pronoun like ‘*this*’ or ‘*that*’, or even a personal pronoun, e.g. **quod consilium probo** → *I approve of that plan* (literally: *which plan I approve.*)
- ▶ For the use of **qui** in **final** (purpose) clauses, see Unit 14D.

Indefinite pronouns

- K** The indefinite pronoun **quidam quaedam quoddam** (or **quiddam**) → *a certain person, someone* is quite close to the English indefinite article ‘*a*’. It looks similar to the relative pronoun (see J) with the ending **-dam**. Other compounds of **qui** or **quis** (see N) decline in a similar way, changing the **-m** of the acc. sing. and gen. pl. to **-n**, as in **idem eadem idem** (see H).

| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | quidam | quaedam | quoddam | | quidam | quaedam | quaedam |
| acc. | quendam | quandam | quoddam | | quosdam | quasdam | quaedam |
| gen. | cuiusdam | cuiusdam | cuiusdam | | quorundam | quarundam | quorundam |
| dat. | cuidam | cuidam | cuidam | | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| abl. | quodam | quadam | quodam | | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

The dative and ablative plurals of this word can also be **quīsdam**.

L Another **indefinite pronoun** is **quis qua quid** (or **qui quae quod**) → *anyone, anything*. This declines in a similar way to the relative pronoun (see J) apart from the alternative forms of the nominative and accusative singulars; one used as a pronoun, the other as an adjective:

| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|------------------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|
| nom. | quis | qua | quid (<i>pronoun</i>) | | qui | quae | quae (or qua) |
| | or qui | quae | quod (<i>adjective</i>) | | | | |
| acc. | quem | quam | quid (or quod) | | quos | quas | quae (or qua) |
| gen. | cuius | cuius | cuius | | quorum | quarum | quorum |
| dat. | cui | cui | cui | | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| abl. | quo | qua | quo | | quibus | quibus | quibus |

Interrogative pronouns

M The **interrogative pronoun** **quis? quis? quid?** (or **qui? quae? quod?**) → *who? what?* is used to ask questions. It declines in almost exactly the same way as the relative pronoun (see J) apart from the alternative forms of the nominative and accusative singulars; one used as a pronoun, the other as an adjective:

| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|--|
| nom. | quis? or qui? | quis? quae? | quid? (<i>pronoun</i>) quod? (<i>adjective</i>) |
| acc. | quem? | quam? | quid? (<i>or quod</i>) etc. <i>as the relative pronoun</i> |

N In these **compounds** of **quis** and **qui** the forms in brackets are used only as adjectives.

| Masculine | Feminine | Neuter | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| quicumque | quaecumque | quodcumque | <i>whosoever, whatsoever</i> |
| quisquis | quisquis | quidquid (<i>or quicquid</i>) | <i>whosoever, whatsoever</i> |
| aliquis | aliqua | aliquid | <i>someone, something</i> |
| aliqui | aliqua | aliquid | <i>someone, something</i> |
| quisque | quaeque | quidque (<i>or quodque</i>) | <i>each</i> |
| quisquam | quisquam | quidquam (<i>or quicquam</i>) | <i>anyone at all</i> |
| quispiam | quaepiam | quippiam (<i>or quodpiam</i>) | <i>someone</i> |
| quivis | quaevis | quidvis (<i>or quodvis</i>) | <i>anyone you like</i> |
| quilibet | quaelibet | quidlibet (<i>or quodlibet</i>) | <i>anyone you like</i> |
| unusquisque | unaquaeque | unumquidque (<i>or unumquodque</i>) | <i>every single one</i> |
| ecquis? | ecqua? | equid (<i>or equod</i>)? | <i>is there anyone who?</i> |
| quisnam? | quaenam? | quidnam (<i>or quodnam</i>)? | <i>who, then?</i> |

Pronouns used as adjectives

- O** The following pronouns (also called pronominal adjectives) decline like **unus una unum** → *one* (see 6K): **ullus -a -um** → *any*, **nullus -a -um** → *none*, **totus -a -um** → *whole* and **solus -a -um** → *sole, lone*.

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | solus | sola | solum | | solī | solae | sola |
| acc. | solum | solam | solum | | solos | solas | sola |
| gen. | soliūs | soliūs | soliūs | | solorum | solarum | solorum |
| dat. | soli | soli | soli | | solis | solis | solis |
| abl. | solo | sola | solo | | solis | solis | solis |

- P** The declension of the pronoun **alius alia aliud** → *other, another* is:

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | alius | alia | aliud | | alii | aliae | alia |
| acc. | aliū | aliā | aliud | | alios | alias | alia |
| gen. | aliūs | aliūs | aliūs | | aliorum | aliarum | aliorum |
| dat. | alii | alii | alii | | aliis | aliis | aliis |
| abl. | alio | alia | alio | | aliis | aliis | aliis |

- Q** The declension of **alter altera alterum** → *one (or the other) of two* is:

| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| nom. | alter | altera | alterum | | alteri | alterae | altera |
| acc. | alterum | alteram | alterum | | alteros | alteras | altera |
| gen. | alterius | alterius | alterius | | alterorum | alterarum | alterorum |
| dat. | alteri | alteri | alteri | | alteris | alteris | alteris |
| abl. | altero | altera | altero | | alteris | alteris | alteris |

R **uter utra utrum** → *which (of two)?* or *whichever (of two)* and **neuter neutra neutrum** → *neither* decline like **alter** except that they keep the letter **e** only in the nominative masculine singular **uter** and **neuter**.

S **nemo** → *nobody* declines: nom. **nemo**, acc. **neminem**, gen. **nullius**, dat. **nemini**, abl. **nullo**.

T Of the other adjectival pronouns which decline, the following decline:

- ▶ like **bonus -a -um** (see Unit 5C): **tantus -a -um** → *so great*, **quantus -a -um?** → *how great?, how big?*, **quantuscumque -acumque -umcumque** → *however great* and **aliquantus -a -um** → *some (quantity), considerable*.
- ▶ like **fortis -is -e** (see Unit 5F): **talis -is -e** → *of such a kind*, **qualis -is -e?** → *of what kind?*, **qualiscumque -iscumque -ecumque** → *of whatsoever kind*.
- ▶ like **uter utra utrum** (see R): **alteruter alterutra alterutrum** → *one or other (of two)*, **utercumque utracumque utrumcumque** → *whichever of two*.

Direct questions

Direct questions are those asked directly of someone and ending in a question mark.

U Single direct questions

- ▶ In English, when we turn a statement into a question we change the position of the verb.
e.g. statement: *This is a kangaroo.* question: *Is this a kangaroo?*

In Latin, the syllable **-ne** is added to the first word.

e.g. statement: **tu hoc fecisti** → *you did this.* question: **tunc hoc fecisti?** → *did you do this?*

- ▶ When **nonne** introduces the question it implies that the questioner would like to hear the answer ‘yes’. This requires something like ‘surely?’ in English.
e.g. **nonne hoc fecisti?** → *surely you did this?* or *you did do this, didn’t you?*
- ▶ When **num** introduces the question it implies that the questioner would like to hear the answer ‘no’. This requires something like ‘surely not?’ in English.
e.g. **num hoc fecisti?** → *surely you did not do this?* or *you did not do this, did you?*
- ▶ When **an** introduces a question it expresses the speaker’s surprise.
e.g. **an tu hoc fecisti?** → *did you really do this?*
- ▶ As in English, direct questions may be introduced by an interrogative (question) word, such as **quis?** / **qui?** (*who?*) or one of its compounds which decline (listed in N), or any of the following:

quo? → *to where (whither)?*

ubi? → *where?*

unde? → *from where (whence)?*

quando? → *when?*

qualis? → *what kind of?*

quantus -a -um? → *how great?*

quotiens? → *how often?*

quot? → *how many?*

uter? → *which (of two)?*

quomodo? → *how (in what way)?*

cur? → *why?*

quam? → *how (as in how long)?*

qua? → *by what way?*

quare? → *why?*

quam ob rem? → *why?*

quamdiu? → *for how long?*

e.g. **quomodo hoc fecisti?** → *how did you do this?*

- ▶ Sometimes a single direct question is not introduced by a question word but is implied in the tone of voice. In Latin the question mark will tell you whether it is such a question.
e.g. **tu hoc fecisti?** → *did you do this?*

V Direct questions which offer an alternative are introduced by **utrum ... an (or anne)**. The negative is **annon**. Sometimes the word **utrum** is omitted.

e.g. **utrum vos expectabimus annon?** → *shall we expect you or not?*

W The subjunctive is used for deliberative questions (Unit 9H).

e.g. **quid faciamus?** → *what are we to do?*

X Rhetorical questions are those which do not really expect an answer.

e.g. **cur hostibus suis auxilium misit?** → *Why has he sent help to his enemies?*

Y The single answers *yes* and *no* do not exist in Latin. The closest are phrases like **ita** → *just so*, **ita vero** → *just so indeed*, **vero** or **sane** → *truly*, **etiam** → *even (so)*, **non ita** or **non vero** → *not so* and **minime** or **minime vero** → *least of all*.

1 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **ego puerum laudo sed tu castigas** → *I praise the boy but you criticize him*

- a** heri me Salvius visitavit.
- b** vobiscum ad fundum ambulabimus.
- c** te amo.
- d** mihi pater fabulam narravit.
- e** nostri odium Romanorum notissimum est.
- f** tibi aurum dabo.
- g** iudices vobis ignoscent.
- h** equites nobis lente appropinquabant.
- i** complures vestrum adsunt.
- j** nos manebimus sed vos discedetis.

2 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **Sphinx se humum coniecit** → *the Sphinx hurled herself to the ground*

- a** nos vertimus ad septentriones.
- b** latrones se in speluncis celaverunt.

- c** pecuniae gratia vobis favetis.
- d** cur tibi non ignosces?
- e** prae civibus te dedecoravisti.
- f** donum mihi tenebo.
- g** nos numquam culpabimus.
- h** mane semper me rado.
- i** sibi domum aedificaverunt.
- j** Titus cultro se laesit.

3 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *Caesar suos trans Rubiconem duxit* → *Caesar led his men across the Rubicon*

- a** vestimenta nova liberis vestris emi.
- b** fundum nostrum Romani vastaverunt.
- c** equus tuus maior quam meus est.
- d** anseres mei per noctem clamabant.
- e** cum suis fratribus pontem defendit.
- f** o mi fili, tandem te inveni.
- g** tua culpa fur domum intravit.
- h** consilia vestra non probo.
- i** sonitum vocis suae amat.
- j** nostri contra Gallos pugnabunt.

4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *Tomorrow we shall see your (pl.) island* → *cras insulam vestram videbimus*

- a** I have shown you (s.) my beautiful villa.
- b** We shall ride but you (pl.) will walk.
- c** Narcissus loved himself too much.
- d** The women came to the forum with us.
- e** Hercules, your glory is eternal.
- f** The gladiators have overcome our men.
- g** The prisoners will save themselves.
- h** The traitor will not save me.
- i** Father has made a raft for us.
- j** The sailors collected food for themselves.

5 Translate the following into English.

e.g. *id consilium optimum est* → *that plan is the best*

- a Portia eum valde amat.
- b eae puellae in horto ludunt.
- c eo tempore domi eramus.
- d eandem feminam amamus.
- e ei candidato non faveo.
- f heri idem monstrum vidi.
- g vestimenta eorum peto.
- h ea pictura eorundem puerorum est.
- i eos numquam vidi.
- j eam servavi sed eum deserui.

6 Translate the following into English.

e.g. *hic puer fortior quam Marcus est* → *this boy is stronger than Marcus*

- a haec verba incredibilia sunt.
- b vestigia huius ferae maxima sunt.
- c pro libertate hoc die pugnabimus.
- d hanc fabulam saepe audivi.
- e hos diu exspectavimus.
- f leones in hac spelunca habitant.
- g procul ab hoc loco curremus.
- h huic Cassius invidet.
- i sculptor effigies horum civium facit.
- j hunc fundum non ememus.

7 Translate the following into English.

e.g. *faciem illius agnosco* → *I recognize that man's face*

- a istud non probamus.
- b illi senatores Caesarem necaverunt.
- c per illam portam urbem intrabimus.
- d pro illo reo orator eloquenter causam oravit.
- e filium istius latronis non defendam.
- f pictores illas domus ornabant.

- g** duces gentium illarum Romanis favent.
- h** iuvenis illam intente spectat.
- i** illum heri in foro vidimus.
- j** iste canis me momordit.

8 Translate the following into Latin.

e.g. *these seats are too high* → **hae sellae altiores sunt**

- a** We shall see her soon.
- b** These are the same trees.
- c** That plough is heavier than this one.
- d** Nobody likes those clothes of yours.
- e** I have not heard it.
- f** This meal is excellent.
- g** I have washed this man's toga.
- h** We arrived at the temple on the same day.
- i** I like the sound of those bells.
- j** They have given him that letter.

9 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **Brutus ipse epistolam legit** → *Brutus read the letter himself*

- a** quis custodiet ipsos custodes?
- b** ea ipsa stolam elegit.
- c** hoc ferro ipso Dido se necavit.
- d** hi captivi sunt liberi regis ipsius.
- e** eandem umbram ipsam heri iterum vidi.
- f** meo avunculo ipso pecuniam dedi.
- g** cenam ipse coxi.
- h** milites praetoriani ipsi imperatorem necaverunt.
- i** scelus ipsum auctorem patefecit.
- j** deam ipsam in templo vidi.

10 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **sumus quae edimus** → *we are what we eat*

- a** quos tu amas ego quoque amo.
- b** illi sunt quibus numquam favebo.

- c** cena quam paraveras erat pessima.
- d** is qui audet vincet.
- e** sunt optiones duae quarum neutra bona est.
- f** Titus est iudex prae quo stabimus.
- g** ille est dux cui semper parebimus.
- h** hic est senator cuius filium Vitellia amat.
- i** aurum quod inveni gravissimum est.
- j** qui gladium e saxo extraxerit ille regnabit.

11 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *the king crowned the queen himself* → rex ipse reginam coronavit

- a** I have found the very gold which the miser himself hid.
- b** We shall catch the thieves who robbed you (s.).
- c** They will build the house you (s.) desire.
- d** I do not like what I have seen.
- e** The monster itself is not unfriendly.
- f** She herself has avoided the dangers that we feared.
- g** We do not trust a man whose father was a traitor.
- h** The women will save the city itself.
- i** You (pl.) will catch those very thieves.
- j** Not everything that glistens is gold.

12 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *quendam in horto heri vidi* → *I saw someone in the garden yesterday*

- a** equus cuiusdam super saepem salutit.
- b** viator quidam quendam in via vidit.
- c** candidato cuidam quem non nominabo favi.
- d** subter arbore quadam thesaurum celaverunt.
- e** quaedam verba infausta haruspex susurravit.
- f** venenis quibusdam senatorem sicarius interfecit.
- g** cervos quosdam venatores aspexerunt.
- h** quoddam consilium periculosum cepimus.
- i** profugi quodam die ab urbe clam discedent.
- j** nomina quorundam coniuratorum numquam sciemus.

13 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *quis nobis semitam monstrabit?* → *who will show us the way?*

- a quid novi audivisti?
- b quemque virum de auro rogavi.
- c quisnam illud monstrum liberavit?
- d Romani unumquemque vicinorum necaverunt.
- e quae signa arcana habent magi?
- f quidquid pecuniae comparavi, tibi dabo.
- g num avarus quidquam filio suo legavit?
- h ecqua Antonium amabit?
- i quos testes ad basilicam citabis?
- j cuius est hic fundus?

14 Translate the following into Latin.

e.g. *each man was carrying an axe* → *securim quisque portabat*

- a Who is that woman?
- b Titus will come to Rome with some friends.
- c I have heard a certain story from the old man.
- d Melissa told me something about the master.
- e Each man has seen the temple.
- f Whose (s.) gift have you (s.) taken?
- g Whom (pl.) will the ambassador choose?
- h Have you (s.) seen anyone at all today?
- i With whom (pl.) was the queen walking?
- j Some women will not support you (s.).

15 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *soli pro portis stabamus* → *we were standing alone before the gates*

- a utrum consulem Carthaginienses interfecerunt?
- b ullis modis montes ascendemus.
- c Cloelia sola hostibus resistebat.
- d fratrem alterum alteri antepono.
- e aliud consilium capiemus.
- f nullas naves in portu vidimus.

- g** Cicero laudem totius senatus accepit.
- h** neutra puella actorem agnovit.
- i** neminem Hercules timebat.
- j** Clodia maritum alius feminae amat.

16 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **tempestatem tantam numquam vidimus** → *we have never seen such a great storm*

- a** custodes alterutrum captivorum necaverunt.
- b** talibus verbis orator civibus persuasit.
- c** qualia sunt haec dona?
- d** quantus est elephantus?
- e** utrocumque consuli qui mercedes dabit favebo.
- f** aliquantam pecuniam a patre comparavi.
- g** talis iuvenis numquam miles erit.
- h** cum qualibus comitibus iter facies?
- i** tantas fabulas Petronius semper dat.
- j** aliquanto condimento coquus cenam condivit.

17 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *we have seen the peoples of the whole world* → **populos totius mundi vidimus**

- a** What kind of husband will Cloelia marry?
- b** How great is the power of the gods?
- c** Nobody believed Cassandra.
- d** The one consul has seriously offended the other.
- e** I alone shall support Lepidus.
- f** Tomorrow we shall see the temples of another city.
- g** Which of the (two) sisters do you (s.) love?
- h** Desperate men will adopt any plans.
- i** We have not often seen such treasures.
- j** They have seen neither brother today.

18 Translate the following questions into English.

e.g. **visne fabulam spectare?** → *do you want to watch the play?*

- a an Caesar necatus est?
- b canemne meum vidisti?
- c an ille pecuniam abstulit?
- d num Titus cras veniet?
- e nonne felem aluisti Septime?
- f illumne gladiatorem antea vidistis?
- g an Cassius illud dixit?
- h puerine in harena ludunt?
- i num isto candidato favetis?
- j nonne flores pulchrae sunt?

19 Translate the following questions into English.

e.g. *quo vadis, domine?* → *where are you going, master?*

- a quando princeps meus adveniet?
- b quomodo Caesar Rhenum transiit?
- c cur eam non amas?
- d qua fur in atrium venit?
- e ubi sunt sellae, ancillae?
- f quamdiu in cubiculo iacebas, Quinte?
- g quomodo urbem antiquam invenisti?
- h quam durus est hic gladius?
- i quot oves sunt in agris?
- j unde Claudius illam togam comparavit?

20 Translate the following questions into English.

e.g. *utrum domi manebis an mecum ambulabis?* → *will you stay at home or walk with me?*

- a clipeum perfecisti, faber?
- b utrum Tiberium an Quintum amas?
- c quotiens haec verba dicit?
- d cenam parabis annon?
- e utrum undeviginti anne viginti annos natus es?
- f quare servus ianuam claudit?
- g utrum Vesuvium visitavisti annon?
- h quamobrem Romani Gallos oppugnant?

- i nuces an uvas mavis?
- j utrum Tullius equitabit an Iulius?

21 Translate the following questions into Latin.

e.g. *you are not waiting for the emperor, are you?* → **num imperatorem exspectas?**

- a Why are the soldiers destroying the bridge?
- b You (s.) did hide the gold, didn't you?
- c Where are the merchant's gems?
- d Is Marcus at home?
- e Shall we visit the Colosseum or the Circus Maximus?
- f How many elephants did Hannibal have?
- g Did the dog really bite you (s.)?
- h Surely he has not sold the farm?
- i Will Aemilia come to Rome or not?
- j Where are the wells in this village?

Points to remember

- 1 Pronouns are words used as substitutes for nouns. E.g. **ille dixit** (*that man spoke*) instead of **imperator dixit** (*the general spoke*).
- 2 Note the distinctive genitive and dative singular endings in **-ius** and **-i** respectively which are characteristic of so many pronouns and distinguish them clearly from nouns.
- 3 Be careful to avoid confusing **ille-a-ud** (*that far from both of us*) with **iste-a-ud** (*that near you*).
- 4 The relative pronoun **qui quae quod** was the Romans' favourite word. It is used so often in Latin that we sometimes have to translate it not as *who* but as *this* or *that*.
- 5 Remember that **is ea id** can mean *he, she, it* or *that*.

- 6 To turn a Latin statement into a question, add the ending **-ne** to the first word.
- 7 The subjunctive mood is used for deliberative questions. Otherwise the indicative mood is used.
- 8 A question which would like to hear the answer 'yes' is introduced by **nonne** (*surely*) and one which would like to hear the answer 'no' is introduced by **num** (*surely... not*).
- 9 A question which offers an alternative contains **utrum** (*whether*) ... **an** (*or*) or ... **annon** (*or not*).
- 10 The closest Latin comes to using 'yes' and 'no' in answers is **ita vero** and **mimine vero** respectively.

Passive and deponent verbs

In this chapter you should aim to

- *understand the meaning of the passive voice and deponent verbs*
 - *learn how passive verbs are formed*
 - *recognize the endings of passive verbs*
 - *gain a basic vocabulary of deponent verbs*
 - *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*
-

Present, future and imperfect passive tenses

- A** The two voices of a verb reflect whether the subject is **performing** the action (**active voice**) or **experiencing** the action (**passive voice**).
- e.g. The dog **has stolen** the biscuit (active).
The dog **has been stolen** by the pirate (passive).
- B** In English we form the **passive voice** by using the appropriate tense of the verb *to be* with the **past participle**. In the example **has been** is the appropriate tense of ‘to be’ (perfect) and **stolen** is the past participle.
- C** The form of the **passive voice** for **present, future** and **imperfect** tenses of all the four conjugations is straightforward. The following table compares the endings:

| | <i>Active ending</i> | <i>Passive ending</i> |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1st person singular (I) | -o / -m | -or / -r |
| 2nd person singular (you) | -s | -ris / -eris (or -re) |
| 3rd person singular (he/she/it) | -t | -tur |
| 1st person plural (we) | -mus | -mur |
| 2nd person plural (you) | -tis | -mini |
| 3rd person plural (they) | -nt | -ntur |

D Examples of the passive form of each of the three tenses from the four conjugations are:

- ▶ present first conj.: portor portaris portatur portamur
portamini portantur
- ▶ future first conj.: portabor portaberis portabitur portabimur
portabimini portabuntur
- ▶ imperfect first conj.: portabar portabaris portabatur
portabamur portabamini portabantur
- ▶ present second conj.: habeor haberis habetur habemur
habemini habentur
- ▶ future second conj.: habebor habeberis habebitur habebimur
habebimini habebuntur
- ▶ imperfect second conj.: habebar habebaris habebatur
habebamur habebamini habebantur
- ▶ present third conj.: agor ageris agitur agimur agimini aguntur
- ▶ future third conj.: agar ageris agetur agemur agemini agentur
- ▶ imperfect third conj.: agebar agebaris agebatur agebamur
agebamini agebantur
- ▶ present fourth conj.: audior audiris auditur audimur audimini
audiuntur
- ▶ future fourth conj.: audiar audieris audietur audiemur
audiemini audientur
- ▶ imperfect fourth conj.: audiebar audiebaris audiebatur
audiebamur audiebamini audiebantur

E Agent and instrument

- ▶ When a passive verb is used we need to know the **agent** (person) or **instrument** (thing) **by whom** or **by which** the

action is performed. In the example in A the pirate is the **agent** because it was he who did the stealing.

- ▶ In Latin the **agent** is expressed using a / **ab** → *by*, plus the **ablative of agent** (see Unit 4E12), e.g. *canis a matrona portatur* → *the dog is being carried by the lady*.
 - ▶ In Latin the instrument is expressed using the plain **ablative of instrument** (see Unit 4E13), e.g. *agri flumine inundantur* → *the fields are being flooded by the river*.
-

Perfect, future perfect and pluperfect passive tenses

These tenses are formed in the same way for verbs of all four conjugations.

F Perfect passive

- ▶ The **perfect passive tense** is formed by using the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 10C) and the present tense of *to be* (*sum es est, etc.*).
e.g. *portatus sum* → I have been carried
portatus es → you (s.) have been carried
portatus est → he has been carried
portati sumus → we have been carried
portati estis → you (pl.) have been carried
portati sunt → they have been carried
- ▶ The participle declines and so changes **number** and **gender** depending on the number and gender of the subject. So, if the subject is feminine we find e.g. *portata est* → *she has been carried*, while if the subject is neuter we find e.g. *portatum est* → *it has been carried*.

G Future perfect passive

- ▶ The **future perfect passive** is formed with the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 10C) and the future tense of *to be* (*ero eris erit, etc.*).
e.g. *portatus ero* → I shall have been carried
portatus eris → you (s.) will have been carried
portatus erit → he will have been carried
portati erimus → we shall have been carried

portati eritis → you (pl.) will have been carried

portati erunt → they will have been carried

- ▶ The participle declines, just as for the perfect passive, e.g. **portata erit** → *she will have been carried*, **portatum erit** → *it will have been carried*.

H Pluperfect passive

- ▶ The **pluperfect passive** is formed with the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 10C) and the imperfect tense of *to be* (*eram eras erat*, etc.).

e.g. portatus eram → I had been carried

portatus eras → you (s.) had been carried

portatus erat → he had been carried

portati eramus → we had been carried

portati eratis → you (pl.) had been carried

portati erant → they had been carried

- ▶ The participle declines, just as for the perfect passive, e.g. **portata erat** → *she had been carried*, **portatum erat** → *it had been carried*.

I For the **agent** and **instrument** after these verbs, see E.

Deponent verbs

J Deponent verbs are **passive in form but active in meaning**.

There is no equivalent to this phenomenon in English. Just as for normal active verbs, you can tell which conjugation they belong to by examining their **present infinitive** ending (the second principal part: see Unit 11K). In dictionaries only their first three principal parts are given.

- ▶ Deponent verbs of the first conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending **-ari**, e.g. **conor conari conatus sum** → *try*.
- ▶ Deponent verbs of the second conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending **-eri**, e.g. **confiteor confiteri confessus sum** → *confess, acknowledge*.

- ▶ Deponent verbs of the third conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending *-i*, e.g. **loquor loqu*ī* locutus sum** → *speak*.
- ▶ Deponent verbs of the fourth conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending *-iri*, e.g. **mentior ment*īri* mentitus sum** → *tell lies*.

K Although the indicative, subjunctive and imperative moods and perfect participles of deponent verbs are passive in form and active in meaning, their **present and future participles, future infinitives, supines and gerunds** are active in form and meaning, as in normal verbs. The gerundives of deponent verbs are passive in form and meaning.

L Sample forms for the first conjugation verb **conor -ari -atus sum** → *try are*:

| | <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Imperative</i> | <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Participle</i> |
|------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| present | conor | coner | conare | conari | conans |
| future | conabor | — | — | conaturus esse | conaturus |
| imperfect | conabar | conarer | — | — | — |
| perfect | conatus sum | conatus sim | — | conatus esse | conatus |
| future | conatus ero | — | — | — | — |
| perfect | | | | | |
| pluperfect | conatus eram | conatus essem | — | — | — |
| Gerund: | conandum | Gerundive: | conandus -a -um | Supine: | conatum |

M Some important deponent verbs are followed by the ablative:
 e.g. **utor uti usus sum** → *use, employ, enjoy*
abutor abuti abusus sum → *use up, exhaust*
fruor frui fructus sum → *enjoy, have the use of*
fungor fungi functus sum → *perform, discharge*
vescor vesci (no perfect) → *feed on, enjoy*
potior potiri potitus sum → *take possession of*

Semi-deponent verbs

N Semi-deponent verbs are those which have an active present, imperfect and future, but a passive perfect, pluperfect and future perfect. There are not many but they are common:

Second conjugation: **audeo audere ausus sum** → *dare*; **gaudeo gaudere gavisus sum** → *rejoice*; **soleo solere solitus sum** → *be accustomed to*.

Third conjugation: **fido fidere fisus sum** → *trust* (+ dative); **confido** → *trust*; **diffido** → *mistrust*.

1 Write out the following passive tenses of the verbs below.

e.g. the present passive of **amo** → **amor, amaris, amatur, amamur, amamini, amantur**

- a** the future passive of **duco**
- b** the present passive of **facio**
- c** the imperfect passive of **rego**
- d** the present passive of **servo**
- e** the future passive of **capio**
- f** the imperfect passive of **doceo**
- g** the present passive of **custodio**
- h** the future passive of **iubeo**
- i** the imperfect passive of **dico**
- j** the present passive of **moneo**

2 Translate the following verbs into English.

e.g. **liberabimur** → *we shall be freed*

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| a persuaderis | f rapiuntur |
| b trahar | g dantur |
| c secabimur | h arcessimur |
| d amaberis | i movebamini |
| e sentiebatur | j delebaris |

3 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *precibus non movebimur* → *we shall not be moved by prayers*

- a dumis aries tenebatur.
- b ab Artemidoro Caesar monebitur.
- c dona a nepotibus tibi dabuntur.
- d cena a coquo coquebatur.
- e imperator ab hostibus capietur.
- f montibus impedimur.
- g agmen a Tiberio ducetur.
- h Aeneas sagitta vulneratur.
- i a consulibus laudabamur.
- j grana ab agricolis sparguntur.

4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *you (s.) are loved by a worthy man* → *a viro digno amaris*

- a I shall be heard by all.
- b You (pl.) will be taught by the best teachers.
- c The orator is believed by many.
- d The story was being narrated by the old man.
- e They are being watched by the dogs.
- f The doors were being closed by the slaves.
- g The girl will be bitten by a snake.
- h The ship was being broken by the waves and rocks.
- i It will be announced tomorrow.
- j The book was being written by a very clever scribe.

5 Write out the passive tenses of the following verbs.

e.g. the perfect passive of *amo* → *amatus sum, amatus es, amatus est, amati sumus, amati estis, amati sunt*

- a the perfect passive of *habeo*
- b the future perfect passive of *ago*
- c the pluperfect passive of *audio*
- d the future perfect passive of *capio*
- e the pluperfect passive of *duco*

- f** the perfect passive of **moneo**
- g** the perfect passive of **custodio**
- h** the pluperfect passive of **facio**
- i** the perfect passive of **laudo**
- j** the perfect passive of **exspecto**

6 Translate the following verbs into English.

e.g. *visa est* → *she has been seen*

- a** *factum erat*
- b** *laudata est*
- c** *perfectum erit*
- d** *proditā est*
- e** *scriptum erat*
- f** *ignota erit*
- g** *servata erat*
- h** *notatum est*
- i** *punita est*
- j** *aedificatum erit*

7 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *naves a nautis ornatae erant* → *the ships had been decorated by the sailors*

- a** *dona a rege data erant.*
- b** *asini oneribus oppressi sunt.*
- c** *epistulae a legatis missae erunt.*
- d** *seges tempestatibus corrupta erat.*
- e** *cras urbs capta erit.*
- f** *reges a civibus expulsi sunt.*
- g** *gemmae a furibus surreptae erant.*
- h** *nodus notissimus ab Alexandro intercisisus est.*
- i** *agna ab aquila erepta est.*
- j** *consilia a proditoribus patefacta erunt.*

8 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *the prisoners had been bound by the guards* → **captivi a custodibus vincti erant**

- a The lamps will have been lit by the servant.
- b The farms had been sold by the bailiff.
- c Mother has been eaten by crocodiles.
- d The beautiful roses had been plucked by the girl.
- e The hare will have been beaten by the tortoise.
- f We have been cheated by the merchants.
- g The ghost had never been seen by the boys.
- h The fields had been laid waste by the soldiers.
- i This land was ruled by a wizard.
- j The citizens will have been provoked by the barbarians.

9 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **Romani imperio maximo potiti erant** → *the Romans had acquired a very great empire*

- a philosophi de natura sapientiae rebantur.
- b nolite morari, liberi.
- c athletas hortamur, cives.
- d nihil peius quam mortem patiemur.
- e rex anno sexagesimo suo mortuus est.
- f mane domo proficiscemur.
- g fabri pontem experiuntur.
- h equi per flumen trepide gressi sunt.
- i puellae laete pompam secutae sunt.
- j Galli per portas Romae ingressi erant.

10 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **saxa de monte paulatim labebantur** → *rocks were gradually slipping down the mountain*

- a hamadryades de arboribus ortae sunt.
- b cras Romani Graecos aggredientur.
- c gaudemus igitur, iuvenes dum sumus.

- d** puella quattuordecim annos nata est.
- e** ille artifex modo marmore optimo utebatur.
- f** mercator domum locupletem nactus est.
- g** servi horto domini benigni fruebantur.
- h** hieme agricola faeno abusus erat.
- i** post cladem imperator valde irascebatur.
- j** consules officio optime fungentur.

11 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **numquam mortuorum obliviscemur** → *we shall never be forgetful of the dead*

- a** sol mox coorietur.
- b** vaccae herbis vescuntur.
- c** femina Caesari contradicere ausa est.
- d** noli umquam mentiri, mi fili.
- e** percussores senem adorti sunt.
- f** olim puellae ad fontem mane convenire solitae erant.
- g** avarus mihi numquam fisus est.
- h** omnes pueri taurum verentur.
- i** custodes de captivis non loquentur.
- j** cur iuvenes minaris, o iudex?

12 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use deponent verbs.

e.g. *the citizens encourage me* → **cives me hortantur**

- a** Why has the magistrate lied about the money?
- b** Have you (s.) obtained the books?
- c** Do not fear the dark, my son.
- d** I have not forgotten the animals.
- e** We are hunting the huge stag.
- f** Tomorrow we shall talk about the plan.
- g** The enemy are advancing slowly across the plain.
- h** You (pl.) are not accustomed to work carefully.
- i** The citizens have always trusted the orator.
- j** The captives will not come out from the gaol.

Points to remember

- 1 The personal endings of the present passive are **-or, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur**.
- 2 The personal endings of the future passive of the first and second conjugations are **-bor, -beris, -bitur, -bimur, -bimini, -buntur**.
- 3 The personal endings of the future passive of the third and fourth conjugations are **-ar, -eris, -etur, -emur, -emini, -entur**.
- 4 The personal endings of the imperfect passive are **-bar, -baris, -batur, -bamur, -bamini, -bantur**.
- 5 The perfect passive uses the perfect participle and the present indicative tense of **esse** (*to be*) as an auxiliary verb.
- 6 The pluperfect passive uses the perfect participle and the imperfect indicative tense of **esse** (*to be*) as an auxiliary verb.
- 7 The future perfect passive uses the perfect participle and the future indicative tense of **esse** (*to be*) as an auxiliary verb.
- 8 The agent after a passive verb is expressed by **a** (or **ab**) plus the ablative. The instrument after a passive verb is expressed by the plain ablative.
- 9 Deponent verbs are passive in form and active in meaning. They occur in all conjugations and include many common verbs like **loquor** (*I speak*) and **utor** (*I use*).
- 10 Semi-deponent verbs have active present, future and imperfect tenses, but deponent perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses. The ones you are likeliest to meet are **gaudeo** (*I rejoice*) **audeo** (*I dare*), **soleo** (*I am accustomed*) and **fido** (*I trust*).

Subjunctive verbs

In this chapter you should aim to

- *understand the concept of the subjunctive*
 - *learn how the tenses of the subjunctive are formed*
 - *recognize the endings of subjunctive verbs*
 - *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*
-

A The **subjunctive mood** is used to denote an action that is desired, willed, anticipated, conditional or prospective. As a result it is normally found in subordinate clauses rather than as a main verb (see Unit 1U). The meaning and usage of the subjunctive are explained in H and I and under the relevant constructions. The mood has no regular future or future perfect tenses. Instead the future participle (see Unit 10D) is used with the present or imperfect subjunctive of the verb ‘to be’ (see Unit 12P).

B The **present subjunctive active** is formed from the present stem. The letter **-e-** comes before the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt** in the first conjugation while the letter **-a-** comes before them in the second, third and fourth conjugations.

► **Present active tense**

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portem | habeam | agam | audiam |
| 2nd person singular | portes | habeas | agas | audias |
| 3rd person singular | portet | habeat | agat | audiat |
| 1st person plural | portemus | habeamus | agamus | audiamus |
| 2nd person plural | portetis | habeatis | agatis | audiatis |
| 3rd person plural | portent | habeant | agant | audiant |

► The present subjunctive passive is formed as normal (see Unit 8C):

► **Present passive tense**

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | porter | habear | agar | audiar |
| 2nd person singular | porteris | habearis | agaris | audiaris |
| 3rd person singular | portetur | habeatur | agatur | audiatur |
| 1st person plural | portemur | habeamur | agamur | audiamur |
| 2nd person plural | portemini | habeamini | agamini | audiamini |
| 3rd person plural | portentur | habeantur | agantur | audiantur |

C The **imperfect subjunctive active** is formed by taking the **present infinitive (second principal part)** and adding the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt:**

► **Imperfect active tense**

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portarem | haberem | agerem | audirem |
| 2nd person singular | portares | haberes | ageres | audires |
| 3rd person singular | portaret | haberet | ageret | audiret |
| 1st person plural | portaremus | haberemus | ageremus | audiremus |
| 2nd person plural | portaretis | haberetis | ageretis | audiretis |
| 3rd person plural | portarent | haberent | agerent | audirent |

► The imperfect subjunctive passive is formed as normal (see Unit 8C):

► **Imperfect passive tense**

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portarer | haberer | agerer | audirer |
| 2nd person singular | portareris | habereris | agereris | audireris |
| 3rd person singular | portaretur | haberetur | ageretur | audiretur |
| 1st person plural | portaremur | haberemur | ageremur | audiremur |
| 2nd person plural | portaremini | haberemini | ageremini | audiremini |
| 3rd person plural | portarentur | haberentur | agerentur | audirentur |

NB There is an alternative ending **-re** for **-ris** for the 2nd person singular in the present and imperfect passive subjunctive.

D The **perfect subjunctive active** is formed by adding **-erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint** to the **perfect stem**. Be careful not to confuse these with some of the endings of the indicative future perfect active (see Unit 2W). The forms for the different conjugations, from **porto** → *carry*, **habeo** → *have*, **ago** → *do* and **audio** → *hear* are as follows:

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portaverim | habuerim | egerim | audiverim |
| 2nd person singular | portaveris | habueris | egeris | audiveris |
| 3rd person singular | portaverit | habuerit | egerit | audiverit |
| 1st person plural | portaverimus | habuerimus | egerimus | audiverimus |
| 2nd person plural | portaveritis | habueritis | egeritis | audiveritis |
| 3rd person plural | portaverint | habuerint | egerint | audiverint |

E The **perfect subjunctive passive** is formed by a combination of the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 10C) and the **present subjunctive tense of *to be*** (see Unit 12P). Remember that the participle agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portatus sim | habitus sim | actus sim | auditus sim |
| 2nd person singular | portatus sis | habitus sis | actus sis | auditus sis |
| 3rd person singular | portatus sit | habitus sit | actus sit | auditus sit |

(Contd)

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st person plural | portati simus | habiti simus | acti simus | auditi simus |
| 2nd person plural | portati sitis | habiti sitis | acti sitis | auditi sitis |
| 3rd person plural | portati sint | habiti sint | acti sint | auditi sint |

F The pluperfect subjunctive active is formed by adding **-issem, -isses, -isset, -issemus, -issetis, -issent** to the perfect stem.

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portavissem | habuissem | egissem | audavissem |
| 2nd person singular | portavisses | habuisses | egisses | audavisses |
| 3rd person singular | portavisset | habuisset | egisset | audavisset |
| 1st person plural | portavissemus | habuissemus | egissemus | audavissemus |
| 2nd person plural | portavissetis | habuissetis | egissetis | audavissetis |
| 3rd person plural | portavissent | habuissent | egissent | audavissent |

G The **pluperfect subjunctive passive** is formed by a combination of the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 10C) and the **imperfect subjunctive tense of to be** (see Unit 12P). Remember that the participle agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

| | <i>First conjugation</i> | <i>Second conjugation</i> | <i>Third conjugation</i> | <i>Fourth conjugation</i> |
|------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | portatus essem | habitus essem | actus essem | auditus essem |
| 2nd person singular | portatus esses | habitus esses | actus esses | auditus esses |
| 3rd person singular | portatus esset | habitus esset | actus esset | auditus esset |
| 1st person plural | portati essemus | habiti essemus | acti essemus | auditi essemus |
| 2nd person plural | portati essetis | habiti essetis | acti essetis | auditi essetis |
| 3rd person plural | portati essent | habiti essent | acti essent | auditi essent |

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives cannot really be translated into English in isolation. They are used in various constructions.

Subjunctive: uses

The subjunctive mood expresses possibility. We do not often use it in English but it exists (e.g. if I were you). When translating subjunctives it is almost always necessary to use accompanying auxiliary verbs such as would, should or might.

H In main clauses (see Unit 1T) the subjunctive is not common but when it is found it expresses what is desired or regarded as possible and appears as one of the following types.

- ▶ The **jussive subjunctive** (negative: **ne**) in the 2nd and 3rd person is almost a command. Present and perfect tenses are used, e.g. *caveat emptor* → *let the buyer beware*; *ne transieris flumen* → *do not cross the river*; *ne me vexes* → *do not annoy me*; *petas aurum* → (*please*) *seek the gold*.
- ▶ The **hortative subjunctive** (negative: **ne**) in the 1st person expresses encouragement. The present tense is used, e.g. *meliora sequamur* → *let us seek better things*.

- ▶ The **concessive subjunctive** (negative: **ne**) expresses a concession such as *granted that* or *supposing that*. Present or perfect tenses are used, e.g. *celet pecuniam Titus* → *supposing that Titus is hiding the money*.
- ▶ The **deliberative subjunctive** (negative: **non**) is used for questions in which what ought to be done is uncertain. Present and imperfect tenses are used, e.g. *quid faciam?* → *what am I to do?*, *quid agerem?* → *what should I have done?*
- ▶ The **optative subjunctive** (negative: **ne**) expresses wishes. The present and perfect express a wish for the future, the imperfect a wish that something were so now and the pluperfect a wish that something had been so in the past. They are often introduced by **utinam** → *would that / if only*, e.g. *di te servent* → *may the gods preserve you*; *utinam haec diceret* → *if only you were saying this (now)*; *utinam id fecissem* → *would that I had done it*. The acclamation **Vivat rex / regina!** shouted at coronations is an example of the subjunctive in use: (*Long*) *May the king / queen live!*
- ▶ The **potential subjunctive** (negative: **non**) expresses something which has the potential to happen and may depend upon a condition, although that condition is not always present. The present and perfect tenses are used with reference to the present and future; the imperfect with reference to the past, e.g. *quis audeat hoc facere?* → *who would dare to do this?* *eum fortem esse putares* → *you would have thought him to be brave*. *velim* → *I would like*, *nolim* → *I would not like* and *malim* → *I would prefer*, are common examples of this subjunctive.

I In **subordinate clauses** (see Unit 11T) the subjunctive is more common and is found:

- ▶ In expressions of desire or will or condition which depend on another sentence, e.g. in **indirect commands** (see Unit 15O-Q) *rogo te ut venias* → *I ask you to come*.
- ▶ As the **prospective subjunctive** to represent something as anticipated rather than as a fact, e.g. *manebimus dum periculum augeat?* → *shall we remain until the danger may increase?*

- ▶ With its meaning so weak that it reports actual facts, e.g. in **result clauses** (see Unit 14H) **totiens rogavit ut *adsentirem*** → *he asked me so many times that I consented.*
- ▶ In indirect speech the verbs of subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive even if they were indicative in direct speech, except that in **dum** (→ *until*) clauses in indirect speech the present indicative is kept.

The subjunctives in these exercises are in main clauses. The uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses is tested under each of the subordinate constructions.

1 Write out the present subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.

e.g. the present subjunctive passive of *sedeo* → *sedear, sedearis, sedeatur, sedeamur, sedeamini, sedeantur*

- a the present subjunctive passive of *facio*
- b the present subjunctive active of *seco*
- c the present subjunctive active of *rego*
- d the present subjunctive passive of *teneo*
- e the present subjunctive active of *moveo*
- f the present subjunctive passive of *capio*
- g the present subjunctive passive of *aperio*
- h the present subjunctive active of *cedo*
- i the present subjunctive active of *amo*
- j the present subjunctive passive of *video*

2 Write out the imperfect subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.

e.g. The imperfect subjunctive active of *moneo* → *monerem, moneres, moneret, moneremus, moneretis, monerent*

- a the imperfect subjunctive passive of *trado*
- b the imperfect subjunctive active of *video*
- c the imperfect subjunctive passive of *rogo*
- d the imperfect subjunctive active of *verto*
- e the imperfect subjunctive active of *iacio*
- f the imperfect subjunctive passive of *sentio*

- g** the imperfect subjunctive active of **iubeo**
- h** the imperfect subjunctive passive of **duco**
- i** the imperfect subjunctive active of **sto**
- j** the imperfect subjunctive active of **frango**

3 Write out the perfect subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.

e.g. the perfect subjunctive active of **gero** → **gesserim, gesseris, gesserit, gesserimus, gesseritis, gesserint**

- a** the perfect subjunctive passive of **rideo**
- b** the perfect subjunctive active of **ludo**
- c** the perfect subjunctive active of **parco**
- d** the perfect subjunctive passive of **cupio**
- e** the perfect subjunctive active of **dormio**
- f** the perfect subjunctive passive of **pugno**
- g** the perfect subjunctive passive of **mitto**
- h** the perfect subjunctive active of **suadeo**
- i** the perfect subjunctive passive of **paro**
- j** the perfect subjunctive active of **reperio**

4 Write out the pluperfect subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.

e.g. the pluperfect subjunctive active of **ruo** → **ruissem, ruisset, ruissetis, ruissetis, ruissetis, ruissetis**

- a** the pluperfect subjunctive passive of **relinquo**
- b** the pluperfect subjunctive active of **deleo**
- c** the pluperfect subjunctive passive of **laboro**
- d** the pluperfect subjunctive active of **custodio**
- e** the pluperfect subjunctive active of **accipio**
- f** the pluperfect subjunctive passive of **pello**
- g** the pluperfect subjunctive active of **dico**
- h** the pluperfect subjunctive passive of **doceo**
- i** the pluperfect subjunctive active of **claudio**
- j** the pluperfect subjunctive passive of **sepelio**

5 Translate the following into English. The subjunctives are jussive or hortative.

e.g. *ne te mater inveniatur* → *do not let mother find you*

- a** portae aperiantur, o custodes.
- b** omnia vincit amor; et nos cedamus amori.
- c** cives, imperatorem victorem salutemus!
- d** ne canes excitaveris.
- e** quam laetissime vivamus!
- f** aprum venatores caveant.
- g** ne pugnetis in horto, pueri.
- h** nunc diligenter laboremus.
- i** appropinquent legati.
- j** Ciceronem audiamus.

6 Translate the following into English. The subjunctives are concessive or deliberative.

e.g. *quotiens haec verba dicam?* → *how often should I say these words?*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a quo nunc veniamus? | f Caesarem timuerit Cassius. |
| b necaverit maritum Clodia. | g ubi villam aedificem? |
| c habitet monstrum in spelunca. | h victa sit Britannia a Romanis. |
| d quomodo tibi subvenirem? | i cur tot annos laborem? |
| e cur vobis faveamus? | j cui libros meos legem? |

7 Translate the following into English. The subjunctives are optative or potential.

e.g. *absit omen* → *may the (bad) omen be gone*

- | | |
|---|---|
| a vivat rex! | f cadeant inimici! |
| b cras velim te visitare. | g utinam flumen Caesar ne transiisset. |
| c floreat civitas! | h quis Catilinam crederet? |
| d heri Brutum ridentem videres. | i utinam Cato nunc viveret. |
| e nolim umbram in tenebris videre. | j malim equitare potius quam ambulare. |

8 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *let the contest be started* → *certamen excitetur*

- a Who would love the miser?
 - b Let us not walk to the shore.
 - c May you (s.) always sing beautifully.
 - d Do not let the old man hurt the horse.
 - e What should I say to the senator?
 - f Would that you (s.) had not killed the goose.
 - g Why would you (s.) have hidden the book?
 - h Let the general himself lead us.
 - i Let us depart from the forum.
 - j Granted that Caesar likes Antonius.
-

Points to remember

- 1 The present active subjunctive is formed by adding the letter **-e-** before the endings of the first conjugation and **-a-** before the endings of the other conjugations. The present passive subjunctive is formed as normal.
- 2 The imperfect active subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt** to the present active infinitive. The imperfect passive subjunctive is formed as normal.
- 3 The perfect active subjunctive is formed by adding **-erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint** to the perfect stem. The perfect passive subjunctive is formed from the perfect participle and the present subjunctive of the verb *to be*.
- 4 The pluperfect active subjunctive is formed by adding **-issem, -isses, -isset, -issemus, -issetis, -issent** to the perfect stem. The pluperfect passive subjunctive is formed from the perfect participle and the imperfect subjunctive of the verb *to be*.

- 5 The subjunctive is a mood used to express anticipated or conditional actions, as opposed to the indicative mood, which makes statements which deal more with certainty.
- 6 In English we express the subjunctive using auxiliary verbs, such as *may*, *might* or *would*, e.g. *May I see? Would I were elsewhere!*
- 7 The subjunctive doesn't often occur in main clauses and when it does, expresses what is desired or regarded as possible, e.g. *vivat rex! Long live the king!*
- 8 The following types of subjunctive are found in main clauses: jussive, hortative, concessive, deliberative, optative and potential.
- 9 In subordinate clauses the subjunctive is much more common and although it usually expresses a desire, wish or condition, it can also be used where we in English would simply use an indicative.
- 10 To express a negative desire with the subjunctive, the word **ne** is used, e.g. **ne dicatur** *Let it not be said.*

10

Verbal nouns and adjectives

In this chapter you should aim to

- **master the concept and use of the gerundive**
 - **understand the function of participles, gerunds and supines**
 - **learn the formation and recognize the endings of verbal nouns and adjectives**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

Participles

A Participles are the parts of a verb which are used like adjectives or nouns either to denote a state or condition, or to denote a person or thing in that state or condition (e.g. *undone, walking*). They have three tenses:

- ▶ The **present** and the **future**, which are **active**, i.e. the person or thing referred to by the participle is **performing** the action, e.g. *walking* (**present**); *about to go* (**future**).
- ▶ The **perfect**, which is **passive**, i.e. the person or thing referred to by the participle is **experiencing** the action, e.g. *loosened, having been loosened*.

B The **present participle** is formed by adding **-ns** on to the **present stem** of first and second conjugation verbs and **-ens** to the final consonant or the characteristic short *i* of the present stem of third conjugation verbs and to the characteristic long *ī* of the present stem of fourth conjugation verbs. The resulting word declines like the third declension adjective **ingens** (see Unit 5E),

e.g. portans portantis → *carrying*, habens habentis → *having*,
agens agentis → *doing*, capiens capientis → *taking* and audiens
audientis → *hearing*.

The **present participle** is used as in English as an adjective to describe someone or something performing an action **at that moment**. Because the present participle is an **active** form of the verb, it can take an object, e.g. **pueri onera *portantes* ad urbem currunt** → *the boys run to the city carrying loads*.

It is also used as a noun to refer to a person or thing doing something, e.g. **voces *clamantium* audivi** → *I heard the voices of the people shouting*.

C The **perfect participle** is formed from the **fourth principal part** of a verb. Either the **fourth principal part** will be the **supine** (see G) or it will be the **perfect participle** itself. If it is the **supine** then replace the final **-um** with **-us** and you have the **perfect participle**. It declines like the first and second declension adjective **bonus -a -um** (see Unit 5C), e.g. **portatus -a -um** → *carried, having been carried*; **habitus -a -um** → *had, having been had*; **actus -a -um** → *done, having been done*; **auditus -a -um** → *heard, having been heard*.

- ▶ The **perfect participle** is used as in English as an adjective to describe someone who or something which has experienced the action of the verb **and may still be doing so**, e.g. **flumen *inundatum* aspectabamus** → *we were gazing at the flooded river*.

It is also used as a noun to refer to something which has experienced the action of a verb, e.g. **captos per loca deserta ducebat** → *he led the captured men across the desert*.

D The **future participle** is formed by adding **-urus** to the stem of the **perfect participle** (above). The word declines like the first and second declension adjective **bonus -a -um** (see Unit 5C), e.g. **portaturus -a -um** → *about to carry*, **habiturus -a -um** → *about to have*, **acturus -a -um** → *about to do*, **auditurus -a -um** → *about to hear*.

- ▶ The **future participle** is used as an adjective to describe someone about to, on the point of doing or intending to do something. Because the future participle is an **active** form of the verb, it can take an object, e.g. **puer patrem salutaturus e horreo cucurrit** → *the boy ran out of the barn (intending) to greet his father.*

It is also used as a noun to refer to people who are about to do something, e.g. **ave Caesar! morituri te salutant** → *Hail Caesar! Those about to die salute you.*

The gerund

- E** The **gerund** is a **verbal noun** which exists only in the singular. It is active in meaning and therefore can sometimes take an object if it is from a transitive verb. It declines as a neuter second declension noun in **-um** (see Unit 3E) but without a nominative. It is formed by adding **-ndum** to the present stem of first and second conjugation verbs and **-endum** (or sometimes **-undum**) to the final consonant or the characteristic short **i** of the present stem of third conjugation verbs and to the characteristic long **i** of the present stem of fourth conjugation verbs.
- e.g. first conjugation **portandum** → (the act of) *carrying*
 second conjugation **habendum** → (the act of) *having*
 third conjugation: **agendum** (or **agundum**) → (the act of) *doing*
 fourth conjugation: **audiendum** (or **audiundum**) → (the act of) *hearing*.

F The **gerund** is used:

- ▶ In the accusative after **ad** (to express purpose) and sometimes after **ob** or **inter**, e.g. **Titus ad dormiendum domum venit** → *Titus comes home to sleep.*
- ▶ In the genitive after abstract nouns and adjectives which take the genitive, e.g. **amor bibendi** → *a love of drinking*; **cupida**

te videndi est → *she is desirous of seeing you* (i.e. she wants to see you).

- ▶ In the dative (rarely) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns implying help, fitness or use, e.g. **par est currendo** → *he is equal to running*.
- ▶ In the ablative, with or without a preposition to indicate cause or instrument (see Unit 4E13), e.g. **clarissime clamando eum servaverunt** → *they saved him by shouting very loudly*.

The supine

G The **supine** is a fourth declension verbal noun and is usually the **fourth principal part** (see Unit 1K4). It means the act of doing something and exists in two cases: accusative (ending in **-um**) and ablative (ending in **-u**).

H The supine is used:

- ▶ In the **accusative** after verbs of motion to express purpose, e.g. **ad fundum frumentum messum veniunt** → *they come to the farm (in order) to harvest the grain*.
- ▶ In the **accusative** to form the future passive infinitive (see Unit 11G).
- ▶ In the **ablative** after certain adjectives of perception like **facilis**, **mirabilis**, **crudelis**, **dulcis**, **miserabilis**, **turpis**, **terribilis** and after **fas** → *right* and **nefas** → *wrong*, where in English we would use a gerund or an infinitive, e.g. **mirabile visu** → *marvellous in the seeing* (or *wonderful to see*), **nefas dictu** → *wrong in the telling* (or *wrong to mention*) and **miserabile auditu** → *wretched in the hearing* (or *wretched to hear*).

The following common expressions use respectively a gerund and a supine: **modus operandi** *way of working* (**operandum**, from **operare**); **mirabile dictu** *wonderful to say* (**dictum**, from **dicere**).

The gerundive

- I** The **gerundive** is a **passive** verbal adjective which is formed by adding **-us -a -um** to the stem of the gerund (see E). The word declines in three genders like **bonus -a -um** (see Unit 5C) and must agree with whatever it refers to. It is a distinctly Latin form which is hard to parallel in English. It refers to someone or something which **ought to** experience the action of the verb.
- e.g. first conjugation portandus **-a -um** → he/she/that which is to be carried
second conjugation habendus **-a -um** → he/she/that which is to be had or held
third conjugation agendus **-a -um** → he/she/that which is to be done
fourth conjugation audiendus **-a -um** → he/she/that which is to be heard

(Sometimes the third and fourth conjugation gerundives end in the older form **-undus -a -um**.) The gerundive's basic use is as an adjective with the sense of what could or should happen, best translated as 'capable of being' or 'worthy of being' etc., e.g. *femina laudanda est* → *The woman is worthy to be praised (of being praised)*.

The names 'Amanda' and 'Miranda' are derived from gerundives: 'she who is to be loved' and 'she who is to be admired'.

J The gerundive of obligation

- ▶ This is used as an adjective with a forceful sense of necessity, conveying the idea of something which ought to be done, must be done or should be done, rather than simply what could be done or is worth being done, e.g. *res agendae* → *things which must be done*; *agri arandi* → *fields which must be ploughed*.

- ▶ The gerundive of obligation is used with the dative of agent by whom the thing must be done (see Unit 4D5), e.g. *milites, oppida capienda sunt vobis* → *soldiers, you must capture the towns* (literally: *the towns are to be captured by you*).

If there is another dative in the sentence, the ablative of agent or instrument may be used, e.g. *redemptio a patre mihi danda erat* → *the ransom had to be given to me by the father*.

- ▶ If the verb is intransitive or is being used intransitively, the nominative neuter singular of the gerundive is used with the verb 'to be' in an impersonal passive construction, e.g. *laborandum est nobis* → *we must work* (literally: *it is to be worked by us*); *Romam nobis eundum est* → *we must go to Rome* (literally: *it is to be gone to Rome by us*).
- ▶ After the verbs *do* → *I give*, *curo* → *I arrange*, *trado* → *I entrust* and *mitto* → *I send*, the gerundive is used in agreement with the object to show that something is caused to be done, e.g. *theatrum consules faciendum curaverunt* → *the consuls caused a theatre to be built*.

K The gerundive of purpose

- ▶ This is used in the accusative after the preposition *ad* to express purpose, e.g. *ad foedus renovandum convenerunt* → *they met to renew the treaty* (literally: *for the treaty which had to be renewed*).
- ▶ The gerundive of purpose is sometimes found in the genitive followed either by *gratia* or *causa* → *for the sake of*, e.g. *Cicero revenit urbis servandae causa* → *Cicero returned for the sake of saving the city* (literally: *for the sake of the city which had to be saved*).
- ▶ The gerundive of purpose can also be used in the dative, e.g. *diem constituit liti audiendae* → *he established a day for the lawsuit to be heard* (literally: *for the lawsuit which had to be heard*).

1 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *dormientem hospitem caupo necavit* → *the innkeeper slew the guest as he slept*

- a agricolae frumentum in agris demetentes cantabant.
- b animalia per flumen salientia crocodili petebant.
- c puerum ad portas currentem video.
- d alas pueri volantis sol liquefecit.
- e clamores diem festum celebrantium audivimus.
- f trans flumen fremens caute vadebamus.
- g civibus dubitantibus orator persuasit.
- h matri convalescenti dona misi.
- i feles murem in herba latentem spectabat.
- j peregrinatores urbi appropinquantes salutavimus.

2 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *placentas incensas coquus celavit* → *the cook hid the burnt cakes*

- a rotam fractam fabri reficiebant.
- b milites victi ad castra cucurrerunt.
- c nuntium exspectatum tandem audivimus.
- d ossa in ruinis templi deleti inveni.
- e orator pro civibus fraudatis eloquenter dixit.
- f exploratores, a custodibus visi, statim diffugerunt.
- g meam puellam amatam saepe visito.
- h effigiem deae ornatam sacerdotes portabant.
- i nitorem lapidum expolitorum puer amat.
- j verba in libro scripta pulcherrima erant.

3 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *hic iacet Arturus; rex quondam rexque futurus* → *here lies Arthur; once and future king*

- a puerum in lutum salturum castigavi.
- b filius militi patrem necaturo obstitit.
- c vas casurum cepi.

- d** tempestatem venturam timemus.
- e** pontem transituri, ex equis descenderunt.
- f** gladiatores pugnatos acriter plauserunt.
- g** matronae ad forum ambulabant, stolas empturae.
- h** haec est lyra poetae canturi.
- i** prae oratore dicturo stabamus.
- j** voces adventurorum audio.

4 Write out the gerunds or supines of the following verbs.

e.g. the gerund of *facio* → *faciendum*

- a** the supine of *sedeo*
- b** the gerund of *effugio*
- c** the gerund of *excuso*
- d** the supine of *intexo*
- e** the gerund of *spero*
- f** the supine of *adduco*
- g** the gerund of *valeo*
- h** the supine of *sopio*
- i** the gerund of *perdomo*
- j** the supine of *statuo*

5 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *milites ad pugnandum exercent* → *the soldiers are training to fight*

- a** *nautae navem ad navigandum parabant.*
- b** *Quintilianus artem dicendi docebat.*
- c** *ludos edendo imperator cives delectabat.*
- d** *Fabius cunctando rem publicam servabat.*
- e** *fugitivi ob pugnando ad arcem non pervenerunt.*
- f** *Icarus timorem volandi non cepit.*
- g** *Claudius in triclinium ad cenandum intravit.*
- h** *princeps non est aptus regnando.*
- i** *fabri strenue laborando templum perfecerant.*
- j** *verba oratoris inter clamandum non audivimus.*

6 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *caedes terribilis visu erat* → *the slaughter was terrible to see*

- a pueri in flumen natatum desiluerunt.
- b fabula mirabilis dictu erat.
- c puellae in agros lusum cucurrerunt.
- d eques in templum vigilatum venit.
- e rex minas auditu crudeles emisit.
- f milites hibernatum ad oppidum iter fecerunt.
- g res facilis actu erit.
- h solus per silvam tacitum ambulavi.
- i arcanum nefas est patefactu.
- j arca difficilis apertu erat.

7 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *the tribune hurried to intervene* → *tribunus intercessum festinavit*

- a The slave won his freedom by saving his master.
- b Our love of sailing is very great.
- c The bird's song was sweet to hear.
- d By hurrying quickly we arrived at the inn.
- e It is right to tell.
- f The Romans overcame the Gauls by fighting bravely.
- g Julius delights his mother by singing.
- h The monster's skin was foul to touch.
- i The punishment of Mettus was terrible to see.
- j Turnus rushed in to attack.

8 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *imperatori timendo miles appropinquat* → *the soldier approaches the fearsome general*

- a Cato candidatus eligendus erat.
- b uxor mea vere amanda est.
- c verba oratoris audienda sunt.
- d Brutus vir laudandus apud Romanos erat.
- e multas gemmas habendas congerebam.

- f** musca minima non videnda est.
- g** ludos spectandos consules ediderunt.
- h** equos quosdam emendos heri vidi.
- i** nodus ingens non solvendus erat.
- j** coquus optimus cenam edendam parabat.

9 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain gerundives of obligation.

e.g. *imperator vias faciendas curavit* → *the emperor caused roads to be built*

- a** argumentum quod erat demonstrandum praebui.
- b** nunc vobis tacendum est.
- c** Carthago delenda est.
- d** Tarpeiam puniendam cives de saxo deiecerunt.
- e** cavendum est tibi.
- f** parentes semper nobis honorandi sunt.
- g** Claudius aquaeductum faciendum curavit.
- h** hostes nobis non timendi sunt.
- i** nihil dixi de consilio celando.
- j** nunc est bibendum.

10 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain gerundives of purpose.

e.g. *ad aurum petendum in sepulcrum intraverunt* → *they entered the tomb to look for gold*

- a** ad magistratus eligendos cives in foro congregabant.
- b** rhetorem Graecum ad filium educandum comparavi.
- c** pueri in tecta ascenderunt pompae videndae causa.
- d** Plinius otium quaerebat librorum scribendorum gratia.
- e** venatores in montes ad feras capiendas iter fecerunt.
- f** athleta celerimme cucurrit ad praemium petendum.
- g** Sulla dictaturam deposuit legum servandarum causa.
- h** donum misimus matri delectandae.
- i** Spartacus rebellavit servorum liberandorum causa.
- j** artifex diligenter ad statuam pulchram faciendam laborabat.

Points to remember

- 1 Participles denote a state or condition. They are verbal adjectives which describe what something *is doing*, rather than what something looks like.
- 2 Present participles are always active (even in deponent verbs) and are declined like the adjective **ingens -entis** (*huge*).
- 3 Perfect participles are normally passive, but are active in deponent verbs. They are formed from the fourth principal part of a verb, end in **-us-a-um**, and decline like **bonus-a-um** (*good*).
- 4 Future participles are always active (even in deponent verbs), end in **-urus-a-um**, and decline like **bonus-a-um** (*good*).
- 5 Like adjectives and pronouns, participles can be used as nouns, e.g. **morituri te salutant** (*those about to die salute you*).
- 6 The gerund is a second declension neuter verbal noun ending in **-ndum**, active in meaning, existing only in the singular. It denotes the act of doing something.
- 7 The supine is a fourth declension verbal noun which is usually the fourth principal part of a verb. It exists only in the accusative and ablative singular and, like the gerund, denotes the act of doing something.
- 8 The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective ending in **-ndus-a-um** which declines like **bonus-a-um** (*good*) and has no equivalent in English. It denotes something which *ought* to experience the action of a verb, e.g. **miranda est Cloelia** (*Cloelia is worthy of admiration*).
- 9 The gerundive of obligation expresses a forceful sense of necessity. The dative of the person by whom the action should be performed is used, e.g. **effugiendum est nobis** (*We must escape*).
- 10 The gerundive of purpose is used in the accusative after **ad** to express intent, e.g. **ad pacem petendam advenit** (*He arrived to seek peace*).

Infinitives and imperatives

In this chapter you should aim to

- *understand the function of the infinitive and imperative in Latin*
- *learn the formation and recognize the endings of the infinitive and imperative*
- *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*

Infinitives: formation

A The infinitives are those parts of the verb which in English have the word *to* in front of them. They have active and passive voices and present, future and perfect tenses. They express a verbal idea generally, without being limited to a person or number (i.e. not finite).

In Latin, as in English, there are several infinitives: ‘to bite, to have bitten, to be bitten, to have been bitten’. As ever, these various English forms are conveyed by endings of the verb in Latin.

B In Latin the **second principal part** of a verb is its **present active infinitive** (Units 1K2 and 2C). The **present active infinitives** end in **-re**.

- e.g. first conjugation **-are**, e.g. **portare** → *to carry, to be carrying*
- second conjugation **-ēre**, e.g. **habēre** → *to have, etc.*
- third conjugation **-ere**, e.g. **agere** → *to do, etc.*
- fourth conjugation **-ire**, e.g. **audire** → *to hear, etc.*

C The **present passive infinitives** are similar to the present active but all end in **-i / -ri**.

e.g. first conjugation **-ari**, e.g. **portari** → *to be carried*

second conjugation **-eri**, e.g. **haberi** → *to be had*

third conjugation **-i**, e.g. **agi** → *to be done*

fourth conjugation **-iri**, e.g. **audiri** → *to be heard*

D The **perfect active infinitives** are formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem (found in the **third principal part** (see Units 1K3 and 2M)).

e.g. first conjugation **portavisse** → *to have carried* (a syncopated form **portasse** is sometimes found)

second conjugation **habuisse** → *to have had*

third conjugation **egisse** → *to have done*

fourth conjugation **audivisse** → *to have heard* (a syncopated form **audisse** is sometimes found)

E The **perfect passive infinitives** are formed using the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 10C) and the present infinitive of the verb to be (**esse**).

e.g. first conjugation **portatus esse** → *to have been carried*

second conjugation **habitus esse** → *to have been had*

third conjugation **actus esse** → *to have been done*

fourth conjugation **auditus esse** → *to have been heard*

NB The participle must always agree in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

F The **future active infinitives** are formed from the **future participle** (see Unit 10D) and the present infinitive of the verb to be (**esse**).

e.g. first conjugation **portaturus esse** → *to be about to carry, to be on the point of carrying*

second conjugation **habiturus esse** → *to be about to have, etc.*

third conjugation **acturus esse** → *to be about to do, etc.*

fourth conjugation **auditurus esse** → *to be about to hear, etc.*

NB The participle must always agree in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

- G** The **future passive infinitives** are formed from the **fourth principal part** (the supine: see Units 1K4 and 10G) and the present passive infinitive of to go (**iri**).
- e.g. first conjugation **portatum iri** → *to be about to be carried, to be on the point of being carried*
second conjugation **habitum iri** → *to be about to be had, etc.*
third conjugation **actum iri** → *to be about to be done, etc.*
fourth conjugation **auditum iri** → *to be about to be heard, etc.*
-

Infinitives: usage

- H** The **prolative infinitive** is used as in English; to carry on the construction:

- ▶ After verbs of possibility, habit or duty such as: **possum** → *I am able* (irregular: see Unit 12R), **queo** → *I am able*, **nequeo** → *I am unable*, **debeo** → *I ought* and **soleo** → *I am accustomed* (semi-deponent: see Unit 8N), e.g. **non possum intellegere** → *I am not able to understand*.
- ▶ After verbs of wishing, intending or daring such as: **volo** → *I want*, **nolo** → *I do not want*, **malo** → *I prefer* (irregular: see Unit 12S–U), **cupio** → *I desire*, **opto** → *I choose*, **statuo** → *I determine*, **constituo** → *I decide* and **audeo** → *I dare* (semi-deponent: see Unit 8N), e.g. **malo equitare** → *I prefer to ride*.
- ▶ After verbs of beginning, ceasing, trying, continuing, hurrying and hesitating such as: **incipio** → *I begin*, **coepi** → *I have begun*, **desino** → *I cease from*, **desisto** → *I cease from*, **conor** → *I try* (deponent verb: see Unit 8J and L), **pergo** → *I continue*, **persevero** → *I persist*, **festino** → *I hurry*, **propero** → *I hasten*, **dubito** → *I hesitate* and **timeo** → *I fear*, e.g. **desino pugnare** → *I cease to fight*.
- ▶ After verbs of knowing how to, learning and teaching such as: **scio** → *I know how to*, **disco** → *I learn* and **doceo** → *I teach*, e.g. **disco equitare** → *I am learning to ride*.
- ▶ After passive verbs of saying and thinking, e.g. **Caesar dicitur advenisse** → *Caesar is said to have arrived*.

- I** The **historic infinitive** is the **present infinitive** when it is used to make something which happened in the past seem more vivid, e.g. **pueri clamare, currere, cadere** → *the boys shouted, ran and fell*.
- J** The infinitive is also used after verbs of commanding:
- ▶ After **iubeo** → *I order* and **veto** → *I forbid* in indirect commands (see Unit 15P), e.g. **veto te currere** → *I forbid you to run*.
 - ▶ After the irregular negative imperative **noli** (*s.*), **nolite** (*pl.*) → *do not*, in **direct commands** (see Q), e.g. **nolite pugnare, pueri** → *do not fight, boys*.
- K** The infinitive is tantamount to a noun in constructions after **impersonal verbs** such as **placet** → *it pleases*, **licet** → *it is allowed* (see also Unit 12) and with impersonal phrases such as **difficile est** → *it is difficult*, **decorum est** → *it is seemly*, **iuvat** → *it helps*, etc., e.g. **forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit** (Virgil) → *one day perhaps it will help to have remembered even these (troubles)*.
- L** For the infinitive depending upon an accusative in an **indirect statement**, see Unit 15A–K.
-

Imperatives

- M** The **imperative mood** is used to give **direct commands** and **requests** in Latin as in English. It is a finite form of the verb existing in one tense (present), in the 2nd and 3rd persons, singular and plural and in both the active and passive voices. Imperatives do not always appear at the ends of clauses and sentences.
- N** The 2nd person imperative endings are formed as follows:

| | Active Singular Plural | Passive Singular Plural |
|-----------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1st conjugation | porta portate → carry! | portare portamini → be carried! |
| 2nd conjugation | habe habete → hold (have)! | habere habemini → be held! |
| 3rd conjugation | age agite → do! | agere agimini → be done! |
| 4th conjugation | audi audite → hear! | audire audimini → be heard! |

- ▶ Common irregular imperatives are: **dic** → *say, tell!* from **dico**; **duc** → *lead!* from **duco**; **fer** (*s.*), **ferite** (*pl.*) → *carry!, bring!*, from **fero** (see Unit 12Y); **fac** → *make!* from **facio**; **i** → *go!* from **eo** (see Unit 12X) and **es, este** → *be!* from **sum** (see Unit 12P).

Here's a way to remember some of the irregular imperatives: '**Dic** says it's a **fac** that a **duc** has **fer!**'

- There is another form of the imperative found in both the 2nd and 3rd persons. Its endings are **-to** (2nd person), **-tote** (3rd person singular) or **-nto** (3rd person plural). These are rarely used outside legal documents and in certain verbs like **esto** → *let him/her/it be* and **sunto** → *let them be*, from **sum** or **memento, mementote** → *remember*, from **memini** (see Unit 12K).

P Direct commands

- ▶ In addition to the plain imperative, a direct command can also be expressed with the imperatives **fac, facite** or **cura, curate** → *take care that I see to it that* and a subjunctive verb, e.g. **omnes, curate pontem defendeatis** → *everyone, take care that you defend the bridge*.
- ▶ For polite commands the **future indicative** may be used, often followed by a **subjunctive verb**, e.g. **facies ut donum mittatur** → *please see to it that the gift is sent*.

Q Negative direct commands (prohibitions)

- ▶ The imperatives of the irregular verb **nolo** → *I am unwilling*, followed by an infinitive are used for negative direct commands (see J), e.g. **noli** (or **nolite**) **discedere** → *do not leave*.
- ▶ **cave ne** → *beware of*, **fac ne** → *see that you do not*, or simply **ne** → *do not*, followed by the subjunctive are also used to express prohibitions, e.g. **cave ne me vexas** → *beware of annoying me*.
- ▶ **ne** followed by the imperative is used in poetry, e.g. **equo ne credite**, **Teucri** → *do not trust the horse, Trojans*.

R The imperative is used for the greetings **salve**, **salvete** → *hello*; **vale**, **valet** → *goodbye*; **ave**, **avete** → *hello* or *goodbye*. Compare **apage** → *away with you!* and **age**, **agite** → *come on!*

1 Write down the active infinitives of the following verbs.

e.g. the perfect active infinitive of **rego** → *rexisse*

- a** the present active infinitive of **venio**
- b** the perfect active infinitive of **amo**
- c** the future active infinitive of **ambulo**
- d** the present active infinitive of **teneo**
- e** the perfect active infinitive of **sedeo**
- f** the perfect active infinitive of **capio**
- g** the future active infinitive of **doceo**
- h** the future active infinitive of **aperio**
- i** the present active infinitive of **frango**
- j** the perfect active infinitive of **facio**

2 Write down the passive infinitives of the following verbs.

e.g. the present passive infinitive of **do** → *dari*

- a** the future passive infinitive of **trado**
- b** the perfect passive infinitive of **sperno**
- c** the perfect passive infinitive of **iacio**
- d** the present passive infinitive of **moveo**
- e** the future passive infinitive of **rogo**

- f** the present passive infinitive of **scribo**
- g** the perfect passive infinitive of **video**
- h** the future passive infinitive of **vinco**
- i** the perfect passive infinitive of **vincio**
- j** the present passive infinitive of **cresco**

3 Translate the following infinitives into English.

e.g. *redditurus esse* → *to be about to give back*

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| a cecidisse | f dictum iri |
| b sepultum iri | g respondere |
| c puniturus esse | h laboraturus esse |
| d lavari | i aedificatus esse |
| e iussisse | j mitti |

4 Translate the following infinitives into Latin.

e.g. *to have broken* → *fregisse*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a to remain | f to be about to fly |
| b to be recognized | g to be found |
| c to have been chosen | h to have laughed |
| d to be about to be closed | i to have been stretched |
| e to have dragged | j to run |

5 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *nequivimus portam claudere* → *we were unable to shut the gate*

- a** Latinam linguam intellegere possum.
- b** Caesar inimicis ignoscere solebat.
- c** aviam tuam visitavisse debes.
- d** malo in Gallia habitare.
- e** volo prae hospitibus canere.
- f** caudices omina praetermittere optaverunt.
- g** iuvenis Metellam in matrimonium ducere cupivit.
- h** imperator amphitheatrum aedificare constituit.
- i** non audeo leonem provocare.
- j** nolo in agris dormire.

6 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *dubitamus sapienti contradicere* → *we hesitate to contradict a wise man*

- a perseverabimus terram idoneam quaerere.
- b subito canes latrare inceperunt.
- c festinamus matrem salutare.
- d dubitavisti aquam fundere.
- e pueri timebant lupis appropinquare.
- f spem habere numquam desinam.
- g liberi timent domo discedere.
- h legati properabunt bello finem facere.
- i Cicero pergebat Catilinam vituperare.
- j quando desistes servos exagitare?

7 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *hostes per portas irruere* → *the enemy forced their way in through the gates*

- a nemo sciebat illud nodum expedire.
- b centurio iuvenes docebit milites esse.
- c numquam discam tibiis canere.
- d Brutus se necavisse traditur.
- e coniuratores Caesarem corripere, ferire, occidere.
- f senatores Romulum dilaniavisse narrantur.
- g omnes araneae muscas decipere sciunt.
- h pistores vicinos veneno necavisse putabantur.
- i magister discipulos pacem amare docebat.
- j Nero matrem necavisse dicitur.

8 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *I want to play in the mud* → *volo in luto ludere*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| a We ought to support the candidate. | f He knows how to fight. |
| b I prefer to sleep. | g I will teach you to write. |
| c We are learning to swim. | h You (pl.) persist in shouting. |
| d You (s.) will cease to shout. | i I dare to resist the Romans. |
| e They have decided to depart. | j We desire to see the statue of the god. |

9 Write out the imperatives of the following verbs.

e.g. the passive imperatives of *teneo* → *tenere, tenemini*

- a the passive imperatives of *rego*
- b the active imperatives of *parco*
- c the passive imperatives of *lenio*
- d the active imperatives of *amo*
- e the passive imperatives of *agnosco*
- f the passive imperatives of *aperio*
- g the active imperatives of *respondeo*
- h the active imperatives of *vincio*
- i the passive imperatives of *persuadeo*
- j the active imperatives of *rapio*

10 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *semper bonis fidite, liberi* → *always trust good men, children*

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| a cives, monemini a me. | f ambulate mecum ad forum, senatores. |
| b carpe diem. | g da mihi lucernam, Aladdin! |
| c ferte haec onera ad portum. | h aut disce aut discede. |
| d salvete discipuli. salve magister. | i pax esto in mundo. |
| e accipe hoc donum pro fautoribus tuis. | j ave atque vale, amice. |

11 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *noli ab urbe discedere ante noctem* → *do not leave the city before nightfall*

- a nolite id facere, pueri.
- b nolite canes dormientes suscitare.
- c matronae, nolite alibi vestimenta emere.
- d noli sollicitari; gaude.
- e ne fraudamini a tabernariis, iuvenes.
- f noli tenebras timere, mi fili.
- g noli ullum maius quam caput tuum consumere.
- h noli calceis meis caeruleis de pelle suilla fabricatis insistere.
- i nolite lilia inaurare.
- j nolite in pratulum ambulare.

12 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *listen to the speaker's words, everyone* → *omnes, verba oratoris audite*

- a** Citizens, do not punish the priests.
 - b** Children, be brave.
 - c** Away with you, Titus! Nobody believes you.
 - d** Hand me the salt, Sextus.
 - e** Boys, do not mock my little horse.
 - f** Do not ignore the oracles, Caesar.
 - g** Welcome the guests, master.
 - h** Push that rock more quickly, Sisyphus!
 - i** Lead the gladiators into the arena, Maximus.
 - j** Hide your gold in the bedroom, Quintus.
-

Points to remember

- 1** The present infinitive active is the second principal part of a verb.
- 2** The present infinitive passive endings for the four conjugations are: **-ari** (*first*), **-eri** (*second*), **-i** (*third*) and **-iri** (*fourth*).
- 3** The perfect infinitive active is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem of the verb.
- 4** The perfect infinitive passive is formed using the perfect passive participle and **esse**, the present infinitive of the verb *to be*.
- 5** The future infinitive active is formed from the future participle and **esse**, the present infinitive of the verb *to be*.
- 6** The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine and **iri**, the present passive infinitive of the verb *to go*.

- 7 Infinitives in Latin are used after verbs very much as they are in English, e.g. **volo currere** (*I want to run*).
- 8 The imperative mood is used to give direct commands. Common irregular singular forms are **dic** (*tell*), **duc** (*lead*), **fer** (*bring*) and **fac** (*do*).
- 9 Older forms of the second and third person imperatives, though rare, do occur in legal language.
- 10 To give a negative direct command, Latin uses the imperatives **noli** or **nolite** (*be unwilling*) plus the infinitive, e.g. **nolite cedere** (*do not yield*).

12

Impersonal, defective and irregular verbs

In this chapter you should aim to

- *learn the formation and recognize the endings of impersonal, defective and irregular verbs*
 - *gain an extensive vocabulary of these verbs*
 - *attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter*
-

Impersonal verbs

Impersonal verbs do not have a personal subject and usually have only a 3rd person singular in each tense, an infinitive and a gerund. As in English their subject is the pronoun 'it', e.g. It is raining. The most common impersonal constructions are as follows.

- A** Some are used alone to express changes of weather or time, e.g. **fulgurat** → *it lightens*, **ningit** → *it snows*, **pluit** → *it rains*, **tonat** → *it thunders*, **lucescit** → *it dawns*, **vesperascit** → *it grows late*.
- B** Some are followed by the accusative of person and the infinitive of action, e.g. **decet** → *it is becoming*, **dedecet** → *it is unbecoming*, **iuvat** → *it delights*, **fallit** → *it escapes one's notice*, **fugit** → *it escapes one's notice*, **praeterit** → *it passes one by*, **oportet** → *it behoves one (one ought, should)*, e.g. **dedecet vos pugnare** → *it is unbecoming for you to fight*.
- C** Some take a dative (sometimes with an infinitive), e.g. **libet** → *it pleases*, **licet** → *it is allowed*, **liquet** → *it is clear*, **contingit** → *it*

befalls, convenit → *it suits*, *evenit* → *it turns out*, *expedit* → *it is expedient*, *placet* → *it pleases, it seems good*, *videtur* → *it seems (good), it is decided*, e.g. *licet nobis discedere* → *we are allowed to leave (it is permitted for us to leave)*.

- D** Some take accusative of the person and genitive of cause or infinitive of action, e.g. *miseret* → *it moves to pity* (and *miseritum est*), *piget* → *it vexes* (and *pigitum est*), *paenitet* → *it repents*, *pudet* → *it shames* (and *puditum est*), *taedet* → *it wearies* (and *pertaesum est*), e.g. *paenitet me erroris* → *I repent of my mistake (it makes me repent of my mistake)*.
- E** Some are followed by *ad* plus the accusative, for example *pertinet* → *it concerns*, *attinet* → *it concerns, it belongs*, e.g. *nihil ad me attinet* → *it concerns me in no respect*.
- F** The verb *refert* → *it concerns, it matters* is used with the feminine singular ablative of the possessive pronouns *mea, tua* etc. (see Unit 7C), which is to be imagined as agreeing with the ablative singular *re* → *thing*, contained in the verb *refert*. So *mea refert* → *it bears on my business*. By some oddity, the verb *interest* → *it concerns, it is of importance*, takes the same construction. These verbs are usually followed by an accusative and infinitive, although *interest* also takes the genitive of the person concerned in the case of nouns and 3rd person pronouns, e.g. *mea refert vos effugere* → *it concerns me that you escape*.
- G** *est* → *it is* can be used in an impersonal sense with adjectives and an infinitive, e.g. *difficile est montem ascendere* → *it is difficult to climb the mountain*. *opus est* → *there is need of* takes the dative of person in need and ablative of what is needed, e.g. *opus est mihi trabe* → *I need a plank (there is need to me of a plank)*.
- H** The verbs *potest* → *it is possible*, *coepit* → *it has begun*, *solet* → *it is customary*, *debet* → *it ought* and *desinet* → *it stops* are also used with an infinitive, e.g. *potest pontem transire* → *it is possible to cross the bridge*.

I Some other verbs also have a special impersonal meaning in their 3rd person, e.g. **accedit** → *it is added*, **accidit** → *it happens*, **apparet** → *it is obvious*, **constat** → *it is agreed*, **delectat** → *it charms* and **restat** → *it remains*.

J The existence of the passive of intransitive verbs seems illogical in English as intransitive verbs do not take a direct object. However, in Latin passive intransitive verbs can be used in the 3rd person singular in an impersonal construction, e.g. **Romam a Bruto ventum est** → (literally) *it was come to Rome by Brutus*. We cannot, of course, translate this literally into English and so we say ‘*Brutus came to Rome*’. In the Latin the subject of the intransitive verb (Brutus) has become the agent.

Compare this with **pugnatum est in foro** → (literally) *it was fought in the forum*, i.e. *there was a fight in the forum*. In this sentence the subject is omitted altogether.

Likewise, **ventum est in forum** → (literally) *it was come into the forum*, must be translated *we* (or *they* etc.) *came into the forum*. We find this construction with verbs taking the dative (see Unit 4D1), e.g. **ab oratore persuadetur omnibus civibus** → *the speaker persuades all the citizens* (literally: *it is persuaded to all citizens by the speaker*).

Intransitive verbs which take an ablative are all deponent and their gerundives are used impersonally, e.g. **omnibus voluptatibus fruendum est** → *one should enjoy all pleasures* (literally: *enjoyment should be taken of all pleasures*).

Defective verbs

Defective verbs are those from which some forms are absent.

K **odi odisse** → *I hate* and **memini meminisse** → *I remember* have no present, future or imperfect.

► Indicative perfect (present in meaning)

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| 1st person singular | odi → I hate | memini → I remember |
| 2nd person singular | odisti | meministi |
| 3rd person singular | odit | meminit |
| 1st person plural | odimus | meminimus |
| 2nd person plural | odistis | meministis |
| 3rd person plural | oderunt | meminerunt |

► Indicative pluperfect (imperfect in meaning)

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1st person singular | oderam → I hated | memineram → I remembered |
| 2nd person singular | oderas | memineras |
| 3rd person singular | oderat | meminerat |
| 1st person plural | oderamus | memineramus |
| 2nd person plural | oderatis | memineratis |
| 3rd person plural | oderant | meminerant |

► Indicative future perfect (future in meaning)

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | odero → I shall hate | meminero → I shall remember |
| 2nd person singular | oderis | memineris |
| 3rd person singular | oderit | meminerit |
| 1st person plural | oderimus | meminerimus |
| 2nd person plural | oderitis | memineritis |
| 3rd person plural | oderint | meminerint |

► Subjunctive perfect

| | | |
|---------------------|----------|-------------|
| 1st person singular | oderim | meminerim |
| 2nd person singular | oderis | memineris |
| 3rd person singular | oderit | meminerit |
| 1st person plural | oderimus | meminerimus |
| 2nd person plural | oderitis | memineritis |
| 3rd person plural | oderint | meminerint |

► Subjunctive pluperfect

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1st person singular | odissem | meminissem |
| 2nd person singular | odisses | meminisses |
| 3rd person singular | odisset | meminisset |
| 1st person plural | odissemus | meminissetus |
| 2nd person plural | odissetis | meminissetis |
| 3rd person plural | odissent | meminissent |

- ▶ Perfect infinitive: **odisse** → *to hate*; perfect participle: **osus -a -um** → *hating* (active); future participle: **osurus -a -um** → *about to hate*; no imperative
- ▶ Perfect infinitive: **meminisse** → *to remember*; perfect participle: —; future participle: —; imperative: **memento** (s.) **mementote** (pl.) → *remember*

L coepi coepisse → *I have begun* has no present, future or imperfect.

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| ▶ Indicative | Perfect | Pluperfect |
| 1st person singular | coepi → I have begun | coeperam → I had begun |
| 2nd person singular | coepisti | coeperas |
| 3rd person singular | coepit | coeperat |
| 1st person plural | coepimus | coeperamus |
| 2nd person plural | coepistis | coeperatis |
| 3rd person plural | coeperunt | coeperant |
| ▶ Indicative | Future perfect | |
| 1st person singular | coepero → I shall have begun | |
| 2nd person singular | coeperis | |
| 3rd person singular | coeperit | |
| 1st person plural | coeperimus | |
| 2nd person plural | coeperitis | |
| 3rd person plural | coeperint | |
| ▶ Subjunctive | Perfect | Pluperfect |
| 1st person singular | coeperim | coepissem |
| 2nd person singular | coeperis | coepisses |
| 3rd person singular | coeperit | coepisset |
| 1st person plural | coeperimus | coepissemus |
| 2nd person plural | coeperitis | coepissetis |
| 3rd person plural | coeperint | coepissent |

- ▶ Perfect infinitive: **coepisse** → *to have begun*; perfect participle: **coeptus -a -um** → *begun*; future participle: **coepturus -a -um** → *about to begin*

M **aio** → *say*, **inquam** → *say* and **for fari fatus sum** (deponent) → *speak* have few forms.

- ▶ **aio**: present indicative: *aio, ais, ait*, — — *aiunt*; imperfect: *aiebam, aiebas, aiebat, aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant*; present subjunctive: *aiat, aiant*; participle: *aiens, aientis*
- ▶ **inquam**: present: *inquam, inquis, inquit, inquam, inquitis, inquam, inquitis*; imperfect: — — *inquebat, — — inquebant*; future: — *inquies, inquiet*; perfect: — *inquisti, inquit*; imperative: *inque, inquito*
- ▶ **for**: present: *fatur*; future: *fabor, fabitur*; imperative: *fare*; present participle: *fantem* (acc.); perfect participle: *fatus*; gerund: *fandi, fando*; gerundive: *fandus -a -um*

N The verbs **nosco noscere novi notum** and its compound **cognosco cognoscere cognovi cognitum** both mean ‘get to know’. Like **odi** and **memini** their perfect tenses have a present meaning. So **novi** → *I have got to know* and, therefore, *I know*; **novero** → *I shall know*; **noveram** (often syncopated to **noram**) → *I knew*; **novisse** (or **nosse**) → *to know*; **notus** → *known*.

O **queo quire quivi quitum** → *I am able* and **nequeo** → *I am unable* are defective and, where tenses exist, conjugate like compounds of **eo** (see X): *queo, quis, quit, quimus, quitis, queunt*. (As does the verb **veneo venire venii venitum** → *be sold, be on sale*, which has an active form but a passive meaning.)

Irregular verbs

Unfortunately, the most commonly used verbs tend to be the most irregular – in English as well as in Latin! Consider the irregular verbs ‘to be’ and ‘to go’ and compare them with a regular verb such as ‘to walk’:

| | | | |
|---------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|
| to be | am, is, are | was, were | have been |
| to go | go, goes, go | went | have gone |
| to walk | walk, walks, walk | walked | have walked |

P The finite indicative tenses of the irregular verb **sum esse fui** → *to be*, are given at Unit 2X. The other forms are as follows:

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | sim | essem |
| 2nd person singular | sis | esses |
| 3rd person singular | sit | esset |
| 1st person plural | simus | essemus |
| 2nd person plural | sitis | essetis |
| 3rd person plural | sint | essent |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | fuerim | fuissem |
| 2nd person singular | fueris | fuissets |
| 3rd person singular | fuerit | fuisset |
| 1st person plural | fuerimus | fuissemus |
| 2nd person plural | fueritis | fuissetis |
| 3rd person plural | fuerint | fuisissent |

Alternative forms exist in the present subjunctive:

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | siem or fuam |
| 2nd person singular | sies or fuas |
| 3rd person singular | siet or fuat |
| 1st person plural | — |
| 2nd person plural | — |
| 3rd person plural | sient or fuant |

and in the imperfect subjunctive:

| | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | forem |
| 2nd person singular | fores |
| 3rd person singular | foret |
| 1st person plural | — |
| 2nd person plural | — |
| 3rd person plural | forent |

Imperative: 2nd person: **es** or **esto** (s.) **este** or **estote** (pl.);
 3rd person: **esto** (s.) **sunto** (pl.)
 Infinitives: present: **esse**; perfect: **fuisse**; future: **futurus esse** or **fore**.
 Participles: future: **futurus -a -um** (no present or perfect).
 No gerund or supine.

Q The compounds of **sum** conjugate as it does:

absum → *I am absent*, **adsum** → *I am present*, **desum** → *I am wanting*, **insum** → *I am in*, **intersum** → *I am among*, **obsum** → *I hinder*, **praesum** → *I am in charge of*, **prosum** → *I am of use*, **subsum** → *I am under* and **supersum** → *I survive*.

In **prosum** the letter **d** appears between the **o** and **e**, as in **prodestis**.

These compounds have active participles like **praesens** → *in charge*, **absens** → *absent*.

R **possum posse potui** → *I can* is a shortened compound of **potens sum** → *I am able*. This verb takes the prolative infinitive (see Unit 11H).

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | possum | potero |
| 2nd person singular | potes | poteris |
| 3rd person singular | potest | poterit |
| 1st person plural | possumus | poterimus |
| 2nd person plural | potestis | poteritis |
| 3rd person plural | possunt | poterunt |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> | <i>Perfect</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | poteram | potui |
| 2nd person singular | poteras | potuisti |
| 3rd person singular | poterat | potuit |
| 1st person plural | poteramus | potuimus |
| 2nd person plural | poteratis | potuistis |
| 3rd person plural | poterant | potuerunt |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | potuero | potueram |
| 2nd person singular | potueris | potueras |
| 3rd person singular | potuerit | potuerat |
| 1st person plural | potuerimus | potueramus |
| 2nd person plural | potueritis | potueratis |
| 3rd person plural | potuerint | potuerant |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | possim | possem |
| 2nd person singular | possis | posses |
| 3rd person singular | possit | posset |
| 1st person plural | possimus | possemus |
| 2nd person plural | possitis | possetis |
| 3rd person plural | possint | possent |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | potuerim | potuissem |
| 2nd person singular | potueris | potuisses |
| 3rd person singular | potuerit | potuisset |
| 1st person plural | potuerimus | potuissemus |
| 2nd person plural | potueritis | potuissetis |
| 3rd person plural | potuerint | potuisissent |

Infinitives: present: **posse**; perfect: **potuisse**. The participle **potens** is used only as an adjective and there are no imperatives, gerund, gerundive or supine.

S volo velle volui → *wish, want*. This verb takes the prolative infinitive (see Unit 11H).

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | volo | volam |
| 2nd person singular | vis | voles |
| 3rd person singular | vult | volet |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|

| | | |
|-------------------|---------|---------|
| 1st person plural | volumus | volemus |
| 2nd person plural | vultis | voletis |
| 3rd person plural | volunt | volent |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> | <i>Perfect</i> |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1st person singular | volebam | volui |
| 2nd person singular | volebas | voluisti |
| 3rd person singular | volebat | voluit |
| 1st person plural | volebamus | voluimus |
| 2nd person plural | volebatis | voluistis |
| 3rd person plural | volebant | voluerunt |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|

| | | |
|---------------------|------------|------------|
| 1st person singular | voluero | volueram |
| 2nd person singular | volueris | volueras |
| 3rd person singular | voluerit | voluerat |
| 1st person plural | voluerimus | volueramus |
| 2nd person plural | volueritis | volueratis |
| 3rd person plural | voluerint | voluerant |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|--------------------|----------------|------------------|
|--------------------|----------------|------------------|

| | | |
|---------------------|---------|----------|
| 1st person singular | velim | vellem |
| 2nd person singular | velis | velles |
| 3rd person singular | velit | vellet |
| 1st person plural | velimus | vellemus |
| 2nd person plural | velitis | velletis |
| 3rd person plural | velint | vellent |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|

| | | |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|
| 1st person singular | voluerim | voluissem |
| 2nd person singular | volueris | voluisses |
| 3rd person singular | voluerit | voluisset |

(Contd)

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1st person plural | voluerimus | voluissetus |
| 2nd person plural | volueritis | voluissetis |
| 3rd person plural | voluerint | voluissent |

Infinitives: present: **velle**; perfect: **voluisse**

Present participle: **volens**

Gerund: **volendum** (no imperatives or gerundive)

T nolo nolle nolui → *be unwilling* is a compound of **ne volo** → *I do not want*. This verb takes the prolativum infinitive (see Unit 11H).

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | nolo | nolam |
| 2nd person singular | non vis | noles |
| 3rd person singular | non vult | nolet |
| 1st person plural | nolumus | nolemus |
| 2nd person plural | non vultis | noletis |
| 3rd person plural | nolunt | nolent |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> | <i>Perfect</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | nolebam | nolui |
| 2nd person singular | nolebas | noluisti |
| 3rd person singular | nolebat | noluit |
| 1st person plural | nolebamus | noluimus |
| 2nd person plural | nolebatis | noluistis |
| 3rd person plural | nolebant | noluerunt |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | noluero | nolueram |
| 2nd person singular | nolueris | nolueras |
| 3rd person singular | noluerit | noluerat |
| 1st person plural | noluerimus | nolueramus |
| 2nd person plural | nolueritis | nolueratis |
| 3rd person plural | noluerint | noluerant |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | nolim | nollem |
| 2nd person singular | nolis | nolles |
| 3rd person singular | nolit | nollet |
| 1st person plural | nolimus | nollemus |
| 2nd person plural | nolitis | nolletis |
| 3rd person plural | nolint | nolent |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | noluerim | noluissem |
| 2nd person singular | nolueris | noluissetis |
| 3rd person singular | noluerit | noluisset |
| 1st person plural | noluerimus | noluissemus |
| 2nd person plural | nolueritis | noluissetis |
| 3rd person plural | noluerint | noluisissent |

Imperatives: 2nd person: **noli** or **nolito** (s.) **nolite** or **nolitote** (pl.)

3rd person: **nolito** (s.) **nolunto** (pl.)

Infinitives: present: **nolle**, perfect: **noluisse**

Present participle: **nolens**

Gerund: **nolendum** (no gerundive or supine)

U malo malle malui → *prefer* is a compound of **magis volo** → *I wish more*. It takes the prolative infinitive (see Unit 11H).

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1st person singular | malo | malam |
| 2nd person singular | mavis | males |
| 3rd person singular | mavult | malet |
| 1st person plural | malumus | malemus |
| 2nd person plural | mavultis | maletis |
| 3rd person plural | malunt | malent |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> | <i>Perfect</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | malebam | malui |
| 2nd person singular | malebas | maluisti |
| 3rd person singular | malebat | maluit |
| 1st person plural | malebamus | maluimus |
| 2nd person plural | malebatis | maluistis |
| 3rd person plural | malebant | maluerunt |

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | maluero | malueram |
| 2nd person singular | malueris | malueras |
| 3rd person singular | maluerit | maluerat |
| 1st person plural | maluerimus | malueramus |
| 2nd person plural | malueritis | malueratis |
| 3rd person plural | maluerint | maluerant |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | malim | mallem |
| 2nd person singular | malis | malles |
| 3rd person singular | malit | mallet |
| 1st person plural | malimus | mallemus |
| 2nd person plural | malitis | malletis |
| 3rd person plural | malint | mallent |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | maluerim | maluissem |
| 2nd person singular | malueris | maluisses |
| 3rd person singular | maluerit | maluisset |
| 1st person plural | maluerimus | maluissemus |
| 2nd person plural | malueritis | maluissetis |
| 3rd person plural | maluerint | maluissent |

Infinitives: present: **malle**, perfect: **maluisse**

Gerundive: **malendum** (no participles or imperatives)

V fio fieri factus sum → *become, be made* is an irregular defective verb. When it means ‘be made’, the verb is active in form but passive in meaning and must be used as the passive of **facio facere feci factum** → *make*, which supplies the perfect tense **factus sum** → *I have been made*, the future perfect **factus ero** → *I shall have been made* and pluperfect **factus eram** → *I had been made*. When meaning ‘become’ **fio** is followed by a nominative.

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | fio | fiam | fiēbam |
| 2nd person singular | fis | fies | fiēbas |
| 3rd person singular | fit | fiet | fiēbat |
| 1st person plural | — | fīemus | fiēbāmus |
| 2nd person plural | — | fietis | fiēbātis |
| 3rd person plural | fiunt | fient | fiēbant |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | fiam | fierem |
| 2nd person singular | fias | fieres |
| 3rd person singular | fiat | fieret |
| 1st person plural | fīamus | fieremus |
| 2nd person plural | fiatis | fieretis |
| 3rd person plural | fiant | fierent |

W edo ēsse ēdi ēsum → *eat*. Note the similarity between this and parts of **sum** (see Units 2X and P above). The verb *to eat* is distinguished by the long vowel in **ēs-** but this will not be apparent when you are reading ‘real’ Latin. The parts of the verb which are not listed here are regular.

| <i>Present indicative</i> | <i>Active</i> | <i>Passive</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | edo | — |
| 2nd person singular | ēs | — |
| 3rd person singular | ēst | ēstur |
| 1st person plural | edimus | — |

(Contd)

| <i>Present indicative</i> | <i>Active</i> | <i>Passive</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 2nd person plural | ēstis | — |
| 3rd person plural | edunt | — |

| <i>Subjunctive active</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | edam <i>or</i> edim | ēssēm |
| 2nd person singular | edas <i>or</i> edis | ēssēs |
| 3rd person singular | edat <i>or</i> edit | ēssēt |
| 1st person plural | edamus | ēssēmus |
| 2nd person plural | edatis | ēssētis |
| 3rd person plural | edant <i>or</i> edint | ēssēt |

Imperfect subjunctive passive: **ēssetur**

Imperative active: 2nd person: **ēs** *or* **ēsto** (s.) **ēste** *or* **ēstote** (pl.),
3rd Person: **ēsto** (s.) **edunto** (pl.)

Present infinitive: **ēsse**

X eo ire ii (less commonly **ivi**) **itum** → *go*. In the perfect tenses the **iis-** is sometimes contracted to **is-**, e.g. **isti, istis, isse** etc.

| <i>Indicative</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | eo | ibo | ibam |
| 2nd person singular | is | ibis | ibas |
| 3rd person singular | it | ibit | ibat |
| 1st person plural | imus | ibimus | ibamus |
| 2nd person plural | itis | ibitis | ibatis |
| 3rd person plural | eunt | ibunt | ibant |

| <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Fut. Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> | |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------|
| 1st person singular | ii | iero | ieram |
| 2nd person singular | iisti | ieris | ieras |
| 3rd person singular | iit | ierit | ierat |
| 1st person plural | iimus | ierimus | ieramus |
| 2nd person plural | iitis | ieritis | ieratis |
| 3rd person plural | ierunt | ierint | ierant |

| <i>Subjunctive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | eam | irem | ierim | iissem |
| 2nd person singular | eas | ires | ieris | iisses |
| 3rd person singular | eat | iret | ierit | iisset |
| 1st person plural | eamus | iremus | ierimus | iissemus |
| 2nd person plural | eatis | iretis | ieritis | iissetis |
| 3rd person plural | eant | irent | ierint | iissent |

Imperatives: 2nd person: **i, ito** (s.) **ite, itote** (pl.); 3rd person: **ito** (s.) **eunto** (pl.)

Infinitives: present: **ire**; future: **iturus esse**; perfect: **iisse** or **ivisse**; passive: **iri** (see Unit IIG)

Participles: present: **iens, euntis**; future: **iturus -a -um**

Supine: **itum** (acc.) **itu** (abl.). Gerund: **eundum**

3rd person singular passive: present: **itur**; imperfect: **ibatur**; perfect: **itum est**

Compounds of **eo** like **adeo** → *approach* have a full passive form.

Y fero ferre tuli latum → *bring, bear, carry*. Like **fero** goes its compound **auferro auferre abstuli ablatum** → *take away*. It also shares forms with **tollo tollere sustuli sublatum** → *raise*.

| <i>Indicative active</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1st person singular | fero | feram | ferebam |
| 2nd person singular | fers | feres | ferebas |
| 3rd person singular | fert | feret | ferebat |
| 1st person plural | ferimus | feremus | ferebamus |
| 2nd person plural | fertis | feretis | ferebatis |
| 3rd person plural | ferunt | ferent | ferebant |

| <i>Indicative active</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | tuli | tulero | tuleram |
| 2nd person singular | tulisti | tuleris | tuleras |
| 3rd person singular | tulit | tulerit | tulerat |
| 1st person plural | tulimus | tulerimus | tuleramus |

| <i>Indicative active</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 2nd person plural | tulistis | tuleritis | tuleratis |
| 3rd person plural | tulerunt | tulerint | tulerant |

| <i>Indicative passive</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Future</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1st person singular | feror | ferar | ferebar |
| 2nd person singular | ferris | fereris (or -re) | ferebaris (or -re) |
| 3rd person singular | fertur | feretur | ferebatur |
| 1st person plural | ferimur | feremur | ferebamur |
| 2nd person plural | ferimini | feremini | ferebamini |
| 3rd person plural | feruntur | ferentur | ferebantur |

| <i>Indicative passive</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Future perfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | latus sum | latus ero | latus eram |
| 2nd person singular | latus es | latus eris | latus eras |
| 3rd person singular | latus est | latus erit | latus erat |
| 1st person plural | lati sumus | lati erimus | lati eramus |
| 2nd person plural | lati estis | lati eritis | lati eratis |
| 3rd person plural | lati sunt | lati erunt | lati erant |

| <i>Subjunctive active</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Perfect</i> | <i>Passive: Present</i> | <i>Perfect</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1st person singular | feram | tulerim | ferar | latus sim |
| 2nd person singular | feras | tuleris | feraris (or -re) | latus sis |
| 3rd person singular | ferat | tulerit | feratur | latus sit |
| 1st person plural | feramus | tulerimus | feramur | lati simus |
| 2nd person plural | feratis | tuleritis | feramini | lati sitis |
| 3rd person plural | ferant | tulerint | ferantur | lati sint |

| <i>Subjunctive active</i> | <i>Imperfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> | <i>Passive: Imperfect</i> | <i>Pluperfect</i> |
|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person singular | ferrem | tulissem | ferrer | latus essem |
| 2nd person singular | ferres | tulisses | ferreris (or -re) | latus esses |
| 3rd person singular | ferret | tulisset | ferretur | latus esset |
| 1st person plural | ferremus | tulissemus | ferremur | lati essemus |
| 2nd person plural | ferretis | tulissetis | ferremini | lati essetis |
| 3rd person plural | ferrent | tulissent | ferrentur | lati essent |

Active imperative: 2nd person: **fer/fero** (s.) **ferite/ferite** (pl.), 3rd person: **fero** (s.) **ferunto** (pl)

Passive imperative: 2nd person: **ferre/feror** (s.) **ferimini** (pl.), 3rd person: **feror** (s.) **feruntor** (pl.)

Infinitives: present active: **ferre**; present passive: **ferri**; perfect active: **tulisse**; perfect passive: **latus esse**; future active: **laturus esse**; future passive: **laturus iri**

Participles: present: **ferens, ferentis**; perfect: **latus -a -um**; future: **laturus -a -um**

Gerund: **ferendum**; gerundive: **ferendus -a -um**; supine: **laturus**

1 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **oportet vos captivos liberare** → *you ought to set the prisoners free*

a ecce pluit!

b decet Romanos pacem conservare.

c hodie mihi convenit domi manere.

d iuvabit t non licet vobis in

e triclinium intrare. e cantorem audire.

f non pudet furem impietatis.

g pueris non placet in horto ludere.

h iam vesperascit.

i taedet nos laboris.

j sapienti convenit tacere.

2 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. **dulce et decorum est pro patria mori** → *it is sweet and fitting to die for one's country*

- | | |
|--|---|
| a optimo consilio utendum est. | f a nostris processum est ad hostes. |
| b facile est in montibus te celare. | g non potest Germanis resistere. |
| c ad Graeciam a Cassio navigatum est. | h opus erat nautis rudentibus. |
| d necesse est canem ferocem vincere. | i nostra refert eum servari. |
| e opus erit nobis pecunia. | j solet mane patronum salutare. |

3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *we regret our carelessness* → **paenitet nos neglegentiae**

- | | |
|--|--|
| a You (pl.) will need a ship. | f It concerns me that we learn. |
| b It snowed yesterday. | g It is possible to see the treetops. |
| c It is unbecoming for us to yield. | h It was difficult to find the caves. |
| d It pleases Caesar to spare the prisoners. | i The women came to the theatre. |
| e The girls are weary of the songs. | j It will soon grow light. |

Points to remember

- 1 Impersonal verbs are found in the third person singular in Latin. They are sometimes used alone, as they are in English, e.g. **pluit** (*it is raining*).
- 2 Impersonal verbs can govern cases and constructions. They are often found with an accusative and infinitive, e.g. **oportet nos pauperes adiuvere** (*We ought to help the poor*).
- 3 Impersonal forms can be used with normal verbs, e.g. **est facilius equitare** (*It is easier to ride*).
- 4 Some impersonal forms of normal verbs have a specialized meaning, e.g. **constat** (*It is agreed*).

- 5 There is a passive version of impersonal verbs in Latin which is not used in English, e.g. **pugnatum est in foro** (*There was a fight in the forum*).
- 6 There are some verbs, called defective, which lack a complete set of tenses. The common ones are **odi** (*I hate*), **coepi** (*I have begun*) and **memini** (*I remember*), and three verbs meaning *say*: **aio, inquam** and **for, fari, fatus sum**.
- 7 Be careful not to confuse parts of **fio** (*I become*) with parts of **facio** (*I do or make*).
- 8 Be careful not to confuse parts of **fero** (*I carry or bring*) with parts of **tollo tollere sustuli sublatum** (*I raise*).
- 9 Be careful not to confuse parts of **volo velle volui** (*I wish*) with **volo-are-avi-atum** (*I fly*).
- 10 Be careful not to confuse parts of **sum esse fui** (*to be*) with parts of **edo esse edi esum** (*I eat*).

13

Relative and temporal clauses, ablative absolute

In this chapter you should aim to

- **master the concept and use of the ablative absolute in Latin**
 - **understand the function of relative and temporal clauses in Latin**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

Relative clauses

- A** The relative pronoun **qui quae quod** (*who, which*) (Unit 7J) usually introduces relative clauses but they may also be introduced by relative adverbs like **ubi** (*where*).
- e.g. **corona quam rex gerebat erat aurea** → *the crown which the king wore was golden*
castra posuerunt ubi flumen latissimum est → *they camped where the river is widest*
- B** As well as coming after the main clause or even in the middle of it, relative clauses sometimes come before it.
- e.g. **quae verba pater tibi dicet ea audi** → *listen to those words which father will say to you*
- C** If the relative pronoun is the subject of a verb which links a subject with a complement (see Unit 4A3), like **sum** → *I am*, **appareo** → *I appear*, **audio** → *I am called* (lit. I hear [of myself]), **evado** or

existo → *I turn out* and **videor** → *I seem*, then the relative pronoun often agrees in number and gender with the complement.

e.g. **Roma quod mundi caput est** → *Rome, which is the capital of the world*

D A relative pronoun or an ablative absolute (Q) which uses a relative pronoun is sometimes found at the beginning of a sentence to show a connection with something that has happened previously.

e.g. **quam ob rem** → *for which reason* (often written as one word)

quo facto → *when this was done* (ablative absolute)

quod viderunt → *as to that which they saw*

E If the relative clause simply states a fact about the **antecedent** (Unit 7J), then the verb of the relative clause is in the indicative.

e.g. **in silvis sunt multae ferae quas timemus** → *in the woods there are many wild beasts which we fear*

F The relative pronoun can be used to introduce **final clauses** (Unit 14D), in which case the verb is in the subjunctive.

e.g. **imperator legatos misit qui dona regi darent** → *the emperor sent ambassadors to give the king gifts* (lit. *who would give the king gifts*)

When a final clause contains a comparative then it is introduced by **quo**.

e.g. **equos conscendimus quo celerius ad villam perveniremus** → *we mounted the horses to reach the villa more quickly*

G The relative pronoun can also be used to introduce **consecutive clauses** (Unit 14I) when the verb is also in the subjunctive. The meaning of **qui** in these cases amounts to *of such a kind that* and the clause defines a characteristic of the antecedent. (For **quin** see Units 16H–L.)

e.g. **nemo erat tam fortis qui illis leonibus resisteret** → *no-one was so brave as to resist those lions*

H The relative pronoun can also be used to introduce **causal clauses** (Unit 16B) in which case it is also followed by a subjunctive.

e.g. **te culpo qui hoc facias** → *I blame you for doing this.*

Temporal clauses

- I** Temporal clauses express the time when something happened, is happening or will happen. They are introduced by **temporal conjunctions** (Unit 6F).
- J** Temporal clauses introduced by **ubi, ut** (*when*), **postquam** (*after*), **simulac, simulatque** (*as soon as*) or **quotiens** (*whenever*) have their verbs in the indicative.
e.g. **ubi in Gallia habitabam magnam villam habebam** → *when I used to live in Gaul, I had a large country estate*

After **postquam, simulac** or **ubi**, a Latin perfect tense is sometimes best translated by an English pluperfect tense.

e.g. **postquam Caelius intravit omnes tacuerunt** → *after Caelius had entered everyone fell silent*

- K** Clauses introduced by **dum, donec, quoad** and **quam diu** (*while, as long as*), have their verbs in the indicative.
e.g. **multi liberorum nostrorum discunt donec ludunt** → *many of our children learn while they are playing*

dum (*while*), is regularly followed by the present tense, even if referring to a past action, to indicate a period of time during which something else happens. (This is called the **historic present**.)

e.g. **dum Roma incenditur, Nero fidibus canebat** → *while Rome was burning, Nero was playing on the lyre*

- L** Clauses introduced by **dum, donec, quoad** (*until*), and **antequam, priusquam** (*before*) have their verbs in the indicative if all that is being conveyed is an idea of time.
e.g. **heri in foro cum amicis manebam donec sol occidit** → *yesterday I stayed in the forum with my friends until the sun set*

Often **antequam** and **priusquam** are split into separate words (**ante ... quam** and **prius ... quam**) which do not need to stand next to each other.

e.g. *Septimus canem ingentem prius vidit quam ille latravit* →
Septimus saw the huge dog before it barked

M Clauses introduced by **dum**, **donec**, **quoad** (*until*) and **antequam**, **priusquam** (*before*) can have their verbs in the subjunctive if the action of the clause is anticipated or has an idea of purpose as well as time.

e.g. *cenam celeriter coquus parat antequam hospites adveniant* →
the cook is preparing dinner quickly before the guests arrive

Temporal clauses with cum

N **cum** can mean *when*, *whenever*, *since* or *because*, according to its context.

O **cum** can only govern an **indicative** verb under the following circumstances:

▶ When **cum** (*when*) introduces a temporal clause with a verb referring to the present or future.

e.g. *cum aurum invenero dives ero* → *when I find (lit. shall have found) the gold, I shall be rich*

▶ When **cum** (*when*) introduces a temporal clause referring to the past which emphasizes the idea of time. (Note the phrase **cum primum** → *as soon as*.)

e.g. *cum nos hostibus appropinquabamus vos terga dabatis* →
at the time when we were approaching the enemy, you were retreating

▶ When **cum** (*when*) introduces a temporal clause referring to the past which is positioned after the main clause and, although a subordinate clause, expresses the main event of the sentence.

e.g. *navis paene ad portum advenerat cum gubernator excidit* →
the ship had almost reached the harbour when the helmsman fell out

▶ When **cum** means *whenever*. If the verb in the main clause is in the present tense, then the verb of the temporal clause will be

in the perfect tense. However, if the verb in the main clause is in a past tense, then the verb of the temporal clause will be in the pluperfect tense.

e.g. *cum tuba sonuerat athletae quam celerrime cucurrerunt*
→ *whenever the trumpet sounded (lit. had sounded), the athletes ran as quickly as possible*

P When **cum** (*when, since or because*) introduces a temporal clause referring to a past action other than those mentioned above, then the verb will be in the **subjunctive**:

- ▶ If the verb of the temporal clause refers to an action which occurs at the same time as the action of the main clause, then it is in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

e.g. *cum ver appropinquaret peregrinatores ad montes profecti sunt* → *when spring was approaching, the travellers set off for the mountains*

- ▶ If the verb of the temporal clause refers to an action which occurred before the action of the main verb, then it is in the **pluperfect subjunctive**.

e.g. *cum hospites discessissent Cassius coniurationem patefecit*
→ *when the guests had left, Cassius revealed the plot*

Ablative absolute

Q The **ablative absolute** construction is a phrase which comes at the beginning of a sentence (or of a subordinate clause) and which is *grammatically* independent of the rest of the sentence, but does have a connection *in sense* with it. The phrase consists of a **noun or pronoun in the ablative** and a **participle** (Unit 10A–D) (or another noun or adjective) agreeing with it.

R An ablative absolute is not used if the noun in it would refer to either the subject or the object of the main clause.

S It is sometimes possible to translate the ablative absolute literally into English.

e.g. **labore confecto, agricolae domum redierunt** → *with the work finished, the farmers returned home*

T If a participle is used in an ablative absolute, then the phrase can nearly always be translated as a temporal clause in English. The tense of the participle depends not on whether the time of its action is in the present, past or future, but on whether it happens before, during or after the action of the main verb in its clause:

- ▶ **Caesare interfecto Brutus Roma effugit** → *after Caesar was killed, Brutus escaped from Rome*
- ▶ **spectatoribus tacentibus imperator signum dedit** → *as the spectators were falling silent, the emperor gave the signal*
- ▶ **fratribus discessuris nuntius regis advenit** → *when the brothers were on the point of departing, the king's messenger arrived*

U In an ablative absolute, participles can take objects and constructions.

e.g. **auriga equos flexuro rota fracta est** → *as the charioteer was about to wheel the horses around, the wheel broke*

V As there is no participle for the verb *to be* in Latin, in an ablative absolute where one would be used if it existed, Latin just has the noun and adjective, or the noun and another noun, without any participle.

e.g. **Pompeio duce legiones Spartacum superaverunt** → *with Pompey as leader the legions overcame Spartacus*

e.g. **ventis adversis, naves aegre in portum intraverunt** → *since the winds were contrary the ships barely got into the harbour*

1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate A and B above.

e.g. **vir quem iudex arcessivit est innocens** → *the man whom the judge sent for is innocent*

- a** ille qui in spelunca dormiebat antiquissimus erat.
- b** hodie illa templa quae Romani aedificaverunt videre volumus.
- c** terra unde peregrinus advenit paene deserta est.
- d** viros quos elegisti nos iam vidimus.

- e** quem tu sequeris nos quoque sequemur.
- f** Claudiam manebam ubi casa arboribus celatur.
- g** verba quae imperator dixerat milites delectaverunt.
- h** statim prosiluit ubi hostes densissimi erant.
- i** bene eum cognovi cuius filius mortuus est.
- j** candidatum cui favemus numquam amavistis.

2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C and D above.

e.g. *quod locuti sunt, nemo id intellegit* → *as to what they have said, no-one understands it*

- a** Londinium, quae urbs maxima videtur, multo minus quam Roma est.
- b** uxor mea, quod mihi praesidium semper erat, est iam avia.
- c** Athenae quod est caput Atticae pulcherrima urbs est.
- d** quam ob rem Cassius etiam divitior factus est.
- e** quo facto, ille valde iratus e foro discessit.
- f** ille est Catilina, quod evasit exitium reipublicae.
- g** quam ob rem non iterum navigabimus.
- h** quod Caesar faciet, nemo volet parere.
- i** quo facto Romani multos dies gaudebant.
- j** Sirius, quae est clarissima stella iam ortus est.

3 Translate the following into Latin.

e.g. *what I have said, everyone has heard* → **quod ego dixi omnes audiverunt**

- a** He will look for the bird where he saw the nest.
- b** Have you (s.) seen the young man whom Lucretia loves?
- c** As to that which we did, everyone will be silent (**taceo**).
- d** For which reason the procession halted.
- e** Brutus whose clan (**gens**) is noble, has saved the republic.
- f** The dog caught the cat which had caught the mouse.
- g** Augustus, who was the ornament (**decus**) of his time.
- h** They killed the goose which used to lay (**pario**) the golden eggs.
- i** Cloelia, who was a model to the Romans.
- j** When this was done, the spectators applauded.

4 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate J above.

e.g. *quotiens tu vocabis ego veniam* → *whenever you (will) call, I shall come*

- a** ubi tu in silvis errabas ego in horto laborabam.
- b** postquam fures togas abstulerunt ianitor verberatus est.
- c** postquam Valeria cecinit omnes plausuerunt.
- d** simulac taurus intravit nos diffugimus.
- e** simulatque patronus advenit, clientes surrexerunt.
- f** ut tecta viderunt Romam agnoverunt.
- g** ubi haec verba iudex dixit reus tremuit.
- h** simulac pons fracta est Horatius in flumen desiluit.
- i** postquam Milo Clodium interfecit in exilium relegatus est.
- j** quotiens galli cantabant agricolae expergiscebantur.

5 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate K, L and M above.

e.g. *dum liberi ludunt iuvenes coniurabant* → *while the children played, the youths plotted*

- a** navem paraveramus priusquam nautae advenerunt.
- b** dum sol fulgebat apes mel faciebant.
- c** atrium ornabimus antequam hospites advenient.
- d** hostes latebant donec agmen in saltum venerit.
- e** in castris manebamus donec periculum emotum sit.
- f** dum sacerdotes sacrificant sicarius me percussit.
- g** poeta recitabat quam diu turba manebat.
- h** ignem exstinxit antequam casa flammam conciperet.
- i** dum canes dormiunt fures domum intrabunt.
- j** tribunus perstiterat donec consul cessisset.

6 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *When (ubi) it snows the water freezes* → *ubi ningit aqua concrecit*

- a** While (**dum**) the guards were shouting amongst themselves, the captives escaped.

- b** Did you (s.) wait until (**quoad**) the poet had recited the story?
- c** The lion lay hidden for a long time before (**antequam**) he attacked the ram.
- d** We listened as long as (**quam diu**) the orator was speaking.
- e** While (**dum**) Decius was approaching, the dog barked.
- f** Whenever (**quotiens**) I buy a puppy for you (s.) you ask for (**peto**) another.
- g** We shall knock on the door until (**dum**) you (s.) open it.
- h** After (**postquam**) the earth trembled, the mountain exploded.
- i** Marcellus, hit the nail as soon as (**simulac**) I nod.
- j** While (**donec**) Julia was walking on the riverbank, the otters were playing in the river.

7 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate O above.

e.g. **cum tuba sonabit pompa discedet** → *when the trumpet sounds, the procession will depart*

- a** cum domina loquitur ancillae audiunt.
- b** cum Sulla dictator erat omnes senatores in magno periculo erant.
- c** coniurati Caesarem tenebant cum Casca eum percussit.
- d** cum te vidi vox mea deest.
- e** cum illum gladiatorem vident spectatores plaudunt.
- f** cum librum leges fabulam intelleges.
- g** montibus appropinquabamus cum Galli oppugnaverunt.
- h** cum primum pons deletus est Horatius se in flumen coniecit.
- i** cum pater intraverat pueri riserunt.
- j** cum primum porta clausa erat puella puerum osculata est.

8 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate P above.

e.g. **cum viam invenissent omnes riserunt** → *when they had found the road everyone smiled*

- a** cum montes reliquissent peregrinatores gavisii sunt.
- b** cum hospites advenissent vinum Sextus distribuit.
- c** cum canes latrarent fures diffugiebant.
- d** cum sol oriretur custodes dormiebant.

- e** cum hoc scelus patefecisset Cicero coniuratos comprehendit.
- f** Romam cum iter fecissemus nusquam hospitium invenire poteramus.
- g** cum venatores lente reperent aper se celabat.
- h** Caesar, cum Rhenum transire constituisset, pontem aedificavit.
- i** cum auditores riderent poeta irascebatur.
- j** cum litus vidissent nautae navem verterunt.

9 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use the conjunction cum in each one.

e.g. *the sailors sing when they set sail* → **nautae cantant cum vela dant**

- a** You (s.) were turning the ship when the pirates attacked us.
- b** When we had reached the shore, we thanked the gods.
- c** I was walking home when the dog attacked me.
- d** As soon as (**cum primum**) the bell rang, the monks departed.
- e** When they had killed Caesar, the conspirators fled.
- f** At the time when the young men were ill, the thief stole the gold.
- g** When they had seen the bear, the boys fled.
- h** Whenever the moon was bright, the werewolf walked.
- i** The women used to sing when they spun thread.
- j** At the time when the cook was preparing dinner, the guests arrived.

10 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate T above.

e.g. **rotis fractis plaustrum inutile erat** → *after the wheels were broken, the cart was useless*

- a** auro invento avarus stupefactus est.
- b** civibus loquentibus te audire non possum.
- c** sole oriente matrona ancillas arcessivit.
- d** his verbis dictis legatus celeriter discessit.
- e** militibus discessuris foedus renovatum est.
- f** tempestate adventura nautae in portu manebant.
- g** nuntio locuto portae apertae sunt.
- h** victoria nuntiata epistulam patri misimus.

- i obsidibus necatis sicarius de vita desperabat.
- j nave refecta nautae statim vela dederunt.

11 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate U and V above.

e.g. *me duce certe vincemus* → *with me as leader, we will certainly win*

- a illis virginibus cantantibus nautae delirant.
- b Claudio et Aemilio praetoribus, nulli latrones damnati sunt.
- c custodibus captivos comitantibus agmen per silvas erravit.
- d Tarquinio rege Romani Cloacam Maximam construxerunt.
- e civibus secundis statuam patri meo erexi.
- f hostibus urbem oppugnaturis Iuppiter tonuit.
- g Marcello pecuniam adepto fundum comparavimus.
- h imperatore se necaturo milites seditionem fecerunt.
- i Boudicca regina Britannii Camulodunum expilaverunt.
- j filo ductore Theseus e labyrintho effugit.

12 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use the ablative absolute construction.

e.g. *when the dice had been cast, the gambler smiled* → *aleis iactis aleator risit*

- a As Jupiter was about to hurl a thunderbolt, Juno shouted.
- b While you (s.) were sleeping, I painted the bedroom.
- c After the light had been extinguished, we walked in darkness.
- d When we were on the point of seeing the target, the referee stopped the contest.
- e After the tyrant's brother was slain, the Athenians were severely oppressed.
- f When the water had been drained off, the soldiers crossed the river bed.
- g While the fishermen were bringing the rods, the boys were preparing the food.
- h With Marius as general we shall overcome the barbarians.
- i When camp was pitched (*pono*), the soldiers made bread.
- j With Mercury as our guide we shall reach the land of the dead.

Points to remember

- 1 The relative pronoun **qui quae quod** (*who, which*) is so called because it *relates* to another word. This other word is referred to as the antecedent of the pronoun.
- 2 The relative pronoun will be in the same number and gender as its antecedent, but its case will depend on its function in its own clause.
- 3 Relative pronouns often appear in ablative absolutes. E.g. **quibus rebus dictis** (*when these things were said*).
- 4 Relative pronouns can also be used to introduce final and consecutive clauses.
- 5 Temporal clauses express the time *when* something happens. They are introduced by temporal conjunctions.
- 6 The verbs of temporal clauses can be in the indicative or the subjunctive, depending on the introductory conjunction and the time reference. The word **cum** can be followed by verbs of either mood, depending on the context.
- 7 The ablative absolute construction is a way of subordinating an idea, with a noun or pronoun and participle at the beginning of a clause (often with a temporal meaning), by putting everything into the ablative, e.g. **Caesare necato** (*after Caesar was slain*).
- 8 The tense of the participle in an ablative absolute refers to the time when the event took place, e.g. **militibus profecturis** (*with the soldiers on the point of setting out*).
- 9 Participles in an ablative absolute can take objects, e.g. **Aegyptiis pyramidas aedificantibus** (*while the Egyptians were building the pyramids*).
- 10 When an ablative absolute appears without a participle, supply the verb *to be* in English, e.g. **Hannibale puero** (*when Hannibal was a boy*).

14

Final, consecutive and conditional clauses

In this chapter you should aim to

- **understand the function of final, consecutive and conditional clauses in Latin**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

Final clauses

- A** Final clauses (commonly called **purpose clauses**) express the purpose for which something is done. They are introduced by **ut** (*so that*), if they are positive, and by **ne** (sometimes **ut ne**) (*lest, so that not, in case*), if they are negative. Some are introduced by the relative pronoun **qui quae quod** and some by **quo**. It is common in English to translate a purpose clause with a simple infinitive, e.g. *I opened the box to see the contents.*
- B** The following phrases can introduce a negative final clause as well as **ne** (*lest*):
- ne quis** → *lest anyone, so that no-one*
 - ne quid** → *lest anything, so that nothing*
 - ne umquam** → *lest ever, so that never*
 - ne usquam** → *lest anywhere, so that nowhere*
 - ne ullus** → *lest any, so that no*
- C** The verb of the final clause is in the **subjunctive**. The tense of the subjunctive depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 1Y).

- i** If the verb of the main clause is **primary** (in the imperative or the present, future, future perfect or perfect with 'have'), then the verb of the final clause will be in the **present subjunctive**.

e.g. *ianuam claudo ne hi canes effugiant* → *I am closing the door so that these dogs do not escape*

- ii** If the verb of the main clause is **historic** (perfect without 'have', imperfect or pluperfect), then the verb of the final clause will be in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

e.g. *ianuam clauderam ne hi canes effugerent* → *I had closed the door so that these dogs would not escape*

- D** A final clause may be introduced by the relative pronoun **qui quae quod** (see Unit 13F).

e.g. *senatores Caesarem misit qui Gallos superaret* → *the senators sent Caesar to overpower the Gauls*

- E** If a final clause contains a comparative adjective or adverb then it is introduced by **quo** (see Unit 13F).

e.g. *decem dies exercebat quo citius cursum curreret* → *he exercised for ten days so that he might run the race more quickly*

Consecutive clauses

- F** **Consecutive clauses** (commonly called **result clauses**) express the result (consequence) of an action. They are introduced by **ut** (*with the result that* or *so that*). A negative result is expressed by **ut non** (or **quin** – see Unit 16H). In English we usually use *that* to introduce a consecutive clause, e.g. *We walked so far that we were exhausted*. Sometimes, however, we can omit a conjunction altogether, e.g. *We were so late we missed the boat*.

- G** A consecutive clause is usually (but not always) signposted in the main clause by one of the following:

tam, sic or **ita** → *so*
adeo → *to such an extent,*
so much
tantus -a -um → *so great, so big*

talis -is -e → *such, of*
such a kind
tot → *so many*
totiens → *so often*

- H** The verb of a consecutive clause is in the **subjunctive**. The tense of the subjunctive does not depend on the sequence of tenses but stays for the most part in the same tense as it would appear in English.
- i** If the result is going to occur in the future, then Latin invents a **future subjunctive** tense. This consists of the **future participle** (Unit 10D), which agrees with whatever it refers to, and the **present subjunctive** of the verb *to be* (Unit 12P).
e.g. **tam sero advenisti ut pompam non visurus sis** → *you have arrived so late that you will not see the procession*
- ii** If the result occurs in the present, then the **present subjunctive** is used.
e.g. **tam altum est flumen ut transire non possim** → *the river is so deep that I cannot cross*
- iii** If the result occurred in the past and stress is being laid upon the fact that it actually happened, then the **perfect subjunctive** is used.
e.g. **Cicero Catilinam tam ferociter obtrectavit ut senatores illum evitaverint** → *Cicero disparaged Catiline so fiercely that the senators actually avoided him*
- iv** If the result occurred in the past and is expressed simply as a consequence of the action in the main clause, then the **imperfect subjunctive** is used.
e.g. **tanta erat tempestas ut velas dare non possemus** → *the storm was so great that we could not set the sails*
- I** Some consecutive clauses may be introduced by a relative pronoun which has the sense ‘of such a kind that’ (see Unit 13G).

e.g. **Boudicca non est femina quam irrites** → *Boudicca is not a woman to provoke* (lit. *is not a woman of such a kind that you may provoke her*)

Conditionals

Conditional clauses usually follow the conjunctions *if, unless, whether*.

J A conditional statement consists of two elements, either of which can appear first:

- ▶ A clause, introduced by **si** (*if*) or **nisi** (*unless, if ... not*), which contains a condition. This clause is called the **protasis**.
- ▶ A main clause containing the consequence of the condition. This is called the **apodosis**.

K Conditional sentences are of two kinds:

- ▶ A condition which is, was or will be true, and whose consequence will be true in the future, is true in the present or was true in the past is called an **open conditional**. The verb of both clauses is almost always in the **indicative**.
- ▶ A possible condition, the result of which is not certain to be fulfilled or cannot possibly be fulfilled is represented in English by the words *would* or *should* in the main clause. In Latin the verb of both clauses is in the **subjunctive**.

L The tense of the indicative in an open conditional depends on:

- i** If the condition and its consequence refer to the future, then Latin is much more precise than English. As well as using the **future indicative** in the main clause, Latin uses either a **future** or **future perfect** indicative in the protasis. English is rather lazy in these cases and mostly uses the present tense.

e.g. **nisi hoc facies, numquam thesaurum invenies** → *if you do not do this, you will never find the treasure* (lit. *If you will not do this ...*)

ii If the condition and its consequence refer to the present, then the **present indicative** is used in both clauses.

e.g. **si gaudes, nos quoque gaudemus** → *if you are happy, we are also happy*

iii If the condition and its consequence refer to the past, then both clauses will contain either the **imperfect** or **perfect indicative**.

e.g. **si illo favebas, longe errabas** → *if you were supporting that man, you were far wrong*

e.g. **si tu hoc fecisti, nos perdidisti** → *if you did this, you have ruined us*

iv It is possible for the condition to refer to one time while its consequence refers to another.

e.g. **si umquam vitam servavisti, valde laudandus es** → *if you have ever saved a life, you are greatly to be praised*

v A **pluperfect indicative** verb in the protasis and an **imperfect indicative** verb in the apodosis refer to something which happened frequently.

e.g. **si umquam templum viderat, statim sacrificare parabat** → *if ever he saw a temple, he at once prepared to make a sacrifice*

M Occasionally the apodosis contains an **imperative** or a **subjunctive** of will or desire.

e.g. **Minotaurum neca, si audes** → *slay the Minotaur if you dare*

e.g. **si eis licentiam dedisti, exeant** → *if you have given them permission, let them leave*

N Conditionals which have *would* or *should* in the main clause in English refer to conditions which are only possible or are contrary to known facts, rather than those which are certain.

In Latin the verbs of both clauses are in the **subjunctive** and their tenses depend upon the following.

- i** If the condition and its consequence refer to the future and the condition expresses something which may or may not be fulfilled, a **present subjunctive** is used in both clauses.
e.g. **si epistulam legas, totam rem intellegas** → *if you were to read the letter, you would understand the whole affair*

- ii** If appropriate, the **perfect subjunctive** can appear also in the protasis of such sentences.
e.g. **si a sociis nostris relictus simus, libertatem non servemus**
→ *if we were deserted by our allies, we would not preserve our freedom*

- iii** If the condition and its consequence refer to the present and the condition expresses something contrary to known facts, an **imperfect subjunctive** is used in both clauses.
e.g. **si vinum biberes, ebrius esses** → *if you were (now) drinking wine, you would be drunk*

- iv** If the condition and its consequence refer to the past and the condition is contrary to known facts, a **pluperfect subjunctive** is used in both clauses.
e.g. **si cum Caesare pugnavisses, eum vero admiratus esses** →
if you had fought with Caesar, you would have admired him

- v** It is possible for the condition to refer to one period of time while its consequence refers to another. In such cases the **imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive** are used.
e.g. **nisi pater suus dives fuisset, numquam Quintus ignavus esset** → *if his father had not been rich, Quintus would never be idle*
e.g. **nisi ibi aquae dulces invenirentur, milites castra non posuissent** → *if fresh water were not found there, the soldiers would not have pitched camp.*

- O** When conditional clauses are used in an **indirect statement** (Unit 15F), then the verb of the protasis is in the **subjunctive** and the verb of the apodosis becomes an infinitive.
- i** The tense of the **subjunctive** depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 1Y) except that the **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctives** can be used after a present indicative verb introducing the indirect statement.
 - ii** The tense of the **infinitive** of an open conditional depends on the normal rules for indirect statement (Unit 15C).
 - iii** The **infinitive** of a conditional with *would* or *should* is in the **future** tense and is accompanied by *esse*, for conditionals referring to the future, or *fuisse* for those referring to the present or past.

1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C i above.

e.g. *ad portum curremus ut naves videamus* → *we shall run to the harbour to see the ships*

- a** tene speculum ut te videas.
- b** oves custodio ne leonibus edantur.
- c** pavimentum puer lavat ut a matre laudetur.
- d** pictores strenue laborabunt ut atrium uno die pingant.
- e** tabulam celavi ne illa insula umquam inveniatur.
- f** canes latrant ne quis domui appropinquet.
- g** Caesar collem munit ne Galli castra capiant.
- h** carpe diem ne felicitas te vitet.
- i** omnia nomina appello ne quis omittatur.
- j** nonne plaustrum reficies ut frumentum feramus?

2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C ii above.

e.g. *arborem succidit ut lignum compararet* → *he cut the tree down to get firewood*

- a** equum conscendi ut artem meam demonstrarem.
- b** corpora sepeliebat ne quid videretur.
- c** mercator aediculam occultam fabricavit ut gemmas intus celaret.
- d** venatores cervis insidiebantur ut cibum liberis praeberent.
- e** fundos vendiderat ut aes alienum exsolveret.
- f** canem comparavi ne Claudius umquam se celare posset.
- g** homo scelestus arborem succidit ne ulla avis ibi nidificaret.
- h** puellae libros legebant ut carmina antiqua cognoscerent.
- i** portas clauseramur ne quis admitteretur.
- j** portam obseravi ne umquam domum iterum reviseremus.

3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate D and E above.

e.g. *legatos mitemus qui foedera renovent* → *we shall send ambassadors to renew the pacts*

- a** dux novas copias misit quae nobis subveniant.
- b** fabros conduxeramus qui thermas aedificarent.
- c** athleta diu exercebat quo facem celerius ferret.
- d** hunc scribam comparavi qui meos libros scribat.
- e** medicus potionem exhauserat quo altius dormiret.
- f** milites collegi qui me defendant.
- g** Quintia, dona misi quae te delectent.
- h** oculos magnos habeo quo melius te videam.
- i** murum diruebat quo plus horti videret.
- j** pastor ovile aedificavit quo oves tutius protegerentur.

4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *I drink wine to take the pain away* → *vinum bibo ut dolorem emoveam*

- a** Are you (s.) hiding the bread to annoy your mother?
- b** The farmer was watching the field in case any cow should escape.
- c** We have sons to avenge us.
- d** He barred the gate so that no one might open it.
- e** Sulla had published (**proscribo**) the names of his enemies so that they would be killed.

- f** I washed the floor so that no mud might be seen.
- g** I have large teeth so that I may eat you (s.) better.
- h** I showed everyone the box so that they would not suspect me.
- i** Did Cicero arrive to hear the speech?
- j** Taste (s.) the food lest there is any poison inside.

5 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate H i above.

e.g. *adeo cunctatur ut omnes perituri sint* → *he is delaying so much that everyone will die*

- a** tot milites rex comparavit ut expeditio certe victura sit.
- b** tam laetus erit pater ut nobis dona daturus sit.
- c** tanta est venti velocitas ut hodie non navigaturi simus.
- d** adeo ningit ut nihil visuri simus.
- e** tot pisces feles devorat ut mox dormitura sit.
- f** totiens decidit ut crura fracturus sit.
- g** tam esuriens est pauper ut calceos suos esurus sit.
- h** tam infirmus est pons ut etiam capri non transituri sint.
- i** talis est Titus ut duci optime subventurus sit.
- j** tam celeriter currit ut periculum non visura sit.

6 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate H ii above.

e.g. *adeo pluit ut flumen inundet* → *it is raining so much that the river is flooding*

- a** tam alta est turris ut tectum non videam.
- b** talis est Crassus ut fautores non corrumpat.
- c** tanta sunt saxa ut asini ea non possint portare.
- d** terra adeo tremit ut paene cadam.
- e** tot oves viae obstant ut pastores haereant.
- f** haec avis totiens cantat ut me semper delectet.
- g** tam gravia sunt plaustra ut pons frangatur.
- h** tam clare loquitur ut omnia verba audire possim.
- i** tanta est fides mea ut inermis pugnem.
- j** aqua ita calida est ut non bibi possit.

7 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate H iii and iv above.

e.g. *tam parvus erat ut in hama sederet* → *he was so small that he used to sit in a bucket*

- a** mater nostra tam benigna erat ut semper amaretur.
- b** magistratum totiens vituperaveram ut comprehensus sim.
- c** tantos montes transiveramus ut defessi essemus.
- d** puellae adeo lacrimabant ut dictatorem commoverint.
- e** tot barbari per portas irruerunt ut custodes resistere non possent.
- f** Tarquinius tam superbe regnaverat ut cives eum expulerint.
- g** elephanti tam ingentes erant ut Romani valde timerent.
- h** picturam tam bene pinxit ut multa praemia acciperet.
- i** tam celeriter equos equitabat ut tandem interfectus sit.
- j** tot viros vexaverat ut in insula solus derelictus sit.

8 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *he was so amazed that he did not speak* → **adeo stupefactus est ut non locutus sit**

- a** Helen had so many wooers that she could actually choose her husband.
- b** Marius is so great a general that the soldiers will follow him faithfully.
- c** Pausanias so (*ita*) liked the temple that he would always praise it.
- d** We are so many that you (s.) cannot resist us.
- e** The boy used to cry 'wolf' so often that no-one would believe him.
- f** Cato was so honest that he would not lie.
- g** They argued to such an extent that Romulus actually slew Remus.
- h** Othello used to tell such tales that Desdemona loved him.
- i** Victoria was not a woman you (s.) might amuse.
- j** Crassus is so rich that he is unaware of his own wealth.

9 Translate the following into English. They illustrate L i above.

e.g. *si hoc feceris, omnes delectabis* → *if you do this, you will amuse everyone*

- a** *si Metella Aemilio nupserit, matres amborum laetae erunt.*
- b** *si Romani Alexandriam ceperint, Aegyptum regent.*
- c** *nisi nos liberabis, nihil de amico tuo audies.*
- d** *si Aulus magnum piscem capiet, eum hodie edemus.*
- e** *nisi donum mihi cras dederis, ululabo.*
- f** *nisi Fabius curret, leporem non capiet.*
- g** *domus certe ruet, nisi parietes refecti erunt.*
- h** *si imperatori epistulam mittes, tibi consilium dabit.*
- i** *si vacca iuvenicum pariet, eum non vendam.*
- j** *nisi tu ad me venies, ego veniam ad te.*

10 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate L ii and iii above.

e.g. *si paratus es, cives manent* → *if you are ready, the citizens are waiting*

- a** *nisi pecuniam comparavisti, fundum amisimus.*
- b** *nisi praedones cavebant, in magno periculo erant.*
- c** *si vos disceditis, nos laeti sumus.*
- d** *si aves canunt, ver appropinquat.*
- e** *si ullam navem vidimus, ad portum cucurrimus.*
- f** *nisi Neapolim vidisti, plane non vixisti.*
- g** *si Clodia te amabat, felicissimus eras.*
- h** *nisi Egnatius ridet, uxor misera est.*
- i** *nisi in agris laborabant, totum diem terebant.*
- j** *si magistratum vituperavi, stultissimus fui.*

11 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate L iv, v and M above.

e.g. *si te offendi, veniam peto* → *if I have offended you, I beg your pardon*

- a** *roga matrem, si eam invenire potes.*
- b** *nisi ianua clausa est, canis effugiet.*

- c** si amphoras fractas vendidi, pecunia tibi reddetur.
- d** si pueri aberant, poenas dabunt.
- e** si Quintum Sempronia amat, certiozem eum faciat.
- f** iuuenis, bibe potionem, nisi times.
- g** si umquam tu me aspectaveras, erubesceram.
- h** proditorem neca, nisi confitebitur.
- i** occasionem cape, si tibi offertur.
- j** si illam urbem pulchram vidisti, vero felix es.

12 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *if you see Milo, greet him for me* → **si Milonem videbis, eum saluta pro me**

- a** If the cook does not burn the peacock, dinner will be excellent.
- b** If Cyrus has broken the vase, he will be punished.
- c** If you (s.) drink the draught, you will enjoy (utor) eternal youth.
- d** The city will be captured unless the ambassador renews the treaty.
- e** If the captives have not been bound, the guards have neglected their duty.
- f** If the bridge has been broken, the army cannot cross.
- g** If Titus shows me the map, I will lead you (pl.) to the cave.
- h** If we ever greeted our patron, he gave us dole money (sportula).
- i** If Valgus is not in the baths, look (s.) for him in the forum.
- j** If the dogs are asleep, the cat walks proudly around the garden.

13 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate N i and ii above.

e.g. **si rota fracta sit, currus ruat** → *if the wheel were broken, the chariot would crash*

- a** si flumen latius sit, id non transeamus.
- b** nisi Manlius adsit, conventus not fiat.
- c** si claves amissi sint, coniurati domum non intrent.
- d** nisi cautus sis, capiaris.

- e** nisi flumen derivetur, oppidum inundetur.
- f** si vas fractum sit, aliquis puniatur.
- g** si Cicero loquatur, plurimi adsint.
- h** si signum detur, milites progrediantur.
- i** si liberi querantur, domi maneant.
- j** nisi praetoriani imperatori faveant, sine dubio depellatur.

14 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate N iii above.

e.g. **si sapientior esset, vobis parceret** → *if he were wiser, he would spare you*

- a** nisi Romani essemus, togas non gereremus.
- b** si pater miles esset, imperium Romanum defenderet.
- c** si minus cautus essem, fures intrarent.
- d** nisi cives superstitiosi essent, deos non colerent.
- e** si peteris, multi tibi subvenirent.
- f** si in urbe essetis, multa spectacula videretis.
- g** si iunior essem, cum athleticis currerem.
- h** nisi legati essemus, interficeremur.
- i** nisi consules adessent, milites minus fortiores essent.
- j** si innocens esses, non timeres.

15 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate N iv and v above.

e.g. **si fortior fuisset, arcam aperisset** → *if I had been braver, I would have opened the box*

- a** nisi Caesar Rubiconem transiisset, bellum non exarsisset.
- b** si anulum conservavisset, invictus esset.
- c** nisi vocem eius audivissent, Publium non invenissent.
- d** nisi Cleopatra pulchra esset, Antonius eam non amavisset.
- e** si monachus linguam Graecam intellexisset, librum legisset.
- f** nisi puer esset, latro eum interfecisset.
- g** si epistolam scrutati essetis, manum agnovissetis.
- h** nisi cibum gustavisset, veneno necatus esset.
- i** si ludos spectavisses, Spartacum vidisses.
- j** si luscinia cecinisset, valde delectati essemus.

16 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *if you were to bribe me, I would support you* → **si me corrumpas, tibi faveam**

- a** If the senators were to expel you (s.), we ourselves would follow you.
- b** If we had seen the danger, we would not have arrived unarmed.
- c** If the road were wider, the wagons would not be blocked (**intercludo**).
- d** If you (pl.) had not believed Lucius, you would have convicted an innocent man.
- e** If we were to sleep among the tombs, the ghosts would frighten us.
- f** If Larcus were kinder, the slaves would like him.
- g** If he were poor, Cassius would be more humble.
- h** If he had consulted the omens, Caesar would not have left.
- i** If they were allies, they would shout the password.
- j** If we were to see the body, we would believe you (s.).

Points to remember

- 1** Final clauses express purpose. They are introduced but **ut** (*so that*) or **ne** (*lest*) and their verbs are in the subjunctive.
- 2** If the verb of the main clause is in the present, future, future perfect, perfect with 'have' or imperative, the verb of the final clause is in the present subjunctive.
- 3** If the verb of the main clause is in the imperfect, pluperfect or perfect without 'have', the verb of the final clause is in the imperfect subjunctive.
- 4** If a final clause contains a comparative adjective or adverb, it is introduced not by **ut**, but by **quo**.

- 5 Consecutive clauses express result. A positive result is introduced by **ut** (*with the result that*), a negative one with **ut non**.
- 6 A consecutive clause is often signposted in the main clause by **tam**, **sic** or **ita** (*so*), **adeo** (*so much*), **tantus-a-um** (*so great*), **talis-is-e** (*such*), **tot** (*so many*) and **totiens** (*so often*).
- 7 The verb of the consecutive clause is in the subjunctive. Its tense remains much the same as it would in English.
- 8 If the result is in the future, then Latin invents a future subjunctive consisting of the future participle and the present subjunctive of the verb *to be*.
- 9 A conditional statement consists of two clauses: the protasis (the condition) and the apodosis (the consequence of the condition).
- 10 An ‘open’ conditional statement, referring to certainties, has the verbs of both clauses in the indicative, e.g. *If it rains, I will stay indoors*. A ‘closed’ one, referring to uncertainties, has both verbs in the subjunctive, e.g. *If I were faster, I would win*.

15

Indirect speech

In this chapter you should aim to

- **master the concept and use of the accusative and infinitive construction**
 - **understand the function of indirect questions, commands and wishes in Latin**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

Indirect statements

A An **indirect statement** is a reported statement which is introduced either by a verb of saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, believing or denying, or by an impersonal verb (Unit 12B). For example, **direct statement** (i.e. the original statement): *the river is teeming with fish*. **Indirect statement** (i.e. the reported statement): *the angler says that the river is teeming with fish*. Or *I can see that the river is teeming with fish*.

B In English we commonly use the conjunction *that* to link the main clause with the indirect statement, although we can leave it out, e.g. *they saw the river was teeming with fish*. In either case the indirect statement has its own finite verb.

However, we could also say *we know the river to be teeming with fish*. In this example the subject of the indirect statement (*river*) has become the object (in the **accusative**) of the main verb (*we know*), while the verb of the indirect statement has changed from a finite

verb into an **infinitive** (*to be teeming*). This is how the Romans used to express themselves and that is why the indirect statement is often called the **accusative and infinitive** construction in Latin. The negative form is introduced by **nego -are -avi -atum** (*I say that ... not, I deny*).

C The tense of the infinitive in an indirect statement is the same as the tense of the original (direct) statement, regardless of the tense of the introductory verb. The tense of the verb of the indirect statement in English *does* depend upon the tense of the introductory verb. You will need to find the correct tense according to the contexts set out below, depending on whether the introductory verb is in the present or future (a) or the past (b).

i A **present infinitive** is used in place of the present tense verb in the original statement. If the original statement is *he is carrying* or *he is being carried*, then the indirect forms are:

e.g. (a) **puto eum portare** → *I think that he is carrying*

(a) **dicemus eum portari** → *we shall say that he is being carried*

(b) **dixi eum portare** → *I have said that he is carrying*

(b) **crediderunt eum portari** → *they believed that he was being carried*

ii A **future infinitive** is used in place of a future tense verb in the original statement. If the original statement is *he will carry* or *he will be carried*, then the indirect forms are:

e.g. (a) **nego eum portaturum esse** → *I say that he will not carry*

(a) **sciunt eum portatum iri** → *they know that he will be carried*

(b) **dicebas eum portaturum esse** → *you used to say that he would carry*

(b) **videramus eum portatum iri** → *we had seen that he would be carried*

iii A **perfect infinitive** is used in place of any past tense verb in the original statement. If the original statement is *he was carrying* or *he was carried* then the indirect forms are:

e.g. (a) **sentimus eum portatum esse** → *we sense that he was carried*

(a) **dicam eum portavisse** → *I shall say that he carried*

(b) **audivistine eum portatum esse?** → *did you hear that he had been carried?*

(b) **negabamus eum portavisse** → *we denied that he had carried*

iv In the case of future active and perfect passive (and deponent) infinitives, the part of the infinitive which declines agrees in number, gender and case with the accusative it refers to.

e.g. **Valerius dicit eam cras navigaturam esse** → *Valerius says that she will sail tomorrow.*

D When the reflexive pronoun **se** (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) (Unit 7B) or the possessive pronoun **suus -a -um** (*his, her, its, their*) (Unit 7C) appear in an indirect statement, they refer to the subject of the **main clause**, whereas, e.g. **eum** or **eius** would refer to someone other than the subject of the main clause.

e.g. **custos dicit se discessurum esse** → *the guard says that he (himself) is going to leave*

e.g. **custos dicit eum discessurum esse** → *the guard says that he (someone else) is going to leave*

E The word **esse** is frequently omitted from perfect and future infinitives in an indirect statement.

e.g. **prima luce Caesar Pompeium necatum scivit** → *at first light Caesar knew that Pompey had been killed*

F The infinitive of an indirect statement can govern its own construction (see e.g. Unit 14O).

e.g. **negat se velle equum conscendere** → *he says he is not willing to mount a horse*

e.g. **dixit fabros arcum perfecturos fuisse si strenue laboravissent** → *he said that the workmen would have finished the arch if they had worked hard*

- G** Indirect statements can depend upon impersonal verbs.
e.g. **constat omnes cives idem consilium cepisse** → *it is agreed that all the citizens adopted the same plan*
- H** Indirect statements introduced by verbs of hoping, promising, threatening and swearing take the accusative and future infinitive.
e.g. **speramus te mox adventurum esse** → *we hope that you will arrive soon*
- I** The accusative and infinitive construction can also be found after the verbs **iubeo** (*I order*), **veto** (*I forbid*), **patior** and **sino** (*I allow*).
e.g. **vos vetamus illos captivos tangere** → *we forbid you to touch those captives*
- J** The construction can also follow **volo** (*I want*), **nolo** (*I do not want*), **malo** (*I prefer*) and **cupio** (*I desire*), if the subject of the indirect statement is different from the subject of the main verb.
e.g. **malo te fundum colere** → *I prefer you to tend to the farm*
- K** It may also follow verbs of rejoicing and grieving.
e.g. **hostes victos esse gaudebant** → *they were rejoicing that the enemy had been beaten*

Indirect questions

A direct question reproduces the exact words of the question: ‘*Sam asked me, “Have you seen my keys?”*’ Compare this with the indirect question ‘*Sam asked me if I had seen his keys.*’

- L** An **indirect question** is a reported question which is introduced by a verb of questioning, enquiring, knowing or telling, and the same interrogative word which introduced the direct question, except that **num** (*if, whether*), may be used to replace the interrogative ending **-ne** (see Unit 7U). Note that the word **num** means something else when it introduces a direct question (see Unit 7U).

M The verb of the indirect question is in the **subjunctive**. Its tense depends upon its context, the tense of the original question and the tense of the main (introductory) verb. As a general rule, the sequence of tenses (Unit 1Y) is followed, although there is a greater variety of subjunctive tenses available for use in the indirect question. Just remember that a **primary** verb in the main clause is always followed by a **primary subjunctive** verb in the indirect question and a **historic** verb in the main clause is always followed by a **historic subjunctive** in the indirect question. Bear in mind also the difference between the perfect tense with ‘have’ (primary) and the perfect tense without ‘have’ (historic).

- i** If the main verb is **primary**, then the verb of the indirect question will be in the **present subjunctive** if the original question was of the present (a), in the **perfect subjunctive** if the original question was of the past (b), and in the composite ‘**future subjunctive**’ (see Unit 9A) if the original question was of the future (c).

| Original question | Possible main verb | Indirect question |
|--|--|---|
| (a) <i>quis est?</i> → <i>Who is it?</i> | <i>rogo</i> → <i>I ask</i> | (a) <i>quis sit</i> → <i>who it is</i> |
| (b) <i>quis fuit?</i> → <i>Who was it?</i> | <i>rogabo</i> → <i>I shall ask</i> | (b) <i>quis fuerit</i> → <i>who it was</i> |
| (c) <i>quis erit?</i> → <i>Who will it be?</i> | <i>rogavi</i> → <i>I have asked</i> <i>rogavero</i> → <i>I shall have asked</i> <i>roga</i> → <i>ask</i> | (c) <i>quis futurus sit</i> → <i>who it will be</i> |

- ii** If the main verb is **historic**, then the verb of the indirect question will be in the **imperfect subjunctive** if the original question was of the present (a), in the **pluperfect subjunctive** if the original question was of the past (b), and in the composite ‘**future perfect subjunctive**’ (see Unit 9A) if the original question was of the future (c).

| Original question | Possible main verb | Indirect question |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| (a) quis est? → <i>Who is it?</i> | rogabam → <i>I was asking</i> | (a) quis esset → <i>who it was</i> |
| (b) quis fuit? → <i>Who was it?</i> | rogavi → <i>I asked</i> | (b) quis fuisset → <i>who it had been</i> |
| (c) quis erit? → <i>Who will it be?</i> | rogaveram → <i>I had asked</i> | (c) quis futurussset → <i>who it would be</i> |

N When the indirect question offers a negative alternative, then **necne** (*or not*) is used.

e.g. **iudex rogavit num Bruti filius patriam prodidisset necne** → *the judge asked whether the son of Brutus had betrayed his country or not*

Indirect commands

O An **indirect command** (see also Unit 16G) is a reported command which can be introduced not only by a verb of commanding or demanding but also by any verb which implies an act of the will, like verbs of decreeing, persuading, requesting, warning, entreating, permitting, urging, encouraging, taking care (that) and resolving, and some impersonal verbs. In English the indirect command is usually expressed by an infinitive.

For example, **direct command** (i.e. the original command): *Open the doors.*

Indirect command (i.e. the reported command): *I told him to open the doors.*

P In Latin, an indirect command which is introduced by any of the verbs **iubeo** (*I order*), **veto** (*I forbid, I order ... not*),

sino (*I allow*) or **patior** (*I allow*), has its verb in the infinitive, as in English.

e.g. **cum vetui hoc facere** → *I forbade him to do this* (or: *I told him not to do this*)

Q Other indirect commands in Latin are introduced by **ut** (negative: **ne**) and a verb in the **subjunctive** which is the equivalent of an infinitive or a ‘that’ clause in English. The tense of the subjunctive depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 1Y).

- ▶ If the verb of the main clause is **primary** (in the imperative or the present, future, future perfect or perfect with ‘have’), then the verb of the indirect command will be in the present subjunctive.

e.g. **philosophi nos persuadent ut pacem amemus** →
philosophers persuade us to love peace

- ▶ If the verb of the main clause is **historic** (perfect without ‘have’, imperfect or pluperfect), then the verb of the indirect command will be in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

e.g. **agricola saepe te monebat ne mala surriperes** → *the farmer often used to warn you not to steal the apples*

- ▶ Sometimes the word **ut** is omitted after **rogo** (*I ask*), **moneo** (*I warn*), **suadeo** (*I persuade*), **impero** (*I order*), **curo** (*I take care [that]*), **neesse est** (*it is necessary*), **licet** (*it is allowed*) and **oportet** (*it behoves*).

e.g. **moneo vos quam celerrime discedatis** → *I warn you to depart as quickly as possible*

Indirect wishes

R An **indirect wish** is a reported wish (compare clauses of fear in Unit 16E). It is introduced by a verb of wishing like **cupio** (*I desire*), **opto** (*I choose*), **volo** (*I want*), **nolo** (*I do not want*) or **malo** (*I prefer*) and by the conjunction **ut** (negative: **ne**) and a subjunctive verb. (Some of these verbs also take the accusative

and infinitive construction. See Unit 15J). The verb of the indirect wish is an optative subjunctive (Unit 9H). Present and perfect subjunctives are used to refer to wishes for the future, the imperfect subjunctive is used to refer to wishes for the present and the pluperfect subjunctive is used to refer to wishes for the past. e.g. *cupivit ut tu mansisses* → *he wished that you had stayed*

1 Translate the following into English. They illustrate C i above.

e.g. *dixit catellos in horto ludere* → *he said that the puppies were playing in the garden*

- a nuntiavimus navem desertam appropinquare.
- b saepe dico eam felicem esse.
- c Galli negaverunt Druides celari.
- d dicam te vestiri.
- e putasne Septimum animalia alere?
- f num dixisti custodes dormire?
- g negant Catilinam innocentem esse.
- h videbitis me fortissimum esse.
- i cives credunt vos praetermitti.
- j omnes sciunt Carthaginienses perfidos esse.

2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C ii above.

e.g. *video Titum pulchrum fore* (or *futurum esse*) → *I see that Titus is going to be handsome*

- a sciebamus coniuratos necatum iri.
- b puto Catilinam nos relicturum esse.
- c putasne meas fabulas ab actoribus notissimis actum iri?
- d sciverasne Marium comprehensum iri?
- e nonne videtis Gallos vicum incensuros esse?
- f negabas Caesarem dictatorem fore.
- g praedones non crediderunt insulam defensum iri.
- h dux nuntiavit exercitum statim profecturum esse.
- i tibi dixi Helenam cras discessuram esse.
- j negat puellam lectum iri.

3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C iii above.

e.g. *dicat rationes probatas esse* → *he says that the accounts have been approved*

- a** *dicisne eam Tiberio nupsisse?*
- b** *scimus agricolas vaccas omnes vendidisse.*
- c** *putabamus patriam a Cicerone servatam esse.*
- d** *nonne vides hunc equum lautum esse?*
- e** *exploratores nuntiaverunt novas copias advenisse.*
- f** *negabimus senem aurum invenisse.*
- g** *Valerius dixit haruspicem mentitum esse.*
- h** *negasne te hanc feminam umquam vidisse?*
- i** *videmus hospites bene oblectatos esse.*
- j** *custodes negabant captivum vinctum esse.*

4 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate D above.

e.g. *Caesar dixit suos Gallos superaturos esse* → *Caesar said his men would beat the Gauls*

- a** *Quintus sciebat se poenas pro scelere suo non daturum esse.*
- b** *Marius putabat se necatum iri.*
- c** *Cato iuvenem castigavit et dixit se eum incusaturum esse.*
- d** *cives nesciunt se a Tarquinio deceptos esse.*
- e** *Marcus negavit se arborem succidisse.*
- f** *milites negaverunt se effugisse.*
- g** *Egnatius dicit se a praedonibus spoliatum esse.*
- h** *senatores nuntiaverant se Pompeium electuros esse.*
- i** *Sempronia putavit se cultrum invenisse.*
- j** *scriba negat se haec verba scripsisse.*

5 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate E, F and G above.

e.g. *fossor scit aurum ibi inventum* → *the miner knows that gold has been found there*

- a** *dictum est Romanos bello intractabiles esse.*
- b** *nego nos captum iri si lente ambulemus.*

- c** negavistine te captum?
- d** Horatius dixit se pontem custoditurum.
- e** constat Marium Romam servavisse.
- f** dictum est delphinum in portum navisse.
- g** nesciebamus te picturam picturum.
- h** negatum erat Augustum aegrum esse.
- i** non putabam cives Cornelium umquam electuros fuisse nisi ab eo corrupti essent.
- j** scio te tutum futurum esse si mea verba respicias.

6 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate H, I, J and K above.

e.g. **spero vos semper felices fore** (or **futuros esse**) → *I hope that you will always be fortunate*

- a** nonne promittes te mecum iter facturum esse?
- b** hostes minantur se urbem incensuros esse.
- c** iuro me semper fidelem fore.
- d** patronus pollicitus est se dona clientibus daturum esse.
- e** iubesne me ab urbe discedere?
- f** magistratus vetuit pistorum collegium condere.
- g** sperabamus vos fundum empturos esse.
- h** Publius gaudet avum suum convalescere.
- i** volo te aquam de fonte portare.
- j** lugemus Ciceronem necatum esse.

7 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *Lucius thinks he is being watched by a gnome* → **Lucius putat se a terricula spectari**

- a** Calpurnia thinks she will be attacked by the dog.
- b** Catullus knows that he loves Clodia.
- c** I know that the fox will escape if the gate is opened.
- d** It has been said that Nero killed his own mother.
- e** They have promised that the new statue is not going to fall.
- f** Do you (s.) forbid me to eat beans?
- g** They are unwilling for us to see the new carpet.

- h** I rejoice that your wife is pregnant.
- i** He swears that he will avenge his father.
- j** We hope that she will catch the tortoise.

8 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate Mi and N above.

e.g. **Tullia rogat cur feles in culina ludat** → *Tullia asks why the cat is playing in the kitchen*

- a** Caelia rogat num fabri cras laboraturi sint.
- b** rogabo num Hortensius liberos ducturus sit necne.
- c** rogavi quando regina advenerit.
- d** Tullius rogabit Decimum num aurum inventum sit.
- e** Decius non vult rogare quomodo id acciderit.
- f** pueri, rogate matrem num poetam audire velit.
- g** rogavistine me num laetus sim?
- h** rogavimus num Servius Caeciliam amet necne.
- i** tribuni rogabunt quis consilium patefacturus sit.
- j** roga quot plaustra sint.

9 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate Mii and N.

e.g. **rogavi ubi aurum inventum esset** → *I asked where the gold had been found*

- a** rogavimus cur puellae non cantarent.
- b** fossores rogaverunt num mercedes accepturi essent necne.
- c** num rogavisti num Titus Liviam osculatus esset?
- d** non rogaveram quem dux electurus esset.
- e** Romulus non rogavit quid accidisset.
- f** ductor nos rogaverat quomodo iter faceremus.
- g** semper rogabant quando ibi adventuri essent.
- h** rogaveramus quotiens Marius consul fuisset.
- i** nonne Sulla rogavit num exercitus victus esset?
- j** volo videre num larva ventura sit necne.

10 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *I shall ask whether the guests have arrived* → **rogabo num hospites advenerint**

- a** Have you (s.) asked whether the gates are closed or not?
- b** Ask (s.) whether the boys are working in the garden.
- c** We used to ask whether the statue was alive.
- d** He had asked whether you (s.) were a farmer.
- e** The citizens are asking who will be queen.
- f** Did he ask if I had been wounded?
- g** They are asking whether dinner is ready.
- h** I had asked whether Marius would arrive.
- i** The maidservant is asking whether you (s.) are asleep or not.
- j** Who knows what happened?

11 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate O, P and Q above.

e.g. **mandata eis dedi ut collem ascendant** → *I have given them orders to climb the hill*

- a** anus regem monet ut libros emat.
- b** Stephanus domino persuasit ut Furium manumitteret.
- c** Holconius curat ut novae thermae aedificentur.
- d** Sextus vetabatur potionem tangere.
- e** agricolae postulabunt ut rex se abdicet.
- f** hortati sumus Plautum ut fabulas scriberet.
- g** iubebimus Terentium cenam coquere.
- h** Iuppiter Minervae permiserat ut Graecis subveniret.
- i** mater nos sinet pullos agitare.
- j** imperavit nobis ut pavimentum lavemus.

12 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate R above.

e.g. **cupit ut tu ibi nunc adesses** → *he wishes that you were there now*

- a** cupimus ut pater ursum nobis demonstret.
- b** optaveramus ne Lucius ebrius esset.

- c volo ut tu mihi nubas.
- d Cicero cupivit ut Catilina interfectus esset.
- e omnes malumus ut tu domi maneat.
- f baiuli cupiunt ne onera gravia sint.
- g volo ut anulum invenissem.
- h voluisti ut Cato electus esset.
- i visne ut thesaurus inventus esset?
- j Hadrianus cupit ut murus aedificetur.

13 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *he has warned the citizens not to expect much* → **cives monuit ne multa expectent**

- a I demand (**postulo**) that you (s.) free the slave.
- b They are urging (**hortor**) us to attack the camp.
- c I took care (**curo**) that the togas would not be dirty.
- d Order (**impero**) (s.) the guard not to sleep.
- e I implore (**obsecro**) you (pl.) not to kill Caesar.
- f We warned (**moneo**) you (s.) not to wander into the woods.
- g We desire (**cupio**) that you (s.) depart from the palace.
- h They had forbidden (**veto**) the boys to swim in the river.
- i She had persuaded (**persuadeo**) him to eat the apple.
- j We shall permit (**permitto**) them to buy the horse.

Points to remember

- 1 An indirect statement is a reported statement introduced not only by verbs of saying but also verbs of perception. The introductory verb is followed by the accusative and infinitive. The tense of the infinitive depends upon the tense of the original statement.
- 2 When the subjects of indirect statements refer to themselves, the reflexive pronoun is used, e.g. **scit se convalescere** (*He knows he is getting better*).

- 3 An indirect question is a reported question introduced either by the original question word or **num** (*whether, if*) with a subjunctive verb. The tense of the verb depends upon its context.
- 4 If the main verb of an indirect question is primary, the subordinate verb will be in the present, perfect or the invented future subjunctive.
- 5 If the main verb of an indirect question is historic, the subordinate verb will be in the imperfect, pluperfect or the invented future perfect subjunctive.
- 6 A indirect command is a reported command introduced not only by verbs of commanding but also by verbs of persuading, warning, encouraging, decreeing, urging, taking care that, permitting, etc.
- 7 Indirect commands which follow **iubeo** (*I order*), **veto** (*I forbid*), **sino** or **patior** (*I allow*) use an infinitive, as in English.
- 8 Indirect commands which follow other verbs are introduced by **ut** or **ne** (negative) and have a subjunctive verb, in the present or imperfect, according to the sequence of tenses.
- 9 An indirect wish is a reported wish, introduced by a verb of wishing and the conjunction **ut** (negative **ne**) and followed by a subjunctive verb.
- 10 Wishes for the future are expressed by a present or perfect subjunctive, those for the present by an imperfect subjunctive and those for the past by a pluperfect subjunctive.

16

Other subordinate clauses

In this chapter you should aim to

- **understand the function of all the remaining subordinate clauses in Latin**
 - **attempt the exercises at the end of the chapter**
-

Concessive clauses

A Concessive clauses are those which indicate a concession (*although*). They are introduced by the concessive conjunctions (Unit 6F) **etsi**, **etiamsi** or **tametsi** (*even if, even though*), **quamquam**, **quamvis**, **ut** (negative **ne**), **licet** (*although*) or **cum** (*whereas*).

- ▶ If the clause is introduced by **quamquam**, then its verb will be in the **indicative**. (Some later writers used it with the subjunctive.)
e.g. **quamquam** pons deletus est, ego flumen transivi →
although the bridge was destroyed, I crossed the river
- ▶ If the clause is introduced by **quamvis**, **licet**, **ut** or **cum** then its verb will be in the **subjunctive**.
e.g. **quamvis** pons deletus sit, ego flumen transivi → *although the bridge was destroyed, I crossed the river*
- ▶ If the clause is introduced by **etsi**, **etiamsi** or **tametsi** (even though), then the mood of its verb is decided by the same rules as for conditionals (Unit 14J–O). Generally it is in:
 - i** the **indicative** if the concession did occur, is occurring or will occur.

e.g. *etiamsi pons deletus erat, ego flumen transivi* → *even though the bridge had been destroyed, I crossed the river*

or

- ii the **subjunctive**, if the concession might have occurred, may be occurring or might occur. The subjunctive verb in the main clause is commonly translated into English by the words *would* or *should*.

e.g. *etsi pons deletus esset, ego flumen transivissem* → *even if the bridge had been destroyed, I would have crossed the river*

Causal clauses

B Causal clauses indicate the reason for something (*because*). They are introduced by **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quando** → *because*, *since*, and **cum** → *since*.

- ▶ In causal clauses introduced by **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam** or **quando**, when the person (author or character) stating the reason is also supporting the reason as true, then the verb of the clause is in the **indicative**.

e.g. *te non vocavi quod dormiebas* → *I did not call you because you were asleep*

However, when the speaker gives a reason with which others, including the speaker, may not agree, then the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**.

e.g. *Romani victi sunt quod perfidi essemus* → *the Romans were beaten (some say) because we were treacherous*

- ▶ When **cum** introduces a causal clause, then its verb is in the **subjunctive**, whether the speaker vouches for the reason or not.
- ▶ The verb of a causal clause introduced by the relative pronoun **qui** or **quippe qui** (*since*, *for in fact*, *doubtless*, *because* [often sarcastic]) is in the **subjunctive** (see Unit 13H).

Clauses of proviso

C A clause of proviso is introduced by **dum**, **dummodo** or **modo** (*provided that*). The construction is really an extension of the temporal clause **dum** (*as long as*) (Unit 13K). However, the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**. A negative clause of proviso is introduced by **dum ne**.

e.g. **oderint dum metuant** → *let them hate provided that they fear*

e.g. **in horto ludant dum flores ne carpant** → *let them play in the garden provided that they do not pick the flowers*

Clauses of comparison

D In a clause of comparison the action of the clause is compared with the action of the main clause.

- ▶ If the comparison is being made with something that is an actual fact, then the clause is introduced by **velut**, **sicut** (*just as*) or **ut** (*as*) (often with **ita** in the main clause), and the verb of the clause is in the **indicative**.

e.g. **Caesar postridie necatus est, sicut vates praedixerat** → *Caesar was killed on the following day, just as the prophet had predicted*

- ▶ If the comparison is being made with an event that is imaginary, then the clause is introduced by **quasi**, **ut si**, **velut si** (*as if*), or **ceu**, **tamquam** (*as though*), and the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**.

e.g. **mihi mandata insolenter dedit, quasi servus quidam essem** → *he gave me the instructions haughtily, as if I were some slave*

Clauses of fear

- E** ▶ These are introduced by a verb of fearing such as **timeo**, **vereor** or **metuo** and the conjunction **ne**. They express fear about something that is happening, may happen or has happened and the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**.
- ▶ The tense of the subjunctive usually depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 1Y) but when you come to translate extended passages of Latin, it is always necessary to take account of the context in which these clauses appear in order to get the most appropriate tense in your English translation. For example, **vereor ne captivi necentur** can mean either *I am afraid that (lest) the captives are being killed* or *I am afraid that (lest) the captives may be killed*.
 - ▶ If the fear is that something will *not* happen, then **ne non** (or sometimes **ut**) is used.
e.g. **timemus ne milites non adveniant** → *we are afraid that the soldiers may not come*

Clauses of doubting

- F** ▶ A clause which expresses positive doubt and is introduced by, e.g. **dubito** (*I doubt*), **dubium est** (*it is doubtful*) or **incertum est** (*it is uncertain*), is treated as an **indirect question** (Unit 15L–M). The verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**.
e.g. **dubium erat utrum Tiberius adveniret necne** → *it was doubtful whether Tiberius would arrive or not*
- ▶ Note the phrases **dubito an** (*I am inclined to think that*), and **dubito num** (*I doubt if [or whether]*).
e.g. **dubitavit an Pompeius cederet** → *he was inclined to think that Pompey would yield*
e.g. **dubitavi num de hoc audires** → *I doubted whether you would hear about this*
 - ▶ When **dubito**, **dubium est** or other expressions of doubt introduce a negative doubt or occur in questions (often accompanied by the archaic **haud** [*not*]), they are followed

by a clause introduced by **quin** (*but that* or *that ... not*) (see below), which has its verb in the **subjunctive**.

e.g. **haud dubium est quin regina captivis parcat** → *there is no doubt but that the queen will spare the prisoners (or there is no doubt that the queen will spare the prisoners.)*

e.g. **quis dubitat quin Verres innocens sit?** → *who doubts but that Verres is innocent?*

Clauses of hindering, preventing and forbidding

G In English these clauses usually consist of *from* with a participle or an infinitive after *forbid*, e.g. *The storm prevents us from entering the harbour, I forbid you to do that*. Compare the indirect command in Unit 150–Q.

i The verb **veto** (*I forbid*), takes the accusative of the person ordered and a prolativum infinitive (Unit 11J) of the action forbidden.

e.g. **Titus vetuit milites oppugnare** → *Titus forbade the soldiers to attack*; or, in more natural English, *Titus told the soldiers not to attack*.

ii Apart from **veto** and **prohibeo** (*I prevent* – see below), all other verbs of hindering, preventing or forbidding are followed by a clause with a **subjunctive** verb.

iii If the main clause contains a positive prohibition, then the subordinate clause is introduced by **ne** or **quominus** (*so that ... not*).

e.g. **luto impedimur ne viam transeamus** → *we are hindered from crossing the road by mud*

iv If the main clause contains a negative prohibition, e.g. **non impedio** (*I do not hinder*), then the subordinate clause is introduced by **quominus** or **quin**.

e.g. **non nos impedit quin in via ludamus** → *he is not hindering us from playing in the road*

- v The verb **prohibeo** (*I prevent*) can either take the same construction as **veto** or the construction in **iii** or **iv** above.
 - e.g. **prohibuit agricolas agros arare** → *he prevented the farmers from ploughing their fields*
 - e.g. **Quintus Fabius milites prohibuit quominus Carthaginienses oppugnarent** → *Quintus Fabius prevented the soldiers from attacking the Carthaginians*

The use of **quin**

quin (*but that, that ... not*) is the shortened form of an archaic interrogative adverb **quine** (*how not, why not?*). Apart from being used in clauses of doubting (see F) and hindering (see G), **quin** is also used after some other expressions which involve negatives.

H Usually **quin** introduces a consecutive clause (Unit 14F) and some other clauses, when it is used as the equivalent of **ut ... non**. It is followed by the **subjunctive**.

e.g. **nullus tyrannus tam potens est quin deleri possit** → *no tyrant is so powerful that he cannot be destroyed (or no tyrant is so powerful but that he can be destroyed)*

e.g. **non potest fieri quin hic Verres convincatur** → *it cannot happen that this man Verres is not convicted (or it cannot happen but that this man Verres is convicted)*

I In expressions like **nemo est quin** (*There is no-one who ... not*), **quin** acts like a relative pronoun followed by **non** (*not*). It is followed by the **subjunctive**.

e.g. **nemo est his temporibus quin tale scelus admittere audeat** → *there is no-one in these times who would not dare to commit such a crime*

J **quin** can also be used with its original meaning as an adverb (*how not, why not*) to introduce **direct questions**, followed by the **subjunctive**.

e.g. **quin nos clementiam de imperatore petamus?** → *why should we not ask for mercy from the general?*

K **quin** can be used as an emphasizing adverb at the start of a statement which supports or emphasizes something which has been stated previously. Unusually, in this usage **quin** does not have a negative sense. It may be followed by the indicative. It is best translated as *indeed* or *in fact*.

e.g. **multos clientes ille patronus habet quin Cassius interest** →
That patron has many clients. In fact Cassius is among them.

L **quin** may be used as an emphasizing adverb to reinforce an imperative. It is best translated as *well* or *well then*.

e.g. **quin eos oppugnat, milites!** → *well then, attack them, soldiers!*

1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate concessive clauses.

e.g. **quamquam dives sum, te non spernam** → *although I am rich, I shall not spurn you*

- a** **quamquam** femina pulchra erat, avarus eam suspicatus est.
- b** **quamvis** signum captum esset, legionarii fortiter pugnauerunt.
- c** **licet** tabernarii inurbani sint, multas tamen stolas emam.
- d** **ut** gladius in saxo infixus sit, Arturus eum extrahet.
- e** **quamquam** Gaius modo septem annos natus est, nihilominus inter iuvenes ludit.
- f** **etsi** vesperascit, pueri in silvas repunt.
- g** **etiamsi** pater discessit, strenue laboramus.
- h** **tametsi** gladiator ingens est, cum eo pugnabo.
- i** **quamquam** avum meum numquam vidisti, eum certe amabis.
- j** **tametsi** exercitus non paratus fuisset, barbaros superavissemus.

2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate causal clauses.

e.g. **Iulius abest quod aeger sit** → *Julius is away because, some say, he is ill*

- a** Aemilia Caelium non amat quod pater eius pauper sit.
- b** Cicero coniuratos interfecit quia respublica in maximo periculo esset.
- c** Quintus non venabitur quippe qui feras timeat.

- d** senex sero adveniet quod sero discessit.
- e** Cassius Caesarem odit quod Romam amet.
- f** canem expuli quia felem insequabatur.
- g** es dives Cassius quoniam felix sis.
- h** harundines comparaverunt quando cras piscabuntur.
- i** cum iter certe longum sit tecum ibo.
- j** pueri altercantur quoniam fessi sunt.

3 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use the conjunctions provided.

e.g. *we are weeping because the enemy are here* → **lacrimamus quod hostes adsunt**

- a** Although (**quamvis**) Alexander had been wounded, he fought more fiercely.
- b** Although (**quamquam**) Gaius is lazy, he will repair the wheel.
- c** Even if (**etsi**) you (s.) had killed the king, we would not have escaped.
- d** Even though (**etsi**) the river was very wide, we reached the bank.
- e** The mice are playing because (**quia**) the cat is away.
- f** Rome was burnt, some say, because (**quod**) Nero wanted to build a new palace.
- g** The king has summoned me doubtless because (**quippe qui**) he admires me.
- h** The prince will come because (**cum**) he loves you (s.).
- i** Titus will not fight because (**quoniam**) he is gentle.
- j** Although (**quamquam**) we cannot see you (pl.), we can hear your (pl.) words.

4 Translate the following into English. They illustrate C above.

e.g. **me conducet dum ne stertam** → *he will hire me provided that I do not snore*

- a** cenent pueri dum se laverint.
- b** hodie dormiant fabri dummodo cras strenue laborent.
- c** invita Caecilium dum fratrem ne ducat.
- d** stolam eligam dummodo tu eam emas.

- e liberi loquantur dum inter se ne pugnent.
- f illos iuvenes certe videbis dummodo puellae quoque adsint.
- g pueri fabulam spectent dummodo taceant.
- h domum explorete pueri, dum in illam partem ne erretis.
- i maritum eligat filia tua dum eum amet.
- j canes in atrio ludant dum ne quid frangant.

5 Translate the following into English. They illustrate D above.

e.g. *Caesar se gerebat tamquam rex esset* → *Caesar behaved as if he were a king*

- a panem pauper consumit velut si non iterum edat.
- b lupa pueros alebat ut si catuli essent.
- c pueri ludunt sicut viri laborant.
- d cur locutus es quasi Catilina non proditor esset?
- e filius meus pecuniam impendit velut si patrimonium exceperit.
- f leo in spelunca vero habitat sicut saepe confirmas.
- g iuvenes navigant ceu venti non fortes sint.
- h candidatus novas thermas aedificavit ut promisit.
- i spectatores plauserunt tamquam fabula conclusa esset.
- j poeta viros sapientiores facit sicut magister pueros docet.

6 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate E above.

e.g. *timesne ne pater nos non eripiat?* → *are you afraid that Father may not rescue us?*

- a piscatores metuebant ne retia frangerentur.
- b duces timent ne novae copiae non adveniant.
- c veremur ne Titus arcam non inveniatur.
- d pastor veritus est ne agnam lupi cepissent.
- e magister timebat ne liberi in silvas ambulavissent.
- f athletae metuunt ne praemia non auferant.
- g metuebam ne pecuniam non compararem.
- h Cassius timuerat ne proditor consilium consulibus patefecisset.
- i estne periculum ne capiamur?
- j timebam ne Caesar Rubiconem transiisset.

7 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *I am afraid that the Trojans may attack* → **timeo ne Troiani oppugnent**

- a Rufus carries a sword as though (**tamquam**) he is a soldier.
- b Let the young men approach, provided that (**dummodo**) they are unarmed.
- c There was a danger that the wall would collapse.
- d The conspirator persuaded the assassin just as (**sicut**) the serpent beguiles its prey.
- e Let Cicero come provided that (**dum**) he does not (**ne**) speak.
- f Were they afraid that Sulla would find him?
- g I shall dine with (**apud**) you tomorrow, Titus, provided that your wine is good.
- h He looked at me as if (**quasi**) he had seen me before.
- i I was afraid that the scouts had not found food.
- j He paraded (**traduco**) the captives as though (**ceu**) they were slaves.

8 Translate the following into English. They illustrate F above.

e.g. **dubito num tua verba vera sint** → *I doubt whether your words are true*

- a **dubitaveramus num ad tempus advenires.**
- b **quis dubitavit quin Cicero servum liberet?**
- c **dubium est num Carthaginienses re vera victi sint.**
- d **dubitaverunt num Valerius testamentum scripsisset.**
- e **incertum est unde advena venerit.**
- f **dubitavisti an talis candidatus pessimus esset.**
- g **dubium erat num Ulysses domum rediret.**
- h **Caesar dubitavit an Cassius non fidelis esset.**
- i **Cloelia dubitavit an virgines sequerentur.**
- j **haud dubium erat quin navis demergeretur.**

9 Translate the following into English. They illustrate G above.

e.g. **Titus non me prohibebit quin cantem** → *Titus will not prevent me from singing*

- a Valerius deterruit pueros ne iter longum facerent.
- b magistratus vetuerunt cives legatos accipere.
- c interdictum est nobis ne illum proditorem defendamus.
- d rex captivos non prohibuit quin liberentur.
- e custodes impediabantur quominus portas aperirent.
- f vetabuntne nos sacrificium tangere?
- g centurio prohibuit legionarios diu dormire.
- h oneribus gravibus asini impediuntur quominus pontem transeant.
- i nihil obstat quin nos amici simus.
- j num nos impediēs ne gladiatores videamus?

10 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *why do you doubt but that Titus loves you?* → **cur dubitas quin Titus te amet?**

- a The Gauls were hindered (**impedio**) from crossing the river by the flood (**gurgēs**).
- b Portia has forbidden (**veto**) us to annoy the geese.
- c There is no doubt but that the Romans will burn the village.
- d The omens do not hinder (**impedio**) the general from setting out.
- e Cornelius, will you prevent (**prohibeo**) the dogs from attacking my son?
- f We were inclined to think that you (s.) would prefer to leave.
- g I doubt if Servius is able to ride.
- h Certain people doubted whether Augustus would like the poem.
- i Magistrates, prevent (**prohibeo**) that man from entering the house.
- j It is doubtful whether the workmen have finished the bridge.

11 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate H and I above.

e.g. **nemo est quin domum meam amet** → *there is no-one who does not like my house*

- a nullus miles tam fortiter pugnabat quin praemia mereat.
- b non potest fieri quin Claudius eligatur.
- c nulla femina tam dives erat quin prudens esset.

- d** nemo erat quin Alexandrum Magnum sequeretur.
- e** nemo est quin Brutum admiretur.
- f** nullus puer est tam bonus quin mala mea furetur.
- g** non potest fieri quin Caesar dictator fiat.
- h** non potest fieri quin Cloelia reddatur.
- i** nemo est quin oratori illo credat.
- j** nullus dux est tam durus quin captivis parcat.

12 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate J, K and L above.

e.g. **quin Iuliettam petam?** → *why should I not woo Juliet?*

- a** quin tribunus consuli resistat?
- b** is gladiator notissimus est; quin libertus mox erit.
- c** quin serva infantem, frater!
- d** quin fugitivus hic maneat?
- e** iuvenes fortissimi erant; quin Hercules leonem interfecerat.
- f** quin emovete gregem, pastores.
- g** quin mater filium amet?
- h** quin agite, pueri, pilam capite.
- i** quin eam pilam videre potueris?
- j** quin eos flores carpamus?

13 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *I am not so deaf that I cannot hear you* → **non tam surdus sum quin te audire possim**

- a** Caecilius is not so poor that he cannot buy a bigger house.
- b** It cannot happen that the treaty is not renewed.
- c** There was no-one who did not know about the wedding.
- d** No knot is so complicated that it cannot be undone.
- e** How should Sextus not believe us?
- f** Quintus does not like me; in fact yesterday he cursed me.
- g** Why should Felix not sell the horse?
- h** There is no soldier who does not fear death.
- i** Well then, seize the day, children.
- j** Why should I not resist such a cruel master?

Points to remember

- 1** A concessive clause indicates a concession (*although*). If it is introduced by **quamquam** (*although*), it contains an indicative verb.
- 2** If a concessive clause is introduced by **quamvis, ut, licet** (*although*) or **cum** (*whereas*), it contains a subjunctive verb.
- 3** If a concessive clause is introduced by **etsi, etiamsi, tametsi** (*even if*), the mood of the verb is the same as for conditionals.
- 4** A causal clause indicates the reason for something. If the speaker agrees with the reason, the verb is in the indicative, if not, the verb is in the subjunctive.
- 5** A clause of proviso is introduced by **dum, dummodo** or **modo** (*provided that*) or **dum ne** (*negative*). The verb is in the subjunctive.
- 6** In a clause of comparison the action of the clause is compared with the action of the main clause. If the comparison is a fact, the verb is in the indicative, if not the verb is in the subjunctive.
- 7** A clause of fear is introduced by a verb of fearing followed by **ne** and a subjunctive verb, usually following the sequence of tenses.
- 8** A clause which expresses positive doubt is introduced by a verb of doubting and has a verb in the subjunctive, as in indirect questions. Negative doubts are introduced by the conjunction **quin** (*but that*) and have a subjunctive verb.
- 9** In a clause of hindering, preventing or forbidding, if the introductory verb is **veto** (*I forbid*), the accusative and construction is used.
- 10** In a clause of hindering, preventing or forbidding, if the introductory verb is not **veto** (*I forbid*), the verb of the clause is in the subjunctive, introduced by **ne, quominus** or **quin**.

Miscellaneous

In this chapter you should aim to

- **learn about Roman dates, money, measures, names, places, inscriptions and history, as well as the extensive use of Latin today**

A Dates

Roman years can be reckoned **Ab Urbe Condita** (*from the founding of the city* [literally from the founded city]). This is often abbreviated to **AUC**. 753 years must be added to a date **CE** while a date **BCE** must be taken away from 754 to get the Roman year.

e.g. **MMDCCCLIV AUC** → 2754 years from the founding of the city
→ 2001 **CE**

Years after the institution of the republic in 510 **BCE** can also be recorded as ‘the year in which x and y were consuls’. In such phrases the names of the consuls are in an ablative absolute with the word **consulibus** (sometimes abbreviated to **coss**) (see Unit 13V).

e.g. **P. Cornelio Scipione Ti. Sempronio Longo coss.** → *When Publius Cornelius Scipio and Tiberius Sempronius Longus were consuls.* → 218 **BCE**.

B The Roman year was divided into 12 months. The titles of the months are adjectives used in agreement with the implied word **mensis** (*month*) or with the special days mentioned in C below.

Most of them are the words we still use. The names Quintilis and Sextilis were changed in honour of Julius Caesar and Augustus.

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Januarius -a -um | Julius -a -um (Quintilis -is -e) |
| Februarius -a -um | Augustus -a -um (Sextilis -is -e) |
| Martius -a -um | September -bris |
| Aprilis -is -e | October -bris |
| Maius -a -um | November -bris |
| Junius -a -um | December -bris |

C Roman months were 29 and 30 days long alternately. They had no equivalent of a week but did divide their months up into periods between three significant days in each month. The names of these days are feminine and plural:

- ▶ **Kalendae -arum** *the Kalends*. The first day of the month.
- ▶ **Nonae -arum** *the Nones*. The seventh day of March, July, October and May, but the fifth day of the other months.
- ▶ **Idus -uum** *the Ides*. The fifteenth day of March, July, October and May, but the thirteenth day of the other months.

If a date is one of these days, it is expressed in the ablative with the adjective of the month in agreement with it. It is also normally abbreviated.

e.g. **Id(ibus) Mar(tiis)** → *on the Ides of March* → on 15th March

If a date is the day before one of these days, it is expressed by **pridie** ([*on*] *the day before*), followed by the accusative of the day. It is sometimes abbreviated to **prid**.

e.g. **prid. Non(as) Mar(tias)** → *on the day before the Nones of March* → on 6th March.

All other dates are reckoned as being so many days **ante diem** (*before the next named day*, normally abbreviated to **a.d.**). The whole phrase is in the accusative. Unusually, when the Romans calculated this they included both the date and the named day in the interval.

| | April | May |
|------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1st | Kal. Apr. | Kal. Mai. |
| 2nd | a.d. IV Non. Apr. | a.d. VI Non. Mai. |
| 3rd | a.d. III Non. Apr. | a.d. V Non. Mai. |
| 4th | prid. Non. Apr. | a.d. IV Non. Mai. |
| 5th | Non. Apr. | a.d. III Non. Mai. |
| 6th | a.d. VIII Id. Apr. | prid. Non. Mai. |
| 7th | a.d. VII Id. Apr. | Non. Mai. |
| 8th | a.d. VI Id. Apr. | a.d. VIII Id. Mai. |
| 9th | a.d. V Id. Apr. | a.d. VII Id. Mai. |
| 10th | a.d. IV Id. Apr. | a.d. VI Id. Mai. |
| 11th | a.d. III Id. Apr. | a.d. V Id. Mai. |
| 12th | prid. Id. Apr. | a.d. IV Id. Mai. |
| 13th | Id. Apr. | a.d. III Id. Mai. |
| 14th | a.d. XVIII Kal. Mai. | prid. Id. Mai. |
| 15th | a.d. XVII Kal. Mai. | Id. Mai. |
| 16th | a.d. XVI Kal. Mai. | a.d. XVII Kal. Iun. |

| | April | May |
|------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 17th | a.d. XV Kal. Mai. | a.d. XVI Kal. Iun. |
| 18th | a.d. XIV Kal. Mai. | a.d. XV Kal. Iun. |
| 19th | a.d. XIII Kal. Mai. | a.d. XIV Kal. Iun. |
| 20th | a.d. XII Kal. Mai. | a.d. XIII Kal. Iun. |
| 21st | a.d. XI Kal. Mai. | a.d. XII Kal. Iun. |
| 22nd | a.d. X Kal. Mai. | a.d. XI Kal. Iun. |
| 23rd | a.d. IX Kal. Mai. | a.d. X Kal. Iun. |
| 24th | a.d. VIII Kal. Mai. | a.d. IX Kal. Iun. |
| 25th | a.d. VII Kal. Mai. | a.d. VIII Kal. Iun. |
| 26th | a.d. VI Kal. Mai. | a.d. VII Kal. Iun. |
| 27th | a.d. V Kal. Mai. | a.d. VI Kal. Iun. |
| 28th | a.d. IV Kal. Mai. | a.d. V Kal. Iun. |
| 29th | a.d. III Kal. Mai. | a.d. IV Kal. Iun. |
| 30th | prid. Kal. Mai. | a.d. III Kal. Iun. |
| 31st | | prid. Kal. Iun. |

e.g. **a.d. III Non. Mar.** → **ante diem tertium Nonas Martias** → three days *before the Nones of March* (including the **Nones** and the date mentioned) → on 5th March

D The sample months shown on page 262 are enough to give a guide to the dates of any month in the year. They have been modified for the Gregorian calendar with months of 30 or 31 days.

E The Romans frequently had to add days or even months to years in order to make up for the difference between their calendar year and the solar year and in 45 BCE Julius Caesar revised their calendar. In the leap years 24th February (a.d. VI Kal. Mar.) was counted twice and called **dies bisextus**.

F After Constantine legalized Christianity the seven days of the week officially acquired Latin names in 321 CE. Some of these survive in modern European Romance languages today. Even English still has Saturday.

| | | |
|---------------------|---|-----------|
| dies Solis | <i>day of the sun</i> | Sunday |
| dies Lunae | <i>day of the moon</i> | Monday |
| dies Martis | <i>day of Mars</i> (god of war) | Tuesday |
| dies Mercuri | <i>day of Mercury</i> (the messenger god) | Wednesday |
| dies Iovis | <i>day of Jupiter</i> (king of the gods) | Thursday |
| dies Veneris | <i>day of Venus</i> (goddess of love) | Friday |
| dies Saturni | <i>day of Saturn</i> (father of Jupiter) | Saturday |

G Money

It is impossible to give modern equivalents for the value of money in ancient times. Not only did it fluctuate considerably during the centuries of Roman history but also the value of today's currency is soon out of date itself. It is possible to get an idea of the value from contemporary writers.

- ▶ The **as** (**as assis m.**) (*unit*), was the coin of lowest value.
- ▶ Two and a half asses was worth one **sestertius** (-i m.), a word formed from **semis tertius** (*the third half*, i.e. 2.5). We usually call this a **sesterce** in English. The symbol for a sesterce was

HS, an abbreviation for **duo et semis** → *two and a half* (asses). Sometimes the word **nummus** (-i m.) (*coin*), was also used for the sesterce.

- ▶ Four sestertii made one **denarius**.
- ▶ Twenty-five denarii made one **aureus**.

H The sesterce was a unit of currency which was mentioned very frequently with reference to large prices or sums of money.

- ▶ When expressing thousands of sesterces the Romans used the special neuter plural word **sestertia** (*thousands of sesterces*), with a distributive numeral (Unit 6N).
e.g. HS \bar{V} → **quina sestertia** → *five thousand sesterces*
- ▶ When expressing hundreds of thousands of sesterces the Romans used the genitive plural **sestertium** (with **centena milia** understood) with a numeral adverb (Unit 6U).
e.g. HS | \bar{X} | → **decies sestertium** → *one million* (10 x 100,000 sesterces)

I The Romans also made use of Greek (silver) units of currency.

- ▶ The smallest unit commonly mentioned by the Romans is the **drachma**.
- ▶ One hundred drachmae made one **mina**.
- ▶ Sixty minae made one **talentum** (*talent*).

J Weight

- ▶ The smallest unit was the **scrupulum** (*Roman scruple*).
- ▶ Four scrupula made one **sextula**.
- ▶ Six sextulae made one **uncia** (*Roman ounce*).
- ▶ Twelve unciae made one **libra** (*Roman pound*, about 11.5 English ounces or 326 grams).

K Liquid capacity

- ▶ The smallest unit was the **cochlearium**.
- ▶ Four cochlearia made one **cyathus**.
- ▶ Twelve cyathi made one **sextarius** (a little less than an English pint or about half a litre).
- ▶ Six sextarii made one **congius**.

- ▶ Eight congii made one **amphora**.
- ▶ Twenty amphorae made one **culleus**.

L Dry capacity

- ▶ The smallest unit was the **cochlearium**.
- ▶ Four cochlearia made one **cyathus**.
- ▶ Twelve cyathi made one **sextarius**.
- ▶ Eight sextarii made one **semodius**.
- ▶ Two semodii made one **modius** (two English gallons or about nine litres).

M Length

- ▶ The smallest unit was the **uncia** (*Roman inch*).
- ▶ Twelve unciae made one **pes** (*Roman foot*, which was slightly less than an English foot or about 30 centimetres).
- ▶ Eighteen unciae (1.5 pedes) made a **cubitum** (*Roman cubit*).
- ▶ Five pedes made one **passus** (*Roman yard* [pace]).
- ▶ One hundred and twenty-five passus made one **stadium** (*Roman furlong*).
- ▶ Eight stadia made one **mille passuum** (*Roman mile* [1,000 paces]; about 1,620 English yards or 1,481 metres).

N Area

- ▶ The smallest unit was the **pes quadratus** (*square foot*).
- ▶ One hundred pedes quadrati made one **scripulum** or **decempeda quadrata** (*ten feet square*).
- ▶ One hundred and forty-four scripula made one **actus quadratus**.
- ▶ Two actus quadrati made one **iugerum** (*Roman acre*, about five-eighths of an English acre or 2,529 square metres).
- ▶ Two iugera made one **heredium**.
- ▶ One hundred heredia made one **centuria**.

O Personal names

A Roman man had three names: a **praenomen**, a **nomen** and a **cognomen**, in that order, e.g. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus. Some even had a fourth or fifth name (**agnomen**).

The **praenomen** (*forename*) is an individual name used by family and close friends. There are not many to choose from and they are

written in an abbreviated form when the other names are given.
The commonest are:

| | | | |
|-----|----------|---------------|----------|
| A. | Aulus | P. | Publius |
| C. | Gaius | Q. | Quintus |
| Cn. | Gnaeus | Ser. | Servius |
| D. | Decimus | S. (or Sex.) | Sextus |
| L. | Lucius | Sp. | Spurius |
| M. | Marcus | T. | Titus |
| M'. | Manius | Ti. (or Tib.) | Tiberius |
| N. | Numerius | | |

The **nomen** (*name*) is the **gens** (*clan*, extended family) name and usually ends in **-ius**. Famous Roman clans are the Claudii, Sempronii, Cornelii, Iulii and Iunii.

The **cognomen** (*surname*) is the **familia** (*family*) name. Originally cognomina were individual nicknames, often descriptive of appearance, e.g. Rufus → Redhead, Naso → Big nose, Caligula → Little boots, etc. Eventually cognomina became hereditary and were used to distinguish one branch of a clan from another.

An **agnomen** is a further name added onto the cognomen. It is used either:

- ▶ As a title of honour, like Augustus → Majestic (His Majesty), Africanus → Conqueror of Africa, Numidicus → Conqueror of Numidia or Macedonicus → Conqueror of Macedonia, etc.
Or
- ▶ As a sign that a person has been adopted into their current gens from another gens. These agnomina of adoption usually end in **-ianus**. The emperor Augustus' **nomen** was originally Octavius. After he had been adopted by his uncle Julius Caesar and granted the title Augustus by the senate he was called Gaius Iulius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

Roman women generally only used one name; the feminine form of their **nomen**, e.g. Claudia, Sempronia, Cornelia, Iulia and Iunia. If there was a number of sisters in a family, then the eldest was

called **Maior** (*the Elder*), the second **Minor** (*the Younger*), the third **Tertia** (*the Third*), **Quarta** (*the Fourth*), etc.

Freedmen (ex-slaves) would take their ex-master's **nomen** and add their own **cognomen**, e.g. M. ARTORIUS M. L. PRIMUS ARCHITECTUS → Marcus Artorius Primus, freedman (**libertus**) of Marcus (Artorius): Architect (Inscription in the theatre in Pompeii)

When we write Latin names in English, we use anglicized versions of the names of those authors and personalities who are more familiar to us, e.g. Vergil (or Virgil) for Vergilius, Horace for Horatius, Ovid for Ovidius, Pliny for Plinius and Livy for Livius.

P Place names

The Adriatic Sea → mare superum

The Aegean Sea → mare Aegaeum

Africa → Libya, Africa

Alexandria → Alexandria

The Alps → Alpes (f. pl.)

Anglesey → Mona

Antioch → Antiocha

The Apennines → Apenninus

Athens → Athenae (f. pl.)

Avignon → Avenio (f.)

Babylon → Babylon (f.)

The Balearic Is. → Baliares insulae
(f. pl.)

Barcelona → Barcino (f.)

Bath → Aquae (f. pl.) Sulis

Belgium → Belgae (m. pl.)

The Black Sea → Pontus (Euxinus)

Bologna → Bononia

Brindisi → Brundisium

Britain → Britannia

Brittany → Armoricae (f. pl.)

Cadiz → Gades (f. pl.)

Caerleon → Isca

Campania → Campania

Canterbury → Durovernum

Capri → Capreae (f. pl.)

Cartagena → Carthago Nova

Carthage → Carthago (f.)

Chester → Deva

Chichester → Regnum

China → Seres (m. pl.)

Cirencester → Corinium

Colchester → Camulodunum

Constantinople (Istanbul) →
Byzantium

Cordoba → Corduba

Corfu → Corcyra

Corinth → Corinthus

Crete → Creta

Cyrene → Cyrenae (f. pl.)

The (Lower) R. Danube →
Ister (-tri m.)

The Dardanelles →
Hellespontus

Dover → Dubri (m. pl.)

The Straits of Dover →
fretum Gallicum

Egypt → Aegyptus (-i f.)

Mt. Etna → Aetna

Florence → Florentia
 France (Gaul) → Gallia
 Genoa → Genua
 Germany → Germania
 The Straits of Gibraltar →
 fretum Gaditanum
 Greece → Graecia
 Holland → Batavi (m. pl.)
 Ireland → Hibernia
 Italy → Italia
 Jerusalem → Hierosolyma
 (n. pl.)
 Lebanon → Libanus
 Lincoln → Lindum
 London → Londinium
 Lyons → Lugdunum
 Malta → Melita
 Marseilles → Massilia
 Milan → Mediolanum
 Morocco → Mauretania
 Naples → Neapolis (f.)
 Nice → Nicaea
 The R. Nile → Nilus
 Padua → Patavium
 Paris → Lutetia

The R. Po → Padus
 Portugal → Lusitania
 Pozzuoli → Puteoli (m. pl.)
 Provence → Provincia
 The Pyrenees → Pyrenaei montes
 (m. pl.)
 The Red Sea → sinus Arabicus
 The R. Rhine → Rhenus
 Rhodes → Rhodos (f.)
 The R. Rhone → Rhodanus
 Rome → Roma
 St Albans → Verulamium
 Scotland → Caledonia
 The R. Severn → Sabrina
 Seville → Hispalis (f.)
 Sicily → Sicilia
 Spain → Hispania
 Switzerland → Helvetia
 The R. Thames → Tamesis (m.)
 Thebes → Thebae (f. pl.)
 The R. Tiber → Tiberis (m.)
 Tuscany → Etruria
 Venice → Veneti (m. pl.)
 York → Eburacum

Q Inscriptions

We have no original Latin literary documents but we have many examples of Latin written on walls or stone which come under the technical title **epigraphy**. They are generally graffiti or inscriptions and are valuable evidence for contemporary Latin usage and spelling. As there was always a limited space to fill, abbreviations were common. These are from Pompeii:

► Record of the building of the amphitheatre c.70 BCE

Quinctius C[aii] f[ilius] Valgus M[arcus] Porcius M[arci] f[ilius]
 duovir[i] quinq[uenales] coloniai honoris caussa spectacula de sua
 peq[unia] fac[iunda] coer[arunt] et coloneis locum in perpetuom

deder[unt] → *Quinctius Valgus, son of Gaius, [and] Marcus Porcius, son of Marcus, censors (quinquennial duoviri), for the honour of the colony took care that a showground be built out of their own money and they gave the place to the colonists for ever.* Note the spelling of *coloniai* for *coloniae*, *caussa* for *causa*, *pequnia* for *pecunia*, *coerarunt* for *curaverunt*, *coloneis* for *colonis* and *perpetuom* for *perpetuum*. *Showground (spectacula)* is used instead of *amphitheatrum*. Note the confidence of *in perpetuom* (*for ever*).

► **A graffito scratched on the wall of the basilica**

C[aius] Pumidius Dipilus heic fuit a[nte] d[ie]m v Nonas Octobreis M[arco] Lepid[o] Q[uinto] Catul[o] co[n]s[ulibus] → *G. Pumidius Dipilus was here on October 3rd when M. Lepidus and Q. Catulus were consuls (78 BCE).* Note the old spelling of *heic* for *hic* and *Octobreis* for *Octobris*, and the way of dating a year.

► **On the colonnade in front of the Eumachia building (fullers' guild)**

Eumachia L[uci] f[ilia] sacerd[os] publ[ica] nomine suo et M[arci] Numistri Frontonis fli chalcidicum cryptam porticum Concordiae Augustae Pietati sua pecunia fecit eademque dedicavit → *Eumachia, daughter of Lucius, public priestess, had the vestibule, covered walkway and colonnade built with her own money in her name and that of her son Marcus Numistrius Fronto and dedicated the same to the Pietas Concordia Augusta*

This prominent local woman was not only enhancing the fullers' guild with her generosity but also her son's social standing. The dedication associates her with Augustus' political outlook.

► **On the plinth of a statue of Holconius in the Via dell' Abbondanza**

M[arco] Holconio M[arci] f[ilio] Rufo trib[uno] mil[itum] a populo duovir[o] i[ure] d[icundo] v quinque[nnali] iter[um] Augusti Caesaris sacerdoti patrono coloniae → *To Marcus Holconius Rufus, son of Marcus, tribune of the soldiers [chosen] by the people, duumvir with*

the right of pronouncing [judgement] five times, censor a second time, priest of Augustus Caesar, patron of the colony

Most of the abbreviations are standard for inscriptions. Holconius is in the dative because the statue was put up in honour of (to) him. Notice the old form **dicundo** for **dicendo**. A censor (**quinquennalis**) was elected every five years. To be patron of the colony was the highest honour a man could have, rather like having the freedom of a city. Holconius associated himself closely with the imperial family and was active at the start of the Christian era. This inscription is also found in metal letters in the floor of the second row of the theatre.

► **In the temple of the Genius of the Emperor (Vespasian in 79 CE) in the forum**

Mamia P[ubli] f[ilia] sacerdos public[a] Genio Aug[usti] solo et pecunia sua → *Mamia daughter of Publius, public priestess, on her own land and with her own money [dedicated a temple] to the Genius of Augustus*

The cult of the Genius of the emperor began in 7 BCE. The public paid for Mamia's tomb.

► **On the tomb of Scaurus, who got rich producing *garum* (fish sauce), a local speciality**

A[ulo] Umbricio Scauro Iivir[o] i[ure] d[icundo]. Huic decuriones locum monum[enti] et HS ... in funere et statuam eques[trem] in f[oro] ponendam censuerunt → *To Aulus Umbricius Scaurus, duumvir with the right of pronouncing [judgement]. The town council decreed the place for the monument to this man and ... sesterces for his funeral and an equestrian statue to be placed in the forum*

► **The Temple of Isis in Pompeii was restored after an earthquake in 62 CE**

N[umerius] Popidius N[umerii] f[ilius] Celsinus aedem Isidis terrae motu conlapsam a fundamento p[ae]quonia s[ua] restituit. hunc decuriones ob liberalitatem cum esset annorum sexs ordini suo

gratis adlegerunt → *Numerius Popidius Celsinus, son of Numerius with his own money restored from its foundation the temple of Isis which had been destroyed by an earthquake. Because of his generosity the decuriones (the town council) admitted this [boy] to their order free even though he was six years old*

This boy's father was a freedman (the cult of Isis attracted freedmen) and rebuilt the temple in his son's name so that his son would have a social advantage in Pompeian society. Note the spelling of *sexs* → *six*.

Political graffiti survives painted on walls. The aediles (town officials) had not cleaned it off after the previous election before Vesuvius erupted. It can therefore be dated to 79 CE. Note the politeness of the formulaic indirect wish *oro* (or *oramus*) *vos faciatis* which crops up often.

- ▶ A[ulum] Vettium Firmum aed[ilem] o[ro] v[os] f[aciatis]. dign[us] est. Caprasia cum Nymphio rog[at] → *We pray that you make Aulus Vettius Firmus aedile. He is worthy. Caprasia asks [this] with Nymphius.*
- ▶ M[arcum] Holconium II vir[um] i[ure] d[icundo] d[ignum] r[e] p[ublica] o[ramus] v[os] f[aciatis] → *We ask that you make the worthy Marcus Holconius duumvir with the right of pronouncing judgement*
- ▶ Satrium rogant → [...] *ask for Satrius (to be elected)*

Some of the graffiti found scratched on walls is more familiar:

- ▶ tu es verpa qui istud legis → *You are a prick if you read this.*

R Timeline

BCE

- 753 Traditional date of the founding of Rome by Romulus
753–510 Rome traditionally ruled by seven kings: Romulus, Numa Pompilius, Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, Tarquinius Priscus, Servius Tullius and Tarquinius Superbus

- 510 The expulsion of the royal family. Rome becomes a republic for the next 462 years
- 498 Larcus was created the first dictator
- 494 The plebeians retire to Mt Sacer. Office of tribune of the plebs established
- 458 Cincinnatus dictator
- 450 The Twelve Tables, a codification of Roman law, established
- 439 Cincinnatus dictator again
- 390 Rome captured by the Gauls
- 367 The first plebeian consul elected
- 338 Rome subdues the Latin League
- 281–72 Rome at war with Tarentum and King Pyrrhus of Epirus
- 264–41 The First Punic War. Rome defeats the Carthaginians, thereby gaining Sicily
- 240 Plays (by Livius Andronicus) first acted at Rome
- 219 Hannibal attacks Saguntum
- 218–02 The Second Punic War
- 217 Quintus Fabius Maximus ('Cunctator') created dictator
- 216 Hannibal defeats Rome and her allies at the Battle of Cannae
- 212 Marcellus captures Syracuse and in the fighting a Roman soldier murders Archimedes
- 202 Scipio defeats Hannibal at the Battle of Zama, winning the Second Punic War
- 197 Rome defeats the Macedonians at the Battle of Cynoscephalae
- 184 Cato the Elder elected censor. Titus Plautus Maccius, playwright, dies
- 159 Publius Terentius Afer (Terence), playwright, dies
- 149–6 The Third Punic War
- 146 Rome sacks Carthage and Corinth, becoming the supreme power in the Mediterranean
- 133 Tiberius Gracchus, reforming tribune, assassinated
- 123 Gaius Gracchus, Tiberius' brother, tribune
- 107–100 Gaius Marius holds seven successive consulships to deal with military emergencies from the tribes of the Cimbri and Teutones
- 91–88 The Social War

- 88–2 Civil War between Gaius Marius and Cornelius Sulla
86 Sulla conquers Athens
82–79 Sulla dictator
73–1 The revolt of Spartacus the gladiator
70 First consulate of Gnaeus Pompeius (Pompey) and Marcus Licinius Crassus
63 Marcus Tullius Cicero as consul suppresses the Catilinarian conspiracy
60 First Triumvirate of Pompey, Crassus and Julius Caesar formed
58–1 Caesar campaigns in Gaul
c.55 Titus Lucretius Carus, poet, dies
55 & 54 Caesar takes military expeditions to Britain
54 Valerius Catullus, poet, dies
50 Caesar crosses the R. Rubicon. Civil war between Caesar and Pompey begins
48 Caesar defeats Pompey at the Battle of Pharsalus, effectively ending the republic
44 Caesar assassinated by Brutus, Cassius and others
43 Formation of the second Triumvirate: Marcus Antonius (Antony), Octavian and Lepidus. Cicero, orator and man of letters, assassinated at Antony's behest
42 Brutus and Cassius defeated at the Battle of Philippi
35 Gaius Sallustius Crispus (Sallust), historian, dies
31 Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra at the Battle of Actium
27 Octavian takes the title Augustus
26 Vitruvius Pollio, architectural writer, dies
25 Cornelius Nepos, biographer, dies
19 Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil), poet, and Albius Tibullus, poet, die
c.16 Sextus Propertius, poet, dies
8 Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace), poet, dies
- CE
- 9 Defeat of the Romans under Varus by Arminius (Herman) in the Teutoburger Wald
14–37 Tiberius emperor
17 Titus Livius (Livy), historian, dies

- 18 Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid), poet, dies
- 37-41 Gaius (Caligula) emperor
- 41-54 Claudius emperor
- 43-5 The Romans annex Britain
- 54-68 Nero emperor
- 61 Revolt of Boudicca (Boadicea), queen of the Iceni, against the Romans
- 62 Persius Flaccus, poet, dies
- 65 Gaius Petronius Arbiter, novelist, and Lucius Annaeus Seneca, philosopher, commit suicide at Nero's behest. Marcus Annaeus Lucanus (Lucan), poet, dies
- 68-9 Galba, Otho and Vitellius emperors
- 69-79 Vespasian emperor
- 79 Pompeii destroyed by Vesuvius. Pliny the Elder, natural scientist, killed in the eruption
- 79-81 Titus emperor
- 81-96 Domitian emperor. He was succeeded by Nerva
- c.95 Marcus Fabius Quintilianus (Quintilian), orator, dies
- c.96 Publius Papinius Statius, poet, dies
- 98 Nerva dies and Trajan becomes emperor
- 98-128 The writing career of Decimus Junius Juvenalis (Juvenal), satirist
- 104 Marcus Valerius Martialis (Martial), poet, dies
- 109 Roman empire reaches its greatest extent under Trajan
- 110 Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus (Pliny the Younger), letter writer, becomes governor of Bithynia-Pontus
- c.113 Pliny the Younger dies
- 117 Publius Cornelius Tacitus, historian, and Trajan, emperor, die. Hadrian emperor
- 121 Hadrian builds the wall across the north of Britain
- c.155 Lucius Apuleius, novelist, dies
- c.160 Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus, historian, dies
- 180 Marcus Aurelius, emperor and philosopher, dies
- 274-337 Constantine emperor
- 285 Division of the Roman empire into Eastern and Western parts by Diocletian
- 313 Constantine legalizes Christianity
- 476 Collapse of the Western Roman empire
- 565 Justinian, Eastern emperor and jurist, dies

S Latin today

It is easier than you might think to find Latin today. Look at the side of a pound coin and you may read **decus et tutamen** → *an object of beauty and a security*. This is a quotation from Vergil (*Aeneid* 5.262) and originally referred to a coat of chain mail (**lorica**). In fact the following two words in the Latin are **in armis** → *in battle*. You may also find the motto of the kings of Scotland and of the Most Ancient and Most Noble Order of the Thistle (Scotland's premier order of chivalry) on the side of a pound: **nemo me impune lacessit** → *no-one assaults me and gets away with it*. Those which come from Jersey have **insula Caesarea**, which was its Roman name. The American dollar bill has on it **e pluribus unum** → *one (state) out of more*. Coins and notes will probably always be the commonest place to find Latin. You will find it used in the mottos of institutions, especially schools, and Latin inscriptions are still used on buildings today, even if it is only to record the date of construction in Roman numerals. The numerals are also often used on clock faces and to date films and television programmes. Botanical Latin is still used for the correct names of plants and with the increasing popularity of gardening, you can regularly hear it on radio and television programmes devoted to the hobby. Some series of popular children's books are now produced in Latin such as the stories associated with **Asterix Gallus** → *Asterix the Gaul*, **Vinni ille pu** → *Winnie the Pooh* and **Petrus cuniculus** → *Peter Rabbit*. You can even find volumes of Latin joke books. Latin is still the official language of the Vatican and important ecclesiastical documents like official papal letters are written in Latin. The mass is still said in Latin on certain special occasions and the Vatican does much to promote the language, such as publishing its own modern Latin dictionary.

The following are some Latin words and phrases which are still in use today:

ab initio → *from the beginning*, especially of the learning of languages

aegrotat (pl. aegrotant) → *he (or she) is (pl. they are) ill* (used in university exam notices)

ad hoc → *(for this) immediate, spontaneous, improvised*
 ad hominem → *for the man* (used of professorships, etc.)
 ad infinitum → *to the point of infinity*
 ad lib(itum) → *at (your) pleasure*
 ad loc(um) → *at the place*
 ad nauseam → *to the point of nausea*
 bona fides → *good faith*
 compos mentis → *sound in mind*
 e(xempli) g(ratia) → *for the sake of example*
 ex officio → *by virtue of the position one holds*
 habeas corpus → lit. *you may have the body*. A right not to be
 detained without charge.
 i(d) e(st) → *that is, namely*
 in vitro → *in the test tube*
 pro bono (publico) → *for the public good*
 quid pro quo → *something in return for something*
 satis → *sufficient, enough*
 s(ub) v(erbum) → *under the word* (referring to dictionary entries)
 sub iudice → *under the jurisdiction of a judge*, i.e. something which
 cannot be discussed in case the outcome of a trial is prejudiced
 sub poena → *under threat of punishment*, i.e. a compulsory
 summons to court
 sub rosa → *under the rose*, i.e. secret
 ultra vires → *beyond one's jurisdiction*
 viva voce → *an oral rather than a written exam* (lit. *with the
 live voice*)

Of particular interest to observers of the modern version of the language is the Latin news website **nuntii latini** where you will find the previous week's news in Latin. It is usually updated on a Monday. This excellent service is provided by the Finnish Broadcasting Corporation. Since 1989 they had been broadcasting the news in Latin on the radio for five minutes after their German and English language news bulletins on a Sunday evening. As a good short wave radio is needed to get a decent reception, the arrival of **nuntii latini** on the Internet was very welcome news. The bulletins cover all major topics of international interest and there

are often items of Finnish news. As the writers say themselves, **nunc primum in historia fit ut lingua Latina iam nullos limites noverit** → *now for the first time in history it happens that the Latin language knows no bounds.*

The writers face the interesting and sometimes amusing challenge of creating Latin words for modern objects or concepts. The following are good examples of their skill:

aeroplanum capacissimum → *jumbo jet*
autocinetum laophoricum → *bus*
bos grunniens → *yak*
Circuitus Galliae → *the Tour de France*
cangurus → *kangaroo*
charta creditoria → *credit card*
chartula postalis → *postcard*
cuniculus viarius → *motorway tunnel*
demoscopia Gallupiana → *Gallup poll*
diploma inventionis → *patent*
exercitia aerobica → *aerobics*
grex motocyclistarum → *motorbike gang*
horologium excitatorium → *alarm clock*
liga pedifollica → *football league*
linea diei → *the International Date Line*
machina vectoria → *locomotive engine*
pellicula documentaria → *documentary film*
pittacium epistulare → *postage stamp*
scacista → *chess player*
statio spatialis → *space station*
sygraphus viatorius → *passport*
sistema cursus cambialis → *exchange rate mechanism*
telephonum portabile → *mobile telephone*
tempus suppletorium → *overtime*
tramen rapidum → *express train*
uranium pauperatum → *depleted uranium*
virus grippicum → *influenza virus*

In addition to the news there are other items on the website menu which are of interest. A list of reading material including modern Latin dictionaries, a background history of the site, the schedule of broadcasts, a questions page, a letters page for email and an archive of old bulletins. The entire site is written in Latin but an English version of some of the pages is available.

This page intentionally left blank

Key to the exercises

It is obvious that the sentences in the exercises may be translated in a variety of ways. The basic sense is given here but any sensible variation may be used. It is assumed that where 'he' is used with a verb then 'she' or 'it' would be equally acceptable if the context allows it.

Unit 2 ex. 1-4

1 a they beg **b** he/she/it gives **c** you (s.) care **d** I drink **e** we approve **f** you (pl.) prepare **g** you (s.) give **h** we stand **i** he/she/it works **j** they drink **2 a** servo servas servat servamus servatis servant **b** comparo comparas comparat comparamus comparatis comparant **c** loco locas locat locamus locatis locant **d** concito concitas concitat concitamus concitatis concitant **e** voco vocas vocat vocamus vocatis vocant **f** computo computas computat computamus computatis computant **g** muto mutas mutat mutamus mutatis mutant **h** pugno pugas pugnat pugnamus pugnatibus pugnant **i** adfluo adfluis adfluit adflatis adflant **j** amo amas amat amamus amatis amant **3 a** vocamus **b** laboras **c** probo **d** probat **e** potant **f** curatis **g** vocat **h** ambulat! **i** sto **j** curant **4 a** putare, to think **b** cogitare, to ponder **c** laniare, to mangle **d** mandare, to command **e** praetervolare, to fly past **f** clarare, to explain **g** demonstrare, to show **h** fatigare, to exhaust **i** coactare, to force **j** appellare, to pronounce

Unit 2 ex. 5-8

5 a fourth **b** second **c** first **d** third **e** third **f** third **g** fourth **h** third **i** second **j** first **6 a** We run and we win. **b** You sleep and snore. **c** He searches and he saves. **d** You see and believe. **e** They know and are silent. **f** I inspect and approve. **g** They flee and they weep. **h** I teach and you learn. **i** You laugh and play. **j** We dance and sing. **7 a** aperio aperis aperit aperimus aperitis aperient **b** peto petis petit petimus petitis petunt **c** advenio advenis advenit advenimus advenitis adveniunt **d** video vides videt videmus videtis vident

e discedo discedis discedit discedimus disceditis discedunt **f** teneo tenes tenet tenemus tenetis tenent **g** facio facis facit facimus facitis faciunt **h** vasto vastas vastat vastamus vastatis vastant **i** libro libras librat libramus libratris librant **j** fugio fugis fugit fugimus fugitis fugiunt **8 a** nubere, to marry **b** merere, to deserve **c** arcessere, to summon **d** claudicare, to limp **e** gerere, to carry **f** implicare, to entwine **g** placare, to pacify **h** serere, to sew **i** statuere, to set up **j** vovere, to vow

Unit 2 ex. 9–12

9 a aedificabo aedificabis aedificabit aedificabimus aedificabitis aedificabunt **b** miscebo miscebis miscebit miscebimus miscebitis miscebunt **c** ardebo ardebis ardebit ardebimus ardebitis ardebunt **d** mulcebo mulcebis mulcebit mulcebimus mulcebitis mulcebunt **e** sonabo sonabis sonabit sonabimus sonabitis sonabunt **f** crepabo crepabis crepabit crepabimus crepabitis crepabunt **g** stabo stabis stabit stabimus stabitis stabunt **h** fundabo fundabis fundabit fundabimus fundabitis fundabunt **i** narrabo narrabis narrabit narrabimus narrabitis narrabunt **j** horrebo horrebis horrebit horrebimus horrebitis horrebunt **10 a** They will advise and persuade. **b** You will carry but we shall walk. **c** They will call and save. **d** We shall wait and watch. **e** They will announce but we shall be silent. **f** He will weep and mourn. **g** I shall burn but you will soothe. **h** They will shudder and we shall frighten. **i** I shall relate and you will watch. **j** He will build but they will destroy. **11 a** cogitabo **b** volabimus **c** mutabunt **d** lugebitis **e** monebit **f** placebit **g** debebis **h** nuntiabo **i** vocabunt **j** habebitis **12 a** They give but you will owe. **b** They will beat and I shall call out. **c** You are pacifying and they will be silent. **d** We carry but you will build. **e** You walk but we shall hurry. **f** They build but we shall destroy. **g** I think but they will fight. **h** He stands and will stay. **i** I am preparing and you will approve. **j** We shall buy and you will reckon up.

Unit 2 ex. 13–16

13 a cingam cinges cinget cingemus cingetis cingent **b** scribam scribes scribet scribemus scribetis scribent **c** claudam claudes claudet claudemus claudetis claudent **d** colam coles colet colemus coletis colent **e** petam petes petet petemus petetis petent **f** faciam facies faciet faciemus facietis facient **g** iaciam iacies iaciet iaciemus iacietis iacient **h** rapiam rapies rapiet rapiemus rapietis rapient **i** dicam

dices dicet dicemus dicetis dicent **j** aperiam aperies aperiet aperiemus aperietis aperient **14 a** I shall say and you will believe. **b** We shall summon but they will not hear. **c** You will dig and I shall drag. **d** He will not sleep. **e** You will begin but you will not finish. **f** They will flee but we shall resist. **g** I shall open but he will close. **h** They will seek but they will not find. **i** You will depart and I shall arrive. **j** We shall agree but you will disagree. **15 a** fodiam **b** non incipient **c** non ludes **d** adsentiet **e** curram sed resistes **f** advenient **g** capiet **h** non credetis **i** non cedemus **j** dormient sed trahemus **16 a** You will resist and you will not yield. **b** I close but they will open. **c** We shall not arrive. **d** He runs but he will not escape. **e** You are playing but I shall dig. **f** They are writing and they will not play. **g** They will not say. **h** I seek and I shall find. **i** He says but you will not believe. **j** You are writing and will not hear.

Unit 2 ex. 17–20

17 a manebam manebas manebat manebamus manebatis manebant **b** muniebam muniebas muniebat muniebamus muniebatis muniebant **c** cenabam cenabas cenabat cenabamus cenabatis cenabant **d** coquebam coquebas coquebat coquebamus coquebatis coquebant **e** regebam regebas regebat regebamus regebatis regebant **f** veniebam veniebas veniebat veniebamus veniebatis veniebant **g** leniebam leniebas leniebat leniebamus leniebatis leniebant **h** ambulabam ambulabas ambulabat ambulabamus ambulabatis ambulabant **i** ponebam ponebas ponebat ponebamus ponebatis ponebant **j** sedebam sedebas sedebat sedebamus sedebatis sedebant **18 a** We were sitting but we were not sleeping. **b** You were fighting and resisting. **c** You were listening and you were watching. **d** I was cooking but they were dining. **e** He was walking and singing. **f** They were holding and shouting. **g** You were saying and they were not keeping quiet. **h** I was dragging and I was groaning. **i** We were playing but we were not laughing. **j** I was building and you were carrying. **19 a** dormiebam sed non tacebant. **b** dicebamus et audiebant. **c** non spectabas. **d** adveniebam sed discedebatis. **e** assentiebat. **f** trahebamus et fodiebant. **g** stabat sed sedebamus. **h** arcessebat et veniebas. **i** ridebamus et flebant. **j** non videbam. **20 a** He was ordering you were obeying. **b** He will not change. **c** I was preparing, you are cooking and they will dine. **d** We were resisting but you are fleeing. **e** He was not writing. **f** We were carrying, we are digging and we shall build. **g** I was running but you

are walking. **h** They were shuddering and we were afraid. **i** They were sitting and they will sleep. **j** You gave and I received.

Unit 2 ex. 21–24

21 a timui **b** paravi **c** rexi **d** cubui **e** feci **f** traxi **g** tetigi **h** sparsi
i fregi **j** sensi **22 a** demonstravi demonstravisti demonstravit
demonstravimus demonstravistis demonstraverunt **b** secui secuisti
secuit secuimus secuistis secuierunt **c** dedi dedisti dedit dedimus
dedistis dederunt **d** curavi curavisti curavit curavimus curavistis
curaverunt **e** vetui vetuisti vetuit vetuimus vetuistis vetuerunt **f** iuvi
iuvisti iuvit iuimus iuvistis iuverunt **g** ambulavi ambulavisti ambulavit
ambulavimus ambulavistis ambulaverunt **h** micui micuisti micuit
micuimus micuistis micuerunt **i** amavi amavisti amavit amavimus
amavistis amaverunt **j** necavi necavisti necavit necavimus necavistis
necaverunt **23 a** you built **b** they gave **c** I have called **d** you have
saved **e** we have placed **f** they bought **g** he prepared **h** I prayed
i you have cut **j** we have forbidden **24 a** speraverunt **b** amavimus
c dedi **d** demonstraverunt **e** vetuistis **f** stetit **g** narravit **h** aedificavi
i navisti **j** vocavit

Unit 2 ex. 25–28

25 a credo → *I believe* **b** veto → *I forbid* **c** venio → *I come* **d** video →
I see **e** potō → *I drink* **f** vincio → *I bind* **g** sedeo → *I sit* **h** custodio
→ *I guard* **i** teneo → *I hold* **j** fugio → *I flee* **26 a** quaesivi quaesivisti
quaesivit quaesivimus quaesivistis quaesiverunt **b** cessi cessisti cessit
cessimus cessistis cesserunt **c** posui posuisti posuit posuimus posuistis
posuerunt **d** effluxi effluxisti effluxit effluximus effluxistis effluerunt
e rupi rupisti rupit rupimus rupistis ruperunt **f** lusi lusisti lusit lusimus
lusistis luserunt **g** vici vicisti vicit vicimus vicistis vicerunt **h** cucurri
cucurristi cucurrit cucurrimus cucurristis cucurrerunt **i** risi risisti risit
risimus risistis riserunt **j** delevi delevisti delevit delevimus delevistis
deleverunt **27 a** invenit **b** viderunt **c** mansistis **d** traxi **e** coluimus
f dixisti **g** duxerunt **h** cepit **i** tonuit **j** cogitaverunt **28 a** he flowed
out **b** you have pressed **c** I played **d** they have searched **e** you
laughed **f** he led **g** we arranged **h** we put **i** they took **j** you have placed

Unit 2 ex. 29–32

29 a momorderam momorderas momorderat momorderamus
momorderatis momorderant **b** titillaveram titillaveras titillaverat

titillaveramus titillaveratis titillaverant **c** solveram solveras solverat
 solveramus solveratis solverant **d** postulaveram postulaveras postulaverat
 postulaveramus postulaveratis postulaverant **e** emanaveram emanaveras
 emanaverat emanaveramus emanaveratis emanaverant **f** captaveram
 captaveras captaverat captaveramus captaveratis captaverant **g** miseram
 miseras miserat miseramus miseratis miserant **h** reduxeram reduxeras
 reduxerat reduxeram reduxeratis reduxerant **i** statueram statueras
 statuerat statueramus statueratis statuerant **j** verberaveram verberaveras
 verberaverat verberaveramus verberaveratis verberaverant **30 a** you
 had warned **b** they had bought **c** I had taken **d** we had loved **e** you had
 run **f** he had played **g** you had inspected **h** they had yielded **i** you had
 dug **j** I had forbidden **31 a** steteramus **b** manseras **c** putaveram
d ceperant **e** effugerat **f** dormiverat **g** ieceratis **h** sederam
i custodiverat **j** posueramus **32 a** I had not hidden but they wept.
b He slept and you had worked. **c** We had built but they destroyed.
d They had carried and we had dug. **e** He had closed but I opened.
f They walked but we had run. **g** He had taught and they had heard.
h You had watched but you did not see. **i** You had not changed. **j** I had
 cooked and they dined.

Unit 2 ex. 33–36

33 a cecinero cecineris cecinerit cecinerimus cecineritis cecinerint
b accepero acceperis acceperit acceperimus acceperitis acceperint
c vertero verteris verterit verterimus verteritis verterint **d** tetendero
 tetenderis tetenderit tetenderimus tetenderitis tetenderint **e** tradidero
 tradideris tradiderit tradiderimus tradideritis tradiderint **f** praebuero
 praebueris praebuerit praebuerimus praebueritis praebuerint
g complevero compleveris compleverit compleverimus compleveritis
 compleverint **h** vexero vexeris vexerit vexerimus vexeritis
 vexerint **i** surrexero surrexeris surrexerit surrexerimus surrexeritis
 surrexerint **j** discessero discesseris discesserit discesserimus discesseritis
 discesserint **34 a** you will have led **b** you will have stayed **c** I shall have
 called **d** they will have warned **e** you will have made **f** we shall have
 walked **g** I shall have taken **h** they will have come **i** you will have put
j we shall have left **35 a** senserit **b** mutaverit **c** spectaverint
d debuero **e** fleverit **f** feceritis **g** vixerimus **h** petiveris **i** convenerint
j vertero **36 a** I was afraid and you will have been afraid. **b** You have
 stayed but they will have fled. **c** We shall have worked and you will
 have slept. **d** I shall have given and he will have received. **e** They will
 have departed but you have not arrived. **f** You will have run but I shall
 have walked. **g** He narrated and they will have heard. **h** He ordered

and they will have obeyed. **i** You have asked and he will have replied.
j He cooked and I shall have eaten.

Unit 2 ex. 37–39

37 a ero **b** non est **c** eramus **d** erant **e** eritis **f** fueras **g** fuerit **h** eram
i fui **j** fuimus **38 a** they were **b** they will have been **c** they have been
d he will be **e** they are **f** we are **g** we were **h** I had been **i** you are
j they will be **39 a** imperfect **b** present **c** perfect **d** future **e** present
f perfect **g** pluperfect **h** future perfect **i** future **j** imperfect

Unit 3 ex. 1–4

1 a chartae f. *paper, map* **b** insulae f. *island* **c** nautae m. *sailor*
d agricolae m. *farmer* **e** ancillae f. *maidservant* **f** areae f. *building*
site **g** incolae m. *inhabitant* **h** viae f. *road* **i** nebulae f. *cloud* **j** mensae
f. *table* **2 a** Sing. ripa ripa ripam ripae ripae ripa. Pl. ripae ripae ripas
riparum ripis ripis **b** Sing. regina regina reginam reginae reginae regina.
Pl. reginae reginae reginas reginarum reginis reginis **c** Sing. carina carina
carinam carinae carinae carina. Pl. carinae carinae carinas carinarum
carinis carinis **d** Sing. matrona matrona matronam matronae matronae
matrona. Pl. matronae matronae matronas matronarum matronis
matronis **e** Sing. taberna taberna tabernam tabernae tabernae taberna.
Pl. tabernae tabernae tabernas tabernarum tabernis tabernis **f** Sing. porta
porta portam portae portae porta. Pl. portae portae portas portarum
portis portis **g** Sing. clementia clementia clementiam clementiae
clementiae clementia. Pl. clementiae clementiae clementias clementiarum
clementiis clementiis **h** Sing. dea dea deam deae deae dea Pl. deae deae
deas dearum deabus deabus **i** Sing. cauda cauda caudam caudae caudae
cauda. Pl. caudae caudae caudas caudarum caudis caudis
j Sing. femina femina feminam feminae feminae femina. Pl. feminae
feminae feminas feminarum feminis feminis **3 a** sagittas **b** rosarum
c vaccam **d** sapientiae **e** hastis **f** sellis **g** ballistae **h** alis **i** iustitia
j ferae **4 a** acc. sing. **b** I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **c** acc. pl. **d** I gen. sing.
2 dat. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. **e** I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **f** acc. pl.
g I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 abl. sing. **h** acc. sing. **i** gen. pl. **j** I gen.
sing. 2 dat. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl.

Unit 3 ex. 5–8

5 a discipuli m. *pupil* **b** frumenti n. *grain* **c** venti m. *wind* **d** mariti
m. *husband* **e** coli f. *distaff* **f** anni m. *year* **g** somni m. *sleep* **h** eventi

studia studiorum studiis studiis **11 a** liberorum **b** trifurcifero
c ministrum **d** pueris **e** oleastris **f** fibri **g** Tiberi **h** fabri **i** magistris
j semiviro **12 a** acc. pl. **b** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. **c** I dat. sing.
 2 abl. sing. **d** I gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. **e** I voc. sing. 2 gen.
 sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. **f** I acc. sing. 2 gen. pl. **g** I gen. sing.
 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. **h** I gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. **i** I dat.
 pl. 2 abl. pl. **j** I nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl.

Unit 3 ex. 13–16

13 a temporis n. *time* **b** consulis m. *consul* (chief magistrate) **c** capitis
 n. *head* **d** militis m. *soldier* **e** coniugis m. or f. *spouse* **f** iudicis m.
judge **g** tempestatis f. *storm* **h** clamoris m. *shout* **i** operis n. *work*
j doloris m. *pain* **14 a** amor → *love* **b** paries → *wall* (of a house)
c aetas → *age* **d** custos → *guard* **e** nomen → *name* **f** sal → *salt, wit*
g virtus → *valour* **h** pecus → *beast, head of cattle, sheep, herd*
animal **i** aequor → *a level surface (plain, sea etc.)* **j** homo → *human*
being **15 a** Sing. flos flos florem floris flori flore. Pl. flores flores
 flores florum floribus floribus **b** Sing. dignitas dignitas dignitatem
 dignitatis dignitati dignitate. Pl. dignitates dignitates dignitates
 dignitatum dignitatibus dignitatibus **c** Sing. pes pes pedem pedis
 pedi pede. Pl. pedes pedes pedes pedum pedibus pedibus
d Sing. aestas aestas aestatem aestatis aestati aestate. Pl. aestates
 aestates aestates aestatum aestatibus aestatibus **e** Sing. princeps
 princeps principem principis principi principe. Pl. principes
 principes principes principum principibus principibus **f** Sing. anser
 anser anserem anseris anseri ansere. Pl. anseres anseres anseres
 anserum anseribus anseribus **g** Sing. laus laus laudem laudis laudi
 laude. Pl. laudes laudes laudes laudum laudibus laudibus **h** Sing.
 virgo virgo virginem virginis virgini virgine. Pl. virgines virgines
 virgines virginum virginibus virginibus **i** Sing. sol sol solem solis
 soli sole. Pl. soles soles soles solum solibus solibus **j** Sing. carmen
 carmen carmen carminis carmini carmine. Pl. carmina carmina
 carmina carminum carminibus carminibus **16 a** acc. sing. **b** abl.
 sing. **c** dat. sing. **d** gen. pl. **e** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 acc. sing.
f I nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl. **g** gen. sing. **h** I nom. pl. 2 voc.
 pl. 3 acc. pl. **i** I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **j** I nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl.

Unit 3 ex. 17–20

17 a cladis f. *disaster* **b** ignis m. *fire* **c** imbris m. *rain cloud, shower*
d amnis m. *river* **e** vectigalis n. *tax* **f** sedilis n. *chair* **g** avis f. *bird*
h vallis f. *valley* **i** clavis f. *key* **j** iubaris n. *sunbeam* **18 a** aries *ram*
b ensis *sword* **c** cutis *skin* **d** securis *axe* **e** ovis *sheep* **f** crinis *hair*
g axis *axle* **h** frons *foliage* **i** orbis *globe, circle* **j** conclave *room*
19 a Sing. puppis puppis puppim puppis puppi (or puppe). Pl. puppes
pupes puppis puppium puppibus puppibus **b** Sing. moles moles
molem molis moli mole. Pl. moles moles moles molium molibus
molibus **20 a** dat. sing. **b** gen. sing. **c** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 acc.
sing. **d** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 acc. pl. (alternative)
e acc. sing. **f** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 acc. pl.
(alternative) **g** gen. pl. **h** abl. sing. **i** I nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl.
j I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl.

Unit 3 ex. 21–24

21 a Sing. saltus saltus saltum saltus saltui saltu. Pl. saltus saltus
saltus saltuum saltibus saltibus **b** Sing. portus portus portum portus
portui portu. Pl. portus portus portus portuum portibus portibus
c Sing. cornu cornu cornu cornus cornu cornu. Pl. cornua cornua
cornua cornuum cornibus cornibus **d** Sing. tribus tribus tribum tribus
tribui tribu. Pl. tribus tribus tribus tribuum tribubus tribubus **e** Sing.
porticus porticus porticum porticus porticui porticu. Pl. porticus
porticus porticum porticibus porticibus **f** Sing. ictus ictus
ictum ictus ictui ictu. Pl. ictus ictus ictus ictuum ictibus ictibus **g** Sing.
gemitus gemitus gemitum gemitus gemitui gemitu. Pl. gemitus gemitus
gemitus gemituum gemitibus gemitibus **h** Sing. exitus exitus exitum
exitus exitui exitu. Pl. exitus exitus exitus exituum exitibus exitibus
i Sing. impetus impetus impetum impetus impetui impetu. Pl. impetus
impetus impetus impetuum impetibus impetibus **j** Sing. manus manus
manum manus manui manu. Pl. manus manus manus manuum
manibus manibus **22 a** gen. pl. **b** acc. sing. **c** I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl.
d abl. sing. **e** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 nom. pl. 5 voc.
pl. 6 acc. pl. **f** dat. sing. **g** I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **h** abl. sing. **i** I nom.
sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 nom. pl. 5 voc. pl. 6 acc. pl. **j** gen.
pl. **23 a** 4th **b** 2nd **c** 4th **d** 2nd **e** 4th **f** 4th **g** 2nd **h** 2nd **i** 4th
j 4th **24 a** census **b** circumiectibus **c** currus **d** electus **e** annum
f usui **g** fructibus **h** cursum **i** domitu **j** rictus

Unit 3 ex. 25–27

25 a progeniei *progeny, descendants, children* **b** pauperiei *poverty*
c caesariae *hair* **d** tristitiei *sorrow* **e** permitiei *ruin* **f** congeriei
heap **g** temperiei *mildness, temperature, due proportion* **h** materiei
matter, substance, timber **i** maciei *meagreness, leanness* **j** planitiei
level ground, plain **26 a** Sing. glacies glacies glaciem glaciei glaciei
glacie **b** Sing. canities canities canitiem canitiei canitiei canitie
c Sing. acies acies aciem aciei aciei acie. Pl. acies acies acies acierum
aciebus aciebus **d** Sing. effigies effigies effigiem effigiei effigiei effigie.
Pl. effigies effigies effigies effigierum effigiebus effigiebus **e** Sing.
superficies superficies superficiem superficiei superficiei superficie.
Pl. superficies superficies superficies superficierum superficiebus
superficiebus **f** Sing. fides fides fidem fidei fidei fide. Pl. fides fides
fides fiderum fidebus fidebus **g** Sing. meridies meridies meridiem
meridiei meridiei meridie. Pl. meridies meridies meridies meridierum
meridiebus meridiebus **h** Sing. spes spes spem spei spei spe. Pl.
spes spes spes sperum spebus spebus **i** Sing. species species speciem
speciei speciei specie. Pl. species species species specierum speciebus
speciebus **j** Sing. diluvies diluvies diluviem diluviei diluviei diluvie. Pl.
diluvies diluvies diluvies diluvierum diluviebus diluviebus **27 a** acc.
sing. **b** gen. pl. **c** I dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **d** I gen. sing. 2 dat. sing. **e** abl.
sing. **f** I nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. 5 acc. pl.
g acc. sing. **h** abl. sing. **i** acc. sing. **j** abl. sing.

Unit 3 ex. 28–31

28 a Hylas Hyla Hylan Hylae Hylae Hyla **b** Daphne Daphne
Daphnen Daphnes Daphnae Daphne **c** Sing. Atrides Atride (or
Atrida) Atriden (or Atridan) Atridae Atridae Atride (or Atrida). Pl.
Atridae Atridae Atridas Atridum Atridis Atridis **d** Hecate Hecate
Hecaten Hecates Hecatae Hecate **e** Sing. harpe harpe harpen harpes
harpa harpe. Pl. harpa harpa harpas harparum harpis harpis
f Boreas Borea Borean Boreae Boreae Borea **g** Sing. crambe crambe
cramben crambes crambae crambe. Pl. crambae crambae crambas
crambarum crambis crambis **h** Cybele Cybele Cybelen Cybeles
Cybelae Cybele **i** Cyrene Cyrene Cyrenen Cyrenes Cyrenae Cyrene
j Hebe Hebe Heben Hebes Hebae Hebe **29 a** Sing. lampas lampas
lampada lampadis lampadi lampade. Pl. lampades lampades lampadas
lampadum lampadibus lampadibus **b** Sing. lynx lynx lyncem lyncis

lynxi lynce. Pl. lynces lynces lynces (or lyncas) lyncum lyncibus
 lyncibus **c** Babylon Babylon Babylonem Babylonis Babyloⁿi Babylone
d Agamemnon Agamemnon Agamemnona Agamemnonis Agamemnoni
 Agamemnone **e** Pericles Pericles (or Pericle) Periclen Periclis (or
 Pericli) Pericli Pericle **f** Rhodos Rhodos Rhodon Rhodi Rhodo
 Rhodo **g** Paris Pari (or Paris) Parin (or Parim, Paridem or Parida)
 Paridis (or Paridos) Paridi Paride **h** Orpheus Orpheus (or Orpheu)
 Orphea Orphei (or Orpheos) Orphei Orptheo **i** Chios Chios Chion
 Chii Chio Chio **j** Sing. heros heros heroa (or heroem) herois heroi
 heroe. Pl. heroes heroes heroa heroum heroibus heroibus
30 a 1 dat. sing. 2 abl. sing. **b** acc. sing. **c** gen. sing. **d** gen. sing.
e acc. sing. **f** acc. pl. **g** voc. sing. **h** 1 gen. sing. 2 dat. sing. 3 nom. pl.
 4 voc. pl. **i** acc. sing. **j** gen. sing. **31 a** poematis n. poem **b** Euripidis
 m. Euripides, an Athenian tragedian **c** Phlegethontis m. Phlegethon,
 a river in Hades (the Underworld) **d** Trois m. Tros, a king of
 Phrygia (after whom Troy was named) **e** Sophoclis m. Sophocles,
 an Athenian tragedian **f** Eurydices f. Eurydice, wife of Orpheus
g psephismatis n. decree of the people, vote **h** Diones f. Dione,
 mother of Venus **i** Theseos (or Thesei) m. Theseus, the Greek hero
 who slew the Minotaur **j** Lemni f. Lemnos, an Aegean island

Unit 3 ex. 32–33

32 a acc. sing. from vis **b** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. from vir **c** acc. pl. from
 vir **d** acc. sing. or alternative gen. pl. from vir **e** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl.
 from vis **f** gen. pl. from vir **g** abl. sing. from vis **h** 1. gen. sing.
 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. from vir **i** gen. pl. from vis **j** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc.
 pl. 3 acc. pl. from vis **33 a** Sing. frater frater fratrem fratris fratri
 fratre. Pl. fratres fratres fratres fratrum fratribus fratibus **b** Sing.
 iuvenis iuvenis iuvenem iuvenis iuveni iuvene. Pl. iuvenes iuvenes
 iuvenes iuvenum iuvenibus iuvenibus **c** Sing. mater mater matrem
 matris matri matre. Pl. matres matres matres matrum matribus
 matribus **d** Sing. canis canis canem canis cani cane. Pl. canes canes
 canes canum canibus canibus **e** Sing. pater pater patrem patris patri
 patre. Pl. patres patres patres patrum patribus patribus **f** Sing. sedes
 sedes sedem sedis sedi sede. Pl. sedes sedes sedes sedum sedibus
 sedibus **g** Sing. accipiter accipiter accipitrem accipitris accipitri
 accipitre. Pl. accipitres accipitres accipitres accipitrum accipitribus
 accipitribus **h** Sing. mensis mensis mensem mensis mensi mense. Pl.
 menses menses menses mensum mensibus mensibus **i** Sing. volucris

volucris volucrem volucris volucris volucre. Pl. volucres volucres
volucres volucrum volucris volucris **j** Sing. vates vates vatem
vatis vati vate. Pl. vates vates vates vatum vatibus vatibus

Unit 4 ex. 1-4

1 a box **b** pirates **c** we **d** it **e** onions, cabbages **f** Marius **g** diamonds
h ostriches **i** you **j** dish **2 a** The foot soldiers walked but the
commander rode. **b** The cranes had flown away. **c** The emperor is not
laughing. **d** The hare did not win. **e** We are gladiators. **f** Cassius is
asleep. **g** The soldier and the sailor were drinking. **h** The high priest
has spoken and the people will obey. **i** The teacher was teaching but the
pupils were not listening. **j** Hercules laboured for a long time.
3 a Merlin was a wizard. **b** The pauper will be a prince. **c** The dog is a
nuisance. **d** Pheidias was a master craftsman. **e** Temples are buildings.
f The looters are prisoners. **g** Public speakers are liars. **h** The Romans
were victors. **i** The praetorian guardsmen will be the assassins.
j Brutus had been consul. **4 a** Master, the guests are departing. **b** Hello
farmers! **c** Valeria, Titus, the boy is falling. **d** Centurion, the captives
have escaped. **e** The enemy are arriving, soldiers! **f** Valerius, Julius and
Tiberius are running. **g** Hello son. **h** Father, spring is on the way.
i Where are you, Marcus? **j** Fortune, you are a goddess.

Unit 4 ex. 5-8

5 a dog **b** boxes **c** misery **d** boats **e** mother **f** dung **g** wall **h** signal
i orders **j** disease **6 a** The hunters heard the shouts. **b** The teachers
were teaching the boys. **c** The druids have sacrificed a bull. **d** Master,
the slaves are carrying the bread. **e** The squirrels were hiding nuts.
f The workmen are building a wall. **g** The soldiers made Claudius
emperor. **h** The girls applauded the actor. **i** The miser loves money.
j The ship has struck a rock. **7 a** senator socios vocat. **b** flumen agros
inundavit. **c** Hercules hydram petivit. **d** Aemilium pueri amant.
e Galli Romanos timent. **f** custodes portas clausurunt. **g** canes
pastorem spectant. **h** agricola aves liberavit. **i** aurum celant. **j** feles
aquam non amant. **8 a** Oh unbelievable foulness! **b** I am well in (my)
body. **c** He walked for twenty paces. **d** O wonderful courage! **e** The
soldier is six feet tall. **f** I was wounded in the hands. **g** The lake was a
hundred feet deep. **h** The horse is lame in the leg. **i** O fickle glory!
j His limbs were bare (lit. He was bare in the limbs).

Unit 4 ex. 9–10

9 a The boy is reciting the verses of Vergil. **b** I am learning the art of riding. **c** I never open the door of the house. **d** The shepherd loves the daughter of the king. **e** You have heard the children's voices. **f** The barber is counting the hairs of the old man's head. **g** We fear the troop of soldiers. **h** It is the job of a doctor to cure the sick. **i** The threats of the enemy were frightening the children. **j** Heaps of dung are blocking the road. **k** The maidservants heard the sounds of thunder. **l** The citizens approve a man of honesty. **m** Hannibal lost the sight of an eye. **n** The waters of the river flowed slowly. **o** The crown of jewels shone. **p** It is the duty of a leader to look after the city. **q** The elephants are carrying masses of rocks. **r** We do not see the soldiers' wounds. **s** The scouts were looking at the peaks of the mountains. **t** They were learning the language of the Romans. **10 a** onera terga asellorum premunt. **b** Cassius est vir crudelitatis capax. **c** viri oppidi non pugnabunt. **d** servi togas dominorum lavant. **e** undas maris amamus. **f** amor belli humanitatem delet. **g** lucem ignis non viderunt. **h** halitum canis non amo. **i** sapientia reginae navem servavit. **j** pondus argenti habeo. **k** est nautae navigare. **l** praemium virtutis gloria est. **m** domum poetae amabis. **n** amor pecuniae radix mali est. **o** acervum ovorum invenimus. **p** amor matris liberos sustinet. **q** Romani nomen regis non amabant. **r** thesaurum magi quaerimus. **s** mater Bruti dormiebat. **t** virum centum annorum scio.

Unit 4 ex. 11–12

11 a The farmer is mindful of the war. **b** The citizens value dignity at a great price. **c** The miners have found some gold. **d** Where in the world were we? **e** For how large a price did you buy the house? **f** The poor men used to lack shoes. **g** A thief values honesty little. **h** The senator had swallowed a lot of poison. **i** He is carrying enough burdens. **j** The climbers had too little rope. **k** The general saw less of the battle. **l** The girls were carrying some bread. **m** The fox has taken so much cheese. **n** We destroyed part of the wall. **o** Do you have any money? **p** The children have drunk too much water. **q** Many of the gladiators were fighting. **r** Several of the captives are ill. **s** Part of the procession halted. **t** They bought the ships at a great price. **12 a** satis domuum cupimus. **b** equi nimis ligni trahunt. **c** aliquid

novi habes? **d** lacus est plenus piscium. **e** corvus aliquid frumenti cepit. **f** memor periculi est. **g** pax multum divitiarum facit. **h** multi liberorum ludebant. **i** nimis fletus vidi. **j** aquae indigemus. **k** hoc temporis custodies dormiunt. **l** parvi pretii fundum emit. **m** pastor partem gregis custodit. **n** pars aciei appropinquabat. **o** puer plus fructus portat. **p** parum salis habemus. **q** quantum fabulae sciunt? **r** partem arboris servavimus. **s** imperator ignavos parvi aestimat. **t** complures nostrum dissensimus.

Unit 4 ex. 13–14

13 a You are telling a story to the children. **b** We have sent help to our allies. **c** The election agent will not persuade the voters. **d** I have promised gifts for the ladies. **e** The poets were reciting to the citizens. **f** The senators did not believe the speaker. **g** The poor do not envy the rich. **h** The sisters were coming to help their brothers. **i** Caesar has spared his enemies. **j** Arminius was pre-eminent over the Germans. **k** We do not favour the candidate. **l** The conjurers pleased the guests. **m** The citizens trust the priests. **n** The barbarians resisted the Romans for a long time. **o** Vitellia was like her mother. **p** The guards were failing in their duty to the prisoners. **q** The masters gave orders to the slaves. **r** Sulla harmed his enemies. **s** We shall not serve the soldiers. **t** The teacher gave the books to the pupils. **14 a** reginae fidebas. **b** venatores vestigiis cervi studebant. **c** cursores glaciei diffidunt. **d** feminae spectatoribus intererunt. **e** sociis non persuasistis. **f** victoribus invideo. **g** ignavi pueris non subvenient. **h** dominus servis indulget. **i** oves plaustris obstant. **j** mandata militibus non placent. **k** matri favet. **l** vulpes pullis non nocebunt. **m** matrona anulos filiabus misit. **n** sacerdotes sacrificia deis dederunt. **o** iudex sicario non ignoscet. **p** Portia Bruto nupsit. **q** iuvenes nuntio crediderunt. **r** feles canibus diffidunt. **s** moles undis resistet. **t** testes iudici verum dicunt.

Unit 4 ex. 15–18

15 a The boys were collecting charcoal for the workmen. **b** We shall make peace for future generations. **c** The Romans built baths for the inhabitants. **d** The elephants dragged the tree trunks for the foresters. **e** Father has bought horses for his daughters. **f** You have prepared an ambush for the enemy. **g** He is carrying the bread for his wife. **h** Brutus slew Caesar for the republic. **i** The enemy have

devastated the fields for the farmers. **j** The girl plucked apples for her sister. **16 a** The stranger's name was Ulysses. **b** The Carthaginians have elephants. **c** I have sent the gems to my grandmother for a gift. **d** The citizens had a brave leader. **e** They boys chose a place for a fight. **f** The artists sought out the building for its beauty. **g** The summits of the mountains have snow. **h** The scouts have found a place for the camp. **i** The Greeks have a hundred ships. **j** The workmen were sweeping the stadium for the contest. **17 a** The ships were of benefit to the Carthaginians. **b** Brutus was a source of honour to the Romans. **c** The prisoners are a burden to the soldiers. **d** Milo was a source of hatred to Clodius. **e** Cloelia is an example to the girls. **f** The husband will be a source of support to his wife. **g** Snares are a danger to bears. **h** The river was a source of safety to the travellers. **i** The son was a concern to his mother. **j** Catiline was a disgrace to the senators. **18 a** pullos ioco portamus. **b** principes oneri erant civibus. **c** seni dormimus. **d** fornaces pistoribus usui sunt. **e** Romani amphitheatrum spectaculis aedificaverunt. **f** viginti equi sunt aurigae. **g** suffragatoribus candidatus non audiebat. **h** fures aurum avaro surripuerunt. **i** fustes sunt comissatoribus. **j** impedimenta pompae amovebis.

Unit 4 ex. 19–22

19 a We shall free the citizens from slavery. **b** The looters stripped the armour from the bodies. **c** The senators deprived the traitor of his titles. **d** The hostages lack food and water. **e** The boxer fights nude, without clothes. (lit. nude from clothes). **f** The soldiers are keeping the enemy away from the city. **g** The philosopher always used to abstain from wine. **h** The girls are driving the wasps away from the baby's toys. **i** I am acquitting the defendant from the charge. **j** We lack planks and nails. **20 a** The merchants made the farmers rich with their money. **b** The senate supplied the citizens with bread. **c** The river was born from springs. **d** The maidservants will fill the jugs with water. **e** The ambassadors presented the consuls with a crown. **f** Romulus was born of a god. **g** The butler filled the guests with wine. **h** Once the mine was rich in silver. **i** The wizard satisfied the king's greed with gold. **j** Mars made the woman pregnant with twins. **21 a** The sailor is steering the ship in a storm. **b** Caesar was wounded in the back. **c** The geese do not fly in silence. **d** The bears attacked the people with speed. **e** The cowards trembled in the knees. **f** The robbers procured the money by fraud. **g** The dog was

lame in the foot. **h** The miser surpasses the poet in greed. **i** Cassius is a man of significant public standing. **j** The children were playing with delight. **22 a** *exsules terra non expellemus.* **b** *Achilles dea natus est.* **c** *loca deserta aqua egent.* **d** *bello patres filios sepeliunt.* **e** *fundus pecudibus abundat.* **f** *Horatius existimatione dignus est.* **g** *flumen formidine transimus.* **h** *cupam lacte implevistis.* **i** *victores vi abstinebunt.* **j** *Marcus Titum capite pulsavit.*

Unit 4 ex. 23–26

23 a The fishermen are catching fish with nets. **b** The pupils were writing with pens. **c** The senators reproached Catiline with insults. **d** The boys were playing with dice. **e** The cowherds are driving the oxen on with sticks. **f** The gardeners have decorated the garden with roses. **g** The orator was urging the citizens on with his words. **h** We shall defend our freedom with axes. **i** They burnt the cottages with torches. **j** The priest struck the victim with a knife. **24 a** He is not opening the gate for fear of the dark. **b** They were walking slowly on account of the speed of the wind. **c** Cassius is no better than Brutus. **d** I have hidden the gold in expectation of robbers. **e** The children are jumping for joy. **f** The snake is longer than the worm by twenty feet. **g** They laid down their arms out of their love of peace. **h** Dogs like grass much less than asses (do). **i** How much bigger is a toad than a frog? **j** The Romans expelled Tarquin because of their hatred of kings. **25 a** I bought the estate for a hundred talents. **b** A ship is sailing on the sea. **c** The assassin hid the body in the garden. **d** Tarquin bought the books for gold. **e** The friends are meeting in the baths. **f** The horses cost twenty talents. **g** He sold the cow for five beans. **h** The legions will spend the winter in cities. **i** The nightingale was singing in the top of the tree. **j** He completed the victory with blood and the sword. **26 a** *philosophus inimicos benignitate superavit.* **b** *Aeneas paulo optimus erat.* **c** *fragore aves terruisti.* **d** *equites campo equitabant.* **e** *tabulas quattuor talentis vendidi.* **f** *dei consilium ominibus probant.* **g** *mater liberos mele alit.* **h** *metallum parvo ememus.* **i** *Romani Carthaginienses terra marique oppugnaverunt.* **j** *Horatius amore patriae pugnavit.*

Unit 4 ex. 27–30

27 a The bishop's palace was at Antioch. **b** The conspirators met at the house of Brutus. **c** I shall stay in London for three days. **d** Claudius used to live in Rome. **e** The Romans pitched camp

at Veii. **f** The old man used to sleep on the ground. **g** Foxes and hares are playing in the countryside. **h** We are waiting for the fleet at Brundisium. **i** The end of the world is at Cadiz. **j** Plato and Aristotle used to teach in Athens. **28 a** Tomorrow we shall walk to the country. **b** The boys were hurrying home in terror. **c** Soon we shall depart from Sicily. **d** The ambassadors came to Sparta from Athens. **e** The doctor fled from Alexandria. **f** The merchants sailed to Carthage. **g** In summer we always send the children to Marseilles. **h** The messenger ran from home. **i** The Romans did not always win in war. **j** The king sent ships to Tyre and Sidon. **29 a** The camels will arrive in four days. **b** They cultivated the farm for five years. **c** You received your inheritance in the third year. **d** In winter the trees do not have leaves. **e** The youths will guard the bridge for seven days. **f** In the morning the farmer ploughs the field. **g** We shall be parents in nine months. **h** The phoenix will rise in a hundred years. **i** In the evening the sky grows red. **j** The geese were honking for six nights. **30 a** *donum domi reliqui. b octo dies piscatores fluitabant. c quinque diebus Delphos perigrinatores venerunt. d patrem Lutetiae exspectabis. e hieme philosophus Athenis habitat. f cras cantor Corintho veniet. g Londinio non vesperi discedemus. h sex mensibus fabri domum perfecerint. i testudo centum annos vixit. j naves frumentum Ostia portabant.*

Unit 5 ex. 1-4

1 a acc. f. s. **b** 1 nom. f. pl. 2 voc. f. pl. **c** gen. f. pl. **d** 1 dat. f. pl. 2 abl. f. pl. **e** acc. m. pl. **f** gen. m. s. **g** 1 dat. m. pl. 2 abl. m. pl. **h** acc. m. s. **i** 1 nom. n. pl. 2 voc. n. pl. 3 acc. n. pl. **j** abl. m. s.
2 a I have found beautiful gems in a wooden chest. **b** Good men do not approve of wicked crimes. **c** Yesterday I bought five white horses. **d** The children are afraid of the black night. **e** The shaggy bears are hibernating in thick woods. **f** The sailors saw dark clouds above the sea. **g** The wretched fugitives wandered through the lands. **h** Caesar cut off the right hands of the Gauls. **i** The youths will fight at the red rocks. **j** The little ship is lying on the bottom of the sea. **3 a** *malefica umbra in imo puteo habitavit. b magni et boni nonnumquam ignavi sunt. c suffragatores irati togam candidati sordidam non amant. d ursi fulvi iuxta flumen pulchrum ambulant. e magus callidus in libro occulto scripsit. f rex superbus colonos miseros neglegebat. g deae dirae scelestos punient. h arbor longaeva in summo colle stetit. i pulli teneri in nido alto dormiunt. j cras*

feminae fessae ad portam primam advenient. **4 a** a bonis **b** boni
c bonorum **d** boni or bonos **e** bone **f** bonae **g** bono **h** bonarum
i bonum **j** bonam

Unit 5 ex. 5–8

5 a The bold youths swam across the river. **b** The boys were touching the toga of the lucky man. **c** The boxers fought with equal strength. **d** They built huge walls around the city. **e** The caves of fierce beasts are in the mountains. **f** The old man was walking through the streets with the youth. **g** Women approve of a prudent husband. **h** The magistrates were powerless. **i** The citizens resisted the vicious king. **j** The philosopher has a mind capable of genius. **6 a** I hear the cries of the brave. **b** The minstrel sang sad tales. **c** The citizens obey the famous orator. **d** The journey is easy for the strong. **e** I love the taste of sweet honey. **f** Father gave gifts to all the children. **g** The Athenians used to have a common treasury. **h** Grand parades were marching through the streets. **i** Donkeys are carrying the heavy burdens across the bridge. **j** I have hidden the jewels in a safe place. **7 a** I hear the sound of fierce horses. **b** Augustus renovated the ancient temples. **c** Jason fought with winged monsters. **d** We drink clean water at the spring. **e** The race is not always to the swift. **f** We are applauding the famous actor in the theatre. **g** The poor man was sitting at the gates of the rich man. **h** The pilgrims arrived at the shrine safe and sound. **i** The messengers hurried with swift steps. **j** Elephants are mindful of everything. **8 a** cursor celer tristes cives salutavit. **b** epistulam tyranno crudeli mittam. **c** Marcus est pauperis filius. **d** domus in colle viridi est. **e** Pericles omnibus persuasit. **f** iuvenes veteres observant. **g** leones saporem liberorum audacium amant. **h** Galli viam saxis ingentibus obstiterunt. **i** fortes non superabitis. **j** equum celerem petimus.

Unit 5 ex. 9–10

9 a It is the egg of a larger bird. **b** I have never seen a worse play. **c** The girl loves the son of a richer man. **d** Nothing is harder than diamond. **e** The journey is longer by road than by sea. **f** The Alps are much higher than the hills of Rome. **g** The Romans withstood stronger enemies than the Greeks. **h** We hear the shouts of more horsemen. **i** The Romans have better buildings than the Gauls. **j** A sheep is a little smaller than a goat. **10 a** Socrates was the wisest of men. **b** The traitor's words were very doubtful. **c** The

monster has very sharp teeth. **d** Blood is thicker than water. **e** Some very graceful cranes were flying over the roofs. **f** The pen is mightier than the sword. **g** Gardens are more ideal than fields. **h** The girl was collecting as many roses as possible for her mother. **i** Very many of the citizens searched for the gold. **j** Elephants are much heavier than bulls.

Unit 5 ex. 11–13

11 a The girls jumped down into the lake spontaneously. **b** The miser fed his children too little. **c** The workmen repaired the crane badly.

d The old man instructed the youths wisely. **e** The defendant fiercely denied the charge. **f** Marcus was easily the tallest. **g** You praised Cicero greatly. **h** The Greeks had about a thousand ships. **i** They were not doing business well. **j** Romeo loved Juliet very much.

12 a We shall always be faithful to the citizens. **b** Master, the guests will arrive soon. **c** Nowhere have I seen a more beautiful woman.

d We shall attack the enemy elsewhere. **e** He had prepared dinner not long before. **f** I did not stay in the bedroom for long. **g** Cicero has abused Catiline for a second time. **h** Tomorrow perhaps you will see Caesar. **i** He summoned his son again and again. **j** The ambassadors will certainly sue for peace.

13 a The assassins have very wickedly killed the senator. **b** The poet had finally finished his poem. **c** The priests fled in the greatest safety from the temple. **d** I hurried to the guards as quickly as possible. **e** I walk more easily than I run. **f** Varus waged war worse than Caesar. **g** We have waited for the messenger for too long. **h** The Cyclops was less clever than Ulysses. **i** The horsemen arrived at the city more quickly than the foot soldiers.

j The maidservant dances much better than she sings.

Unit 6 ex. 1–4

1 a The boys are sitting in the goats' way. **b** The does ran to the woods. **c** At Marcus' house jugglers are pleasing the guests. **d** The old man had built a wall around his garden. **e** The crows are flying over the tops of the trees. **f** The horses were swimming across the river.

g The slave hid the cup behind the seat. **h** Cicero wrote speeches against Mark Antony. **i** The valley lay between the mountains.

j The leaders met on this side of the city. **2 a** Horatius withstood the Etruscans in sight of the citizens. **b** The speaker stood in front of the crowd. **c** The judge spoke on behalf of the defendant. **d** I am walking

without companions. **e** Cicero denounced Catiline in the presence of the senators. **f** The miser has buried the gold under the floor. **g** We had an argument about the farm. **h** Water flowed out of the spring. **i** The boys were playing with the girls in the yard. **j** A dolphin was swimming in the harbour. **3 a** The baker put the bread upon the table. **b** The Gauls ravaged the fields as far as the city. **c** The camels do not drink before noon. **d** They are placing the jewels next to the crown. **e** She gave the boy a kiss in front of her parents. **f** We are running to the tavern because of the rain. **g** The crocodile lies hidden underneath the river bank. **h** You are seeking power for the sake of money. **i** In the summer the children will sleep outside their bedrooms. **j** We are looking for the treasure in the caves. **4 a** poema honoris gratia scribes. **b** inter casas equitavit. **c** clam custodes portas aperuerunt. **d** cras e silvis discedemus. **e** pro mercatoribus laboro. **f** animalia dormiebant, praeter anseres. **g** subter ripam ambulamus. **h** statuae prae templo stant. **i** insulae ultra mare iacent. **j** post meridiem sub sole dormimus.

Unit 6 ex. 5-6

5 a The emperor provided bread and circuses for the citizens. **b** I think, therefore I am. **c** They were building not only bridges but also aqueducts. **d** Milo is standing outside the gates for he is a guard. **e** The actors recited badly; nevertheless the spectators applauded. **f** I have found neither gold nor silver. **g** Everyone was silent for the master was ill. **h** Both Brutus and Cassius attacked Caesar. **i** Surely you will visit the temple? **j** We have finished our work and so we are walking home. **6 a** The crows fly away as often as the dogs bark. **b** At the same time as the trumpet sounded, the enemy made their attack. **c** As the climate warms, so the seas will expand. **d** Children learn while they play. **e** After their mother left, the boys were crying. **f** Because he has produced the games we praise Caesar. **g** Even if the mountain is high, we shall climb it. **h** Because their enemies are everywhere, so the Romans are always fighting. **i** Whether you will stay or leave, I shall always be true to the citizens. **j** Titus fell down because he was running too quickly.

Unit 6 ex. 7

7 a We shall have finished the building within two days. **b** 1966. **c** The king reigned for thirty-seven years. **d** The chieftain gave his brothers three horses each. **e** The animals went into the ship two by

two. **f** In the ninetieth year the Greeks renewed the treaty. **g** The scouts saw twenty thousand soldiers. **h** The citizens feared the board of ten very much.

Unit 7 ex. 1–4

1 a Salvius visited me yesterday. **b** We shall walk to the farm with you. **c** I love you. **d** Father told me a story. **e** The Romans' hatred of us is very well known. **f** I shall give you the gold. **g** The judges will forgive you. **h** The knights were approaching us slowly. **i** Several of you are present. **j** We shall stay but you will leave. **2 a** We turn (ourselves) to the North. **b** The robbers have hidden themselves in caves. **c** You favour yourselves for the sake of money. **d** Why will you not forgive yourself? **e** You have disgraced yourself in front of the citizens. **f** I shall keep the gift for myself. **g** We shall never blame ourselves. **h** I always shave (myself) in the morning. **i** They built the house for themselves. **j** Titus has hurt himself with the knife. **3 a** I have bought new clothes for your children. **b** The Romans have devastated our farm. **c** Your horse is bigger than mine. **d** My geese were honking throughout the night. **e** He defended the bridge with his brothers. **f** O my son, at last I have found you. **g** It is through your fault that the thief entered the house. **h** I do not approve of your plans. **i** He loves the sound of his own voice. **j** Our men will fight against the Gauls. **4 a** *villam pulchram meam tibi ostendi.* **b** *nos equitabimus sed vos ambulabitis.* **c** *Narcissus se nimis amavit.* **d** *feminae ad forum nobiscum venerunt.* **e** *Hercules, gloria tua sempiterna est.* **f** *gladiatores nostros superaverunt.* **g** *captivi se servabunt.* **h** *proditor me non servabit.* **i** *pater nobis ratem fecit.* **j** *nautae cibum sibi collegerunt.*

Unit 7 ex. 5–8

5 a Portia loves him very much. **b** Those girls are playing in the garden. **c** We were at home at that time. **d** We love the same woman. **e** I do not support that candidate. **f** I saw the same monster yesterday. **g** I am looking for their clothes. **h** That picture is of the same boys. **i** I have never seen those men. **j** I saved her but I abandoned him. **6 a** These words are unbelievable. **b** The footprints of this wild beast are very large. **c** This day we shall fight for our freedom. **d** I have often heard this story. **e** We have been expecting these men for a long time. **f** Lions live in this cave. **g** We shall run far

from this place. **h** Cassius envies this man. **i** The sculptor is making statues of these citizens. **j** We shall not buy this farm. **7 a** We do not approve of that. **b** Those senators have killed Caesar. **c** We shall enter the city through that gate. **d** The speaker pleaded the case eloquently on behalf of that defendant. **e** I shall not defend the son of that robber. **f** The painters were decorating those houses. **g** The leaders of those nations support the Romans. **h** The youth is watching that woman intently. **i** We saw that man yesterday in the forum. **j** That dog of yours has bitten me. **8 a** eam mox videbimus. **b** haec sunt eadem arbores. **c** illud aratrum gravius hoc est. **d** nemo ista vestimenta amat. **e** id non audivi. **f** haec cena optima est. **g** togam huius lavavi. **h** eodem die ad templum advenimus. **i** sonitum illorum tintinnabulorum amo. **j** eam epistulam ei dederunt.

Unit 7 ex. 9–11

9 a Who will guard those very guards? **b** She chose the dress herself. **c** Dido killed herself with this very sword. **d** These captives are the children of the king himself. **e** I saw the very same ghost again yesterday. **f** I have given the money to my uncle himself. **g** I cooked dinner myself. **h** The soldiers of the praetorian guard themselves slew the emperor. **i** The crime itself revealed the perpetrator. **j** I have seen the goddess herself in the temple. **10 a** Those whom you love, I love too. **b** Those men are people whom I shall never support. **c** The dinner which you had prepared was very bad. **d** He who dares will win. **e** There are two choices, neither of which is good. **f** Titus is the judge before whom we shall stand. **g** That man is the leader whom we shall always obey. **h** This is the senator whose son Vitellia loves. **i** The gold which I have found is very heavy. **j** That man shall be king who will have pulled the sword out of the stone. **11 a** aurum ipsum quod avarus ipse celavit inveni. **b** fures qui te spoliaverunt capiemus. **c** domum quam cupis aedificabunt. **d** quod vidi non amo. **e** monstrum ipsum non inimicum est. **f** pericula quae timuimus ea ipsa vitavit. **g** viro diffidimus cuius pater proditor erat. **h** feminae urbem ipsam servabunt. **i** fures ipsos capietis. **j** non omne quod fulget est aurum.

Unit 7 ex. 12–14

12 a Someone's horse has jumped over the fence. **b** A certain traveller saw someone on the road. **c** I supported a certain candidate whom

I shall not name. **d** They hid the treasure underneath a certain tree. **e** The soothsayer whispered certain ill-omened words. **f** The assassin killed the senator with certain poisons. **g** The hunters watched some stags. **h** We have adopted a certain dangerous plan. **i** The refugees will depart from the city secretly on a certain day. **j** We shall never know the names of some conspirators. **13 a** What news have you heard? **b** I have asked each man about the gold. **c** Who, pray, freed that troll? **d** The Romans slew each single one of the villagers. **e** What secret symbols do magicians have? **f** I shall give you whatever money I have got. **g** Surely the miser has not left anything to his son? **h** Is there any woman who will love Antony? **i** What witnesses will you call to the court? **j** Whose farm is this? **14 a** quis est ea femina? **b** Titus Romam quibusdam amicis veniet. **c** fabulam quandam a sene audivi. **d** Melissa aliquid de domino mihi dixit. **e** quisque templum vidit. **f** cuius donum cepisti? **g** quos legatus eliget? **h** quemquam hodie vidisti? **i** cum quibus regina ambulabat? **j** feminae quaedam tibi non favebunt.

Unit 7 ex. 15–17

15 a Which consul have the Carthaginians killed? **b** We shall climb the mountains by any means. **c** Cloelia alone resisted the enemy. **d** I prefer the one brother to the other. **e** We shall adopt another plan. **f** We have seen no ships in the harbour. **g** Cicero received the praise of the entire senate. **h** Neither girl recognized the actor. **i** Hercules feared no-one. **j** Clodia loves the husband of another woman. **16 a** The guards have killed one or other of the prisoners. **b** With such words the orator persuaded the citizens. **c** What sort of gifts are these? **d** How big is an elephant? **e** I shall support whichever of the two consuls will give bribes. **f** I have got some money from my father. **g** Such a youth will never be a soldier. **h** With what sort of companions will you make your journey? **i** Petronius always produces such great plays. **j** The cook has seasoned the dinner with a little spice. **17 a** quali viro Cloelia nubet? **b** quanta est potestas deorum? **c** nemo Cassandrae credidit. **d** alter consul alterum graviter vituperavit. **e** ego solus Lepido favebo. **f** cras templa alius urbis videbimus. **g** utram sororem amas? **h** desperati ulla consilia capient. **i** non saepe tales thesauros vidimus. **j** neutrum fratrem hodie viderunt.

Unit 7 ex. 18–21

18 a Has Caesar really been killed? **b** Have you seen my dog?
c Did that man really steal the money? **d** Surely Titus will not come tomorrow? **e** You have fed the cat, haven't you Septimus? **f** Have you seen that gladiator before? **g** Did Cassius really say that?
h Are the boys playing in the sand? **i** Surely you do not support that candidate? **j** The flowers are beautiful, aren't they? **19 a** When will my prince come? **b** How did Caesar cross the Rhine? **c** Why don't you love her? **d** By what way did the thief come into the hall?
e Where are the chairs, maidservants? **f** How long were you lying in the bedroom Quintus? **g** How did you find the ancient city? **h** How firm is this sword? **i** How many sheep are in the fields? **j** Where did Claudius get that toga from? **20 a** Have you finished the shield, craftsman? **b** Do you love Tiberius or Quintus? **c** How many times does he say these words? **d** Will you prepare dinner or not? **e** Are you nineteen or twenty years old? **f** Why is the slave shutting the door? **g** Have you visited Vesuvius or not? **h** For what reason are the Romans attacking the Gauls? **i** Do you prefer nuts or grapes? **j** Will Tullius ride or will Julius? **21 a** *cur milites pontem delent?* **b** *nonne aurum celavisti?* **c** *ubi sunt gemmae mercatoris?* **d** *estne Marcus domi?* **e** *utrum Colosseum an Circum Maximum visitabimus?* **f** *quot elephantos habuit Hannibal?* **g** *an canis te momordit?* **h** *num fundum vendidit?* **i** *utrum Aemilia Romam veniet annon?* **j** *ubi sunt putei in hoc vico?*

Unit 8 ex. 1–4

1 a *ducar duceric ducetur ducemur ducemini ducentur* **b** *facior faceris facitur facimur facimini faciuntur* **c** *regebar regebaris regebatur regebamur regebamini regebantur* **d** *servor servaris servatur servamur servamini servantur* **e** *capiar capieris capietur capiemur capiemiini capientur* **f** *docebar docebaris docebatur docebamur docebamini docebantur* **g** *custodior custodiris custoditur custodimur custodimini custodiuntur* **h** *iubebor iubeberis iubebitur iubebimur iubebimini iubebuntur* **i** *dicebar dicebaris dicebatur dicebamur dicebamini dicebantur* **j** *moneor moneris monetur monemur monemini monentur* **2 a** you are being persuaded **b** I shall be dragged **c** we shall be cut **d** you will be loved **e** it was being felt **f** they will be seized **g** they are given **h** we are summoned **i** you were being moved **j** you were being destroyed **3 a** The ram was held by the thickets.

b Caesar will be warned by Artemidorus. **c** Gifts will be given to you by your grandchildren. **d** The dinner was being cooked by the cook. **e** The general will be captured by the enemy. **f** We are hindered by the mountains. **g** The column will be led by Tiberius. **h** Aeneas is wounded by an arrow. **i** We were being praised by the consuls. **j** The seeds are being scattered by the farmers. **4 a** ab omnibus audiar. **b** ab optimis magistris docebimini. **c** orator a multis creditur. **d** fabula a sene narrabatur. **e** a canibus spectantur. **f** a servis portae claudebantur. **g** a serpente puella mordebitur. **h** navis undis scopulisque frangebatur. **i** cras nuntiabitur. **j** liber a scriba callidissimo scribebatur.

Unit 8 ex. 5–8

5 a habitus sum habitus es habitus est habiti sumus habiti estis habiti sunt **b** actus ero actus eris actus erit acti erimus acti eritis acti erunt **c** auditus eram auditus eras auditus erat auditi eramus auditi eratis auditi erant **d** captus ero captus eris captus erit capti erimus capti eritis capti erunt **e** ductus eram ductus eras ductus erat ducti eramus ducti eratis ducti erant **f** monitus sum monitus es monitus est moniti sumus moniti estis moniti sunt **g** custoditus sum custoditus es custoditus est custoditi sumus custoditi estis custoditi sunt **h** factus eram factus eras factus erat facti eramus facti eratis facti erant **i** laudatus sum laudatus es laudatus est laudati sumus laudati estis laudati sunt **j** exspectatus sum exspectatus es exspectatus est exspectati sumus exspectati estis exspectati sunt. **6 a** it had been done **b** she has been praised **c** it will have been finished **d** she has been betrayed **e** it had been written **f** she will have been forgiven **g** she had been saved **h** it has been noted **i** she has been punished **j** it will have been built **7 a** The gifts had been given by the king. **b** The asses were oppressed by the burdens. **c** The letters will have been sent by the ambassadors. **d** The crop had been spoilt by the storms. **e** Tomorrow the city will have been captured. **f** The kings were expelled by the citizens. **g** The gems had been stolen by thieves. **h** The very famous knot was cut down the middle by Alexander. **i** The lamb has been snatched off by an eagle. **j** The plans will have been revealed by the traitors. **8 a** lucernae a ministro accensae erunt. **b** fundi a vilico venditi erant. **c** mater a crocodilis consumpta est. **d** rosae pulcherrimae a puella carptae erant. **e** lepus a testudine victus erit. **f** a mercatoribus fraudati sumus. **g** umbra a pueris numquam visa erat. **h** agri a militibus vastati erant. **i** haec terra a mago recta est. **j** cives a barbaris excitati erunt.

Unit 8 ex. 9–12

9 a The philosophers were thinking about the nature of wisdom. **b** Don't dawdle, children. **c** We are encouraging the athletes, citizens. **d** We shall suffer nothing worse than death. **e** The king died in his sixtieth year. **f** In the morning we shall set out from home. **g** The workmen are testing the bridge. **h** The horses stepped nervously through the river. **i** The girls followed the procession joyfully. **j** The Gauls had come in through the gates of Rome. **10 a** The tree nymphs were sprung from trees. **b** Tomorrow the Romans will advance on the Greeks. **c** We are rejoicing, therefore, while we are young. **d** The girl is fourteen years old. **e** That master craftsman only used the best marble. **f** The merchant obtained a luxurious house. **g** The slaves had the use of their kind master's garden. **h** In winter the farmer had used up his hay. **i** After the disaster the emperor used to grow very angry. **j** The consuls will discharge their duty very well. **11 a** The sun will soon rise. **b** The cows feed on the grass. **c** The woman has dared to contradict Caesar. **d** Do not ever tell a lie, my son. **e** The muggers attacked the old man. **f** Once, the girls had been accustomed to meet at the spring in the morning. **g** The miser has never trusted me. **h** All the boys are frightened of the bull. **i** The guards will not talk about the prisoners. **j** Why are you threatening the young men, judge? **12 a** *cur magistratus de pecunia mentitus est?* **b** *librisne potitus es?* **c** *noli tenebras vereri, mi fili.* **d** *animalium non oblitus sum.* **e** *cervum ingentem venamur.* **f** *cras de consilio loquemur.* **g** *hostes trans campum lente progrediuntur.* **h** *non soletis diligenter laborare.* **i** *cives oratori semper fisi sunt.* **j** *captivi e carcere non egredientur.*

Unit 9 ex. 1–2

1 a *faciar faciaris faciaturs faciamur faciamini faciantur* **b** *secem seces secet secemus secetis secent* **c** *regam regas regat regamus regatis regant* **d** *teneat tenearis teneatur teneamur teneamini teneantur* **e** *moveam moveas moveat moveamus moveatis moveant* **f** *capiar capiaris capiatur capiamur capiamini capiantur* **g** *aperiar aperiaris aperiaturs aperiamur aperiamini aperiantur* **h** *cedam cedas cedat cedamus cedatis cedant* **i** *amem ames amet amemus ametis ament* **j** *videar videaris videatur videamur videamini videantur* **2 a** *traderer tradereris traderetur traderemur traderemini traderentur* **b** *viderem videres videret videremus videretis viderent* **c** *rogarer rogareris rogaretur rogaremur rogaremini rogarentur* **d** *verterem verteres verteret*

verteremus verteretis verterent **e** iacerem iaceres iaceret iaceremus
iaceretis iacerent **f** sentirer sentireris sentiretur sentiremur sentiremini
sentirentur **g** iuberem iuberetis iuberet iuberemus iuberetis iuberent
h ducerer duceretis duceretur duceremur duceremini ducerentur **i** starem
stares staret staremus staretis starent **j** frangerem frangeres frangeret
frangeremus frangeretis frangerent

Unit 9 ex. 3–4

3 a risus sim risus sis risus sit risi simus risi sitis risi sint **b** luserim
luseris luserit luserimus luseritis luserint **c** pepercerim peperceris
pepercerit pepercerimus peperceritis pepercerint **d** cupitus sim
cupitus sis cupitus sit cupiti simus cupiti sitis cupiti sint **e** dormiverim
dormiveris dormiverit dormiverimus dormiveritis dormiverint
f pugnatus sim pugnatus sis pugnatus sit pugnati simus pugnati sitis
pugnati sint **g** missus sim missus sis missus sit missi simus missi sitis
missi sint **h** suaserim suaseris suaserit suaserimus suaseritis suaserint
i paratus sim paratus sis paratus sit parati simus parati sitis parati
sint **j** reppererim reppereris reppererit reppererimus reppereritis
reppererint **4 a** relictus essem relictus esses relictus esset relictus
essemus relictus essetis relictus essent **b** delevissem delevisses delevisset
delevissemus delevissetis delevissent **c** laboratus essem laboratus
esses laboratus esset laborati essemus laborati essetis laborati
essent **d** custodivissem custodivisses custodivisset custodivissemus
custodivissetis custodivissent **e** accepissem accepisses accepisset
accepissemus accepissetis accepissent **f** pulsus essem pulsus esses
pulsus esset pulsi essemus pulsi essetis pulsi essent **g** dixissem dixisses
dixisset dixissemus dixissetis dixissent **h** doctus essem doctus esses
doctus esset docti essemus docti essetis docti essent **i** clausissem
clausisses clausisset clausissemus clausissetis clausissent **j** sepultus
essem sepultus esses sepultus esset sepulti essemus sepulti essetis
sepulti essent

Unit 9 ex. 5–8

5 a Let the gates be opened, o guards. **b** Love conquers all; let us too
yield to love. **c** Citizens, let us greet the victorious general. **d** Do not
wake the dogs. **e** Let us live as happily as possible. **f** Let the hunters
beware of the boar. **g** Do not fight in the garden, boys. **h** Now let
us work carefully. **i** Let the ambassadors approach. **j** Let us hear
Cicero. **6 a** Where are we to come now? **b** Granted that Clodia

killed her husband. **c** Suppose a monster lives in the cave. **d** How might I have helped you? **e** Why should we support you? **f** Granted that Cassius was afraid of Caesar. **g** Where should I build my villa? **h** Suppose that Britain has been conquered by the Romans. **i** Why should I work for so many years? **j** To whom should I bequeath my books? **7 a** Long live the king! **b** Tomorrow I should like to visit you. **c** May the state flourish! **d** Yesterday you would have seen Brutus laughing. **e** I would not want to see a ghost in the dark. **f** Let our enemies fall! **g** O if only Caesar had not crossed the river. **h** Who would believe Catiline? **i** If only Cato were alive now. **j** I would prefer to ride rather than to walk. **8 a** quis avarum amet? **b** ne ad litus ambulemus. **c** semper pulchre cantes. **d** ne senex equum laedat. **e** quid senatori dicam? **f** utinam ne anserem interfecisses. **g** cur librum celares? **h** nos imperator ipse ducat. **i** e foro discedamus. **j** amet Caesar Antonium.

Unit 10 ex. 1–3

1 a The farmers sang as they reaped the grain in the fields. **b** The crocodiles attacked the animals which were jumping across the river. **c** I see a boy running towards the gates. **d** The sun melted the boy's wings as he flew. **e** We heard the shouts of people celebrating the holiday. **f** We were wading carefully across the roaring river. **g** The speaker persuaded the doubting citizens. **h** I have sent gifts to my mother who is recovering. **i** The cat was watching the mouse hiding in the grass. **j** We greeted the pilgrims who were approaching the city. **2 a** The workmen were repairing the broken wheel. **b** The defeated soldiers ran to the camp. **c** At last we heard the messenger we were expecting. (the expected messenger) **d** I found bones in the rubble of the ruined temple. **e** The orator spoke eloquently on behalf of the cheated citizens. **f** The spies, having been seen by the guards, at once fled in different directions. **g** I often visit my beloved girl. **h** The priests were carrying a decorated image of the goddess. **i** The boy likes the shine of polished stones. **j** The words written in the book were very beautiful. **3 a** I reproached the boy who was going to jump into the mud. **b** The son got in the way of the soldier who was going to kill his father. **c** I caught the vase as it was about to fall. **d** We fear the coming storm. **e** On the point of crossing the bridge, they dismounted from their horses. **f** They keenly applauded the gladiators who were going to fight. **g** The ladies were walking to the forum, going to buy dresses. **h** This is the lyre of the poet who is

going to sing. **i** We were standing before the orator who was about to speak. **j** I hear the voices of those about to arrive.

Unit 10 ex. 4–7

4 a sessum **b** effugiendum **c** excusandum **d** intextum **e** sperandum
f adductum **g** valendum **h** sopitum **i** perdomandum **j** statutum
5 a The sailors were preparing the ship for sailing. **b** Quintilian used to teach the art of speaking. **c** By putting on games the emperor delighted the citizens. **d** Fabius saved the state by delaying. **e** The refugees did not reach the citadel on account of the fighting. **f** Icarus did not have a fear of flying. **g** Claudius entered the dining room to have dinner. **h** The prince is not suitable for ruling. **i** The workmen had finished the temple by working hard. **j** We did not hear the speaker's words among the shouting. **6 a** The boys have dived down into the river to swim. **b** The tale was wonderful in the telling. **c** The girls ran into the fields to play. **d** The knight came into the temple to keep vigil. **e** The king uttered threats cruel to hear. **f** The soldiers journeyed to the town to spend the winter. **g** The thing will be easy to do. **h** I walked alone through the wood to be quiet. **i** The secret is wrong to reveal. **j** The chest was hard to open. **7 a** *servando dominum servus libertatem obtinuit. b amor noster navigandi maximus est. c cantus avis dulcis auditu erat. d celeriter festinando ad tabernam pervenimus. e fas dictu est. f Romani fortiter pugnando Gallos superaverunt. g Iulius canendo matrem delectat. h cutis monstri foeda tactu erat. i poena Metti terribilis visu erat. j Turnus petendum irruit.*

Unit 10 ex. 8–10

8 a Cato was a candidate worthy of election. **b** My wife is truly loveable. **c** The speaker's words are worth hearing. **d** Brutus was a man worthy of praise among the Romans. **e** I used to collect many jewels which were worth having. **f** The very small fly is not to be seen. **g** The consuls put on games worth watching. **h** Yesterday I saw certain horses worth buying. **i** The huge knot was not to be unravelled. **j** The very good cook was preparing a meal worth eating. **9 a** I have proved the argument which had to be demonstrated. **b** Now you must be quiet. **c** Carthage must be destroyed. **d** As she had to be punished, the citizens threw Tarpeia down from the rock. **e** You must beware. **f** We must always respect

our parents. **g** Claudius saw to it that an aqueduct be built. **h** We must not be afraid of the enemy. **i** I have said nothing about the plan which must be hidden. **j** Now is the time to drink. **10 a** The citizens were gathering in the forum to elect magistrates. **b** I have hired a Greek teacher of rhetoric to educate my son. **c** The boys climbed onto the roofs to watch the procession. **d** Pliny sought ease to write his books. **e** The hunters journeyed into the mountains to catch wild beasts. **f** The athlete ran very quickly to win the prize. **g** Sulla laid down his dictatorship for the sake of preserving the laws. **h** We have sent a gift to delight our mother. **i** Spartacus rebelled for the sake of freeing the slaves. **j** The artist was working carefully to make a beautiful statue.

Unit 11 ex. 1–4

1 a venire **b** amavisse **c** ambulaturus esse **d** tenere **e** sedisse
f cepisse **g** docturus esse **h** aperturus esse **i** frangere **j** fecisse
2 a traditum iri **b** spretus esse **c** iactus esse **d** moveri **e** rogatum iri
f scribi **g** visus esse **h** victum iri **i** vinctus esse **j** cresci **3 a** to have
 fallen **b** to be about to be buried **c** to be about to punish **d** to be
 washed **e** to have ordered **f** to be about to be said **g** to answer
h to be about to work **i** to have been built **j** to be sent **4 a** manere
b agnosci **c** electus esse **d** clausum iri **e** traxisse **f** volaturus esse
g inveniri **h** risisse **i** tensus esse **j** currere

Unit 11 ex. 5–8

5 a I can understand the Latin language. **b** Caesar used to forgive his enemies. **c** You ought to have visited your grandmother. **d** I prefer to live in Gaul. **e** I am willing to sing in front of the guests. **f** The idiots chose to overlook the omens. **g** The young man wished to marry Metella. **h** The emperor decided to build an amphitheatre. **i** I do not dare to provoke the lion. **j** I do not want to sleep in the fields.
6 a We shall persist in searching for a suitable land. **b** Suddenly the dogs began to bark. **c** We are hurrying to greet our mother.
d You hesitated to pour the water. **e** The boys feared to approach the wolves. **f** I shall never cease to have hope. **g** The children are afraid to leave the house. **h** The ambassadors will hurry to put an end to the war. **i** Cicero continued to slander Catiline. **j** When will you stop scolding your slaves? **7 a** No-one knew how to untie that knot. **b** The centurion will teach the young men to be soldiers. **c** I shall never learn

to play on the pipes. **d** Brutus is said to have killed himself. **e** The conspirators grabbed, struck and killed Caesar. **f** The senators are said to have torn Romulus apart. **g** All spiders know how to catch flies. **h** The bakers were thought to have killed the villagers with poison. **i** The teacher used to teach his pupils to love peace. **j** Nero is said to have killed his mother. **8 a** candidato favere debemus. **b** dormire malo. **c** nare discimus. **d** clamare desines. **e** discedere constituerunt. **f** scit pugnare. **g** te scribere docebo. **h** clamare perseveratis. **i** audeo Romanis resistere. **j** effigiem dei videre cupimus.

Unit 11 ex. 9–12

9 a regere regimini **b** parce parcite **c** lenire lenimini **d** ama amate
e agnoscere agnoscimini **f** aperire aperimini **g** responde respondete
h vinci vincite **i** persuadere persuademini **j** rape rapite **10 a** Citizens,
 be warned by me. **b** Seize the day. **c** Bring these burdens to the
 harbour. **d** Hello pupils. Hello teacher. **e** Accept this gift on behalf of
 your supporters. **f** Walk with me to the forum, senators. **g** Give me
 the lamp, Aladdin! **h** Either learn or leave. **i** Let there be peace in the
 world. **j** Hello and goodbye, friend. **11 a** Don't do that, boys. **b** Do
 not wake sleeping dogs. **c** Ladies, do not buy clothes somewhere else.
d Don't worry; be happy. **e** Do not be cheated by the shopkeepers,
 young men. **f** Don't be afraid of the dark, my son. **g** Do not eat
 anything bigger than your head. **h** Don't you step on my blue suede
 shoes (lit. on my blue shoes made from pigskin). **i** Do not gild the
 lilies. **j** Do not walk on the lawn. **12 a** cives, nolite sacerdotes
 punire. **b** liberi, fortes este. **c** apage, Tite! nemo tibi credit. **d** da mihi
 sal, Sexte. **e** pueri, nolite ridere meum equum parvum. **f** noli oracula
 praetermittere, Caesar. **g** excipe hospites, domine. **h** id saxum pelle
 celerius, Sisyphe. **i** duc gladiatores in arenam, Maxime. **j** aurum tuum
 in cubiculo cela, Quinte.

Unit 12 ex.1–3

1 a Look it's raining! **b** It is becoming for the Romans to keep the
 peace. **c** Today it suits me to stay at home. **d** It will please you to
 hear the singer. **e** You are not allowed to go into the dining room.
f The thief is not ashamed of his disloyalty. **g** It does not please the
 boys to play in the garden. **h** It is already growing late. **i** We are
 bored with our work. **j** It suits a wise man to keep quiet.

2 a Use must be made of the best plan. **b** It is easy to hide yourself in the mountains. **c** Cassius sailed to Greece. **d** It is necessary to tie the fierce dog up. **e** We shall need money. **f** Our men advanced towards the enemy. **g** It is not possible to withstand the Germans. **h** The sailors needed ropes. **i** It concerns us that he is saved. **j** In the morning it is customary to greet one's patron. **3 a** opus erit vobis nave. **b** heri ninguit. **c** dedecet nos cedere. **d** Caesari placet captivis parcere. **e** taedet puellas carminum. **f** mea refert nos discere. **g** potest cacumina arborum videre. **h** difficile erat speluncas invenire **i** a feminis ventum est ad theatrum. **j** mox lucecet.

Unit 13 ex. 1-3

1 a That man who was sleeping in the cave was very old. **b** Today we want to see those temples which the Romans built. **c** The land from where the stranger has come is almost uninhabited. **d** We have already seen the men whom you have chosen. **e** Whom you will follow we shall follow too. **f** I was waiting for Claudia where the cottage is concealed by the trees. **g** The words which the general had said delighted the soldiers. **h** He leapt in immediately where the enemy were thickest. **i** I know well that man whose son has died. **j** You have never liked the candidate we support. **2 a** London, which seems a very large city, is much smaller than Rome. **b** My wife, who was always a tower of strength to me, is already a grandmother. **c** Athens, which is the capital of Attica, is a very beautiful city. **d** For this reason Cassius became even richer. **e** When this was done, that man departed from the forum very angrily. **f** That man is Catiline who turned out to be a disaster for the state. **g** For this reason we shall not go sailing again. **h** As for what Caesar will do, no-one will be willing to obey. **i** When this was done the Romans rejoiced for many days. **j** Sirius, which is the brightest star, has already risen. **3 a** avem petet ubi nidum vidit. **b** iuvenemne quem Lucretia amat vidisti? **c** quod fecimus, omnes tacebunt. **d** quam ob rem pompa constitit. **e** Brutus, cuius gens nobilis est, rempublicam servavit. **f** canis felem quae murem ceperat cepit. **g** Augustus, quod erat decus temporis sui. **h** anserem quae ova auri pariebat necaverunt. **i** Cloelia quod erat exemplar Romanis. **j** quo facto spectatores plauserunt.

Unit 13 ex. 4-6

4 a When you were wandering in the woods, I was working in the garden. **b** After the thieves stole the togas the doorman was beaten.

c After Valeria had sung, everyone clapped. **d** As soon as the bull came in, we scattered. **e** As soon as their patron arrived, the clients got up. **f** As soon as they saw the buildings they recognized Rome. **g** When the judge said these words the defendant trembled. **h** As soon as the bridge was broken, Horatius dived into the river. **i** After Milo had killed Clodius, he was sent into exile. **j** As often as the cocks crowed, the farmers used to wake up. **5 a** We had prepared the ship before the sailors arrived. **b** While the sun was shining, the bees were making honey. **c** We shall decorate the hall before the guests arrive. **d** The enemy lay hidden until the column came into the pass. **e** We stayed in the camp until the danger was removed. **f** While the priests were sacrificing, the assassin struck me. **g** The poet recited as long as the crowd remained. **h** He put out the fire before the house caught fire. **i** While the dogs are asleep, the thieves will enter the house. **j** The tribune had persisted until the consul had given way. **6 a** dum custodes inter se clamabant captivi effugerunt. **b** mansistine quoad poeta fabulam recitavisset? **c** leo diu latebat antequam arietem petiverit. **d** audiebamus quam diu orator loquebatur. **e** dum Decius appropinquat canis latravit. **f** quotiens catellum tibi emo, alium petis. **g** ianuam pulsabimus dum eam aperias. **h** postquam terra tremuit, mons diruptus est. **i** Marcelle, clavum percute simulac adnuo. **j** donec Iulia in ripa ambulabat, lutrae in flumine ludebant.

Unit 13 ex. 7-9

7 a When the mistress speaks the maidservants listen. **b** When Sulla was dictator, all the senators were in great danger. **c** The conspirators were holding Caesar when Casca struck him. **d** Whenever I see you my voice fails. **e** When they see that gladiator the spectators clap. **f** When you (will) read the book you will understand the story. **g** We were approaching the mountains when the Gauls attacked. **h** As soon as the bridge was destroyed, Horatius hurled himself into the river. **i** Whenever their father entered, the boys laughed. **j** As soon as the gate had been closed, the girl kissed the boy. **8 a** When they had left the mountains behind, the travellers rejoiced. **b** When the guests had arrived Sextus handed out the wine. **c** Since the dogs were barking the thieves scattered. **d** When the sun was rising the guards were asleep. **e** Since Cicero had uncovered this crime he arrested the conspirators. **f** When we had made the journey to Rome we could not find an inn anywhere. **g** Because the hunters were creeping slowly, the boar hid. **h** When Caesar had decided to cross the Rhine he built a bridge. **i** Since the listeners were laughing the poet grew angry.

j Since they had seen the shore the sailors turned the ship.

9 a navem vertebas cum praedones nos oppugnaverunt. **b** cum ad litus pervenissemus deis gratias egimus. **c** domum ambulabam cum canis me petivit. **d** cum primum tintinnabulum sonavit monachi discedessunt. **e** cum Caesarem interfecissent coniurati diffugerunt.

f cum iuvenes aegri erant fur aurum abstulit. **g** cum ursum vidissent pueri diffugessunt. **h** cum luna clara fuerat versipellis ambulavit.

i feminae cantabant cum fila deducerent. **j** cum coquus cenam parabat hospites advenerunt.

Unit 13 ex. 10–12

10 a When the gold was found the miser was stunned. **b** I cannot hear you while the citizens are talking. **c** As the sun was rising, the lady summoned her maidservants. **d** When these words were spoken, the ambassador left quickly. **e** As the soldiers were about to depart, the treaty was renewed. **f** Since a storm was about to arrive, the sailors stayed in the harbour. **g** When the messenger had spoken, the gates were opened. **h** After the victory was announced we sent a letter to our father. **i** After the hostages were killed, the assassin began to despair for his life. **j** When the ship had been repaired the sailors immediately set sail. **11 a** As those maidens sing the sailors go mad. **b** When Claudius and Aemilius were praetors no robbers were convicted. **c** The column wandered through the woods as the guards accompanied the prisoners. **d** When Tarquin was king the Romans constructed the Cloaca Maxima (Great Sewer). **e** As the citizens are in favour, I have put up a statue to my father. **f** As the enemy were about to attack the city, Jupiter thundered. **g** When Marcellus had obtained the money we bought the farm. **h** As the emperor was on the point of killing himself the soldiers mutinied. **i** With Boudicca as queen the Britons sacked Colchester. **j** With a thread as his guide Theseus escaped from the labyrinth. **12 a** Iove fulmen coniecturo Iuno exclamavit. **b** te dormienti cubiculum pinxi. **c** lumine extincto in tenebris ambulabamus. **d** nobis scopam visuris, arbiter certamen finivit. **e** fratre tyranni necato Athenienses vehementer opprimebantur. **f** aqua exhausta milites alveum transibant. **g** piscatoribus harundines ferentibus pueri cibum parabant. **h** Mario imperatore barbaros superabimus. **i** castris positos milites panem fecerunt. **j** Mercurio duce ad terram mortuorum pervenimus.

Unit 14 ex. 1–4

1 a Hold the mirror to see yourself. **b** I am guarding the sheep in case they are eaten by lions. **c** The boy is washing the floor to be praised by his mother. **d** The painters will work hard to paint the hall in one day. **e** I have hidden the map lest that island ever be found. **f** The dogs are barking so that no-one approaches the house. **g** Caesar is fortifying the hill so that the Gauls do not capture the camp. **h** Sieze the day so that happiness does not avoid you. **i** I am calling out all the names so that no-one is left out. **j** Surely you will mend the cart so that we may bring the grain? **2 a a** I mounted the horse to show off my skill. **b** He was burying the bodies so that nothing would be seen. **c** The merchant made a secret chamber to hide the gems inside. **d** The hunters were stalking the stags to provide food for their children. **e** He had sold the farms to pay off the debt. **f** I bought the dog so that Claudius might never be able to hide. **g** The wicked man cut the tree down so that no bird would build its nest there. **h** The girls were reading the books to learn the ancient poems. **i** We had closed the gates so that no-one would be let in. **j** I bolted the door so that we would never revisit the house again. **3 a a** The leader has sent reinforcements to help us. **b** We had hired workmen to build the baths. **c** The athlete trained for a long time to carry the torch more quickly. **d** I have hired this scribe to write my books. **e** The doctor had drained the draught to sleep more deeply. **f** I have gathered soldiers to defend me. **g** Quintia, I have sent gifts to delight you. **h** I have large eyes so that I may see you better. **i** He was demolishing the wall to see more of the garden. **j** The shepherd built a sheepfold so that the sheep would be protected more safely. **4 a** panemne celas ut matrem irrites? **b** agricola agrum spectabat ne ulla vacca effugeret. **c** filios habemus qui nos ulciscantur. **d** portam obseravit ne quis eam aperiret. **e** Sulla nomina hostium proscrisperat ut interficerentur. **f** pavementum lavavi ne ullum lutum videretur. **g** magnos dentes habeo ut te melius consumam. **h** omnibus arcam demonstravi ne me suspicarentur. **i** advenitne Cicero ut orationem audiret? **j** cibum gusta ne quid veneni insit.

Unit 14 ex. 5–8

5 a The king has procured so many soldiers that the expedition will certainly be victorious. **b** Father will be so happy that he will give

us presents. **c** The speed of the wind is so great that we shall not sail today. **d** It is snowing so much that we shall see nothing. **e** The cat is scoffing so many fish she will soon be asleep. **f** He is falling down so many times that he will break his legs. **g** The pauper is so hungry that he will eat his own shoes. **h** The bridge is so weak that even the goats will not cross it. **i** Titus is such a man that he will help the leader very well. **j** She is running so quickly that she will not see the danger. **6 a** The tower is so high that I do not see the roof. **b** Crassus is such a man that he does not bribe supporters. **c** The rocks are so big that the asses cannot carry them. **d** The ground is trembling so much that I am almost falling. **e** So many sheep are blocking the road that the shepherds are at a loss. **f** This bird sings so often that it always delights me. **g** The wagons are so heavy that the bridge is being broken. **h** He speaks so clearly that I can hear all the words. **i** So great is my faith that I am fighting unarmed. **j** The water is so hot that it cannot be drunk. **7 a** Our mother was so kind that she was always loved. **b** I had insulted the magistrate so many times that I was actually arrested. **c** We had crossed such great mountains that we were exhausted. **d** The girls were crying so much that they actually moved the dictator. **e** So many barbarians rushed through the gates that the guards could not resist them. **f** Tarquin had ruled so arrogantly that the citizens actually drove him out. **g** The elephants were so enormous that the Romans feared them greatly. **h** He painted the picture so well that he received many prizes. **i** He used to ride horses so quickly that at last he was actually killed. **j** He had annoyed so many men that he was actually marooned alone on an island. **8 a** Helena tot procos habebat ut maritum deligere potuerit. **b** Marius tantus imperator est ut milites eum fideliter secuturi sint. **c** Pausanias templum ita amavit ut semper id laudaret. **d** tot sumus ut nobis resistere non possis. **e** puer totiens 'lupus' clamabat ut nemo ei crederet. **f** Cato tam probus erat ut non mentiretur. **g** adeo dissenserunt ut Romulus Remum necaverit. **h** tales fabulas Othello narrabat ut Desdemona eum amaret. **i** Victoria non erat femina quam delectares. **j** tam dives est Crassus ut divitias suas ignoret.

Unit 14 ex. 9–12

9 a If Metella marries Aemilius, the mothers of both will be happy. **b** If the Romans take Alexandria, they will rule Egypt. **c** Unless you free us, you will hear nothing of your friend. **d** If Aulus catches a large fish, we shall eat it today. **e** If you do not give me a present

tomorrow, I shall howl. **f** Unless Fabius runs, he will not catch the hare. **g** The house will certainly collapse, unless the walls are repaired. **h** If you send the emperor a letter, he will give you advice. **i** If the cow gives birth to a bullock, I shall not sell him. **j** Unless you come to me, I shall come to you. **10 a** Unless you have got the money, we have lost the farm. **b** If the brigands were not careful, they were in great danger. **c** If you are leaving, we are happy. **d** If the birds are singing, spring is on the way. **e** If we saw any ship, we ran to the harbour. **f** If you have not seen Naples, you clearly have not lived. **g** If Clodia loved you, you were very fortunate. **h** Unless Egnatius smiles, his wife is wretched. **i** If they were not working in the fields, they wasted the whole day. **j** If I have insulted the magistrate, I have been very foolish. **11 a** Ask Mother, if you can find her. **b** If the door has not been closed, the dog will escape. **c** If I have sold broken jars, the money will be returned to you. **d** If the boys were absent, they will pay the penalty. **e** If Sempronia loves Quintus, let her inform him. **f** Young man, drink the potion, unless you are afraid. **g** If you ever looked at me, I used to blush. **h** Kill the traitor, unless he confesses. **i** Seize the opportunity, if it is being offered to you. **j** If you have seen that beautiful city, you are truly fortunate. **12 a** nisi coquus pavonem accendet, cena optima erit. **b** si Cyrus vas fregit, punietur. **c** si potionem biberis, iuventute sempiterna uteris. **d** urbs capietur, nisi legatus foedus renovaverit. **e** si captivi non vincti sunt, custodes officium neglexerunt. **f** si pons fractus est, exercitus transire non potest. **g** si Titus mihi tabulam patefaciet, vos ad speluncam ducam. **h** si umquam patronum salutaveramus, nobis sportulam dabat. **i** si Valgus non est in thermis, eum pete in foro. **j** si canes dormiunt, feles superbe circum hortum ambulat.

Unit 14 ex. 13–16

13 a If the river were wider, we would not cross it. **b** If Manlius were not here, the meeting would not take place. **c** If the keys were lost, the conspirators would not be entering the house. **d** Unless you are careful, you will be caught. **e** If the river were not being diverted, the town would be flooded. **f** If the vase were broken, someone would be punished. **g** If Cicero were speaking, very many people would be present. **h** If the signal were given, the soldiers would advance. **i** If the children complain, let them stay at home. **j** Unless the praetorian guard support the emperor, he would without doubt be expelled. **14 a** If we were not Romans, we would not

wear togas. **b** If father were a soldier he would defend the Roman empire. **c** If I were less careful, the thieves would come in. **d** If the citizens were not superstitious, they would not worship the gods. **e** If you were attacked, many people would come to help you. **f** If you were in the city, you would see many sights. **g** If I were younger, I would run with the athletes. **h** If we were not ambassadors, we would be killed. **i** If the consuls were not here, the soldiers would be less brave. **j** If you were innocent, you would not be afraid.

15 a If Caesar had not crossed the Rubicon, war would not have broken out. **b** If he had kept the ring safe, he would be invincible. **c** If they had not heard his voice, they would not have found Publius. **d** If Cleopatra were not beautiful, Antony would not have loved her. **e** If the monk had understood the Greek language, he would have read the book. **f** If he were not a boy, the robber would have killed him. **g** If you had examined the letter, you would have recognized the handwriting. **h** If he had not tasted the food, he would have been killed by the poison. **i** If you had watched the games, you would have seen Spartacus. **j** If the nightingale had sung, we would have been greatly delighted. **16 a** si senatores te expellant, nos ipsi te sequamur. **b** si periculum vidissemus, non inermes advenissemus. **c** si via latior esset, plaustra non intercluderentur. **d** si Lucium non credidissetis, innocentem damnavissetis. **e** si inter busta dormiamus, umbrae nos terreant. **f** si Larcus benignior esset, servi eum amarent. **g** si pauper esset, Cassius humilior esset. **h** si omnia consulisset, Caesar non discessisset. **i** si socii essent, tesseram clamarent. **j** si corpus videamus, tibi credamus.

Unit 15 ex. 1-3

1 a We announced that an abandoned ship was approaching. **b** I often say that she is lucky. **c** The Gauls have said that the Druids are not being concealed. **d** I shall say that you are being dressed. **e** Do you think that Septimus is feeding the animals? **f** You did not say that the guards were asleep, did you? **g** They deny that Catiline is innocent. **h** You will see that I am very brave. **i** The citizens believe that you are being overlooked. **j** Everyone knows that the Carthaginians are treacherous. **2 a** We knew that the conspirators would be killed. **b** I think that Catiline will abandon us. **c** Do you think that my plays will be performed by very famous actors? **d** Had you known that Marius would be arrested? **e** Surely you see that the Gauls are going to burn the village? **f** You used to say that Caesar

would not be dictator. **g** The bandits did not believe that the island would be defended. **h** The leader announced that the army would set off immediately. **i** I have told you that Helen will leave tomorrow. **j** He denies that the girl will be chosen. **3 a** Are you saying that she has married Tiberius? **b** We know that the farmers have sold all their cows. **c** We used to think that the fatherland had been saved by Cicero. **d** Surely you see that this horse has been washed? **e** The spies announced that reinforcements had arrived. **f** We shall deny that the old man had found the gold. **g** Valerius said that the soothsayer lied. **h** Do you deny that you have ever seen this woman? **i** We see that the guests have been well entertained. **j** The guards were denying that the prisoner had been tied up.

Unit 15 ex. 4–7

4 a Quintus knew that he would not pay the penalty for his crime. **b** Marius used to think that he would be killed. **c** Cato scolded the young man and said that he would prosecute him. **d** The citizens do not know that they have been tricked by Tarquin. **e** Marcus said that he had not cut the tree down. **f** The soldiers denied that they had run away. **g** Egnatius says that he was robbed by bandits. **h** The senators had announced that they were going to choose Pompey. **i** Sempronia thought that she had found a knife. **j** The scribe is denying that he wrote these words. **5 a** It has been said that the Romans are intractable in war. **b** I say that we shall not be caught if we walk slowly. **c** Did you say that you had not been captured? **d** Horatius said that he would guard the bridge. **e** It is agreed that Marius saved Rome. **f** It was said that a dolphin had swum into the harbour. **g** We did not know that you were going to paint a picture. **h** It had been denied that Augustus was ill. **i** I used not to think that the citizens would ever have voted for Cornelius unless they had been bribed by him. **j** I know you will be safe if you heed my words. **6 a** Surely you will promise that you will make the journey with me? **b** The enemy are threatening that they will burn the city. **c** I swear that I will always be faithful. **d** The patron promised that he would give his clients gifts. **e** Are you ordering me to leave the city? **f** The magistrate forbade the bakers to form a guild. **g** We were hoping that you would buy the farm. **h** Publius is happy that his grandfather is recovering. **i** I want you to carry the water from the spring. **j** We are grieving that Cicero has been killed. **7 a** Calpurnia putat se a cane petiturum iri. **b** Catullus scit se Clodium amare. **c** scio vulpem effugiturum esse si porta

aperiatur. **d** dictum est Neronem matrem suam necavisse.

e promiserunt novam statuam non casuram esse. **f** vetasne me fabas consumere? **g** nolunt nos tapetam novam videre. **h** gaudeo uxorem tuam gravidam esse. **i** iurat se patrem ulturum esse **j** speramus eam testudinem capturam esse.

Unit 15 ex. 8–10

8 a Caelia is asking whether the workmen will be working tomorrow. **b** I shall ask whether Hortensius is going to bring his children or not. **c** I have asked when the queen arrived. **d** Tullius will ask Decimus whether the gold has been found. **e** Decius does not want to ask how it happened. **f** Boys, ask your mother whether she wants to hear the poet. **g** Have you asked me whether I am happy? **h** We have asked whether Servius loves Caecilia or not. **i** The tribunes will ask who is going to reveal the plan. **j** Ask how many wagons there are. **9 a** We asked why the girls were not singing. **b** The miners asked whether they were going to receive their wages or not. **c** You surely did not ask whether Titus had kissed Livia? **d** I had not asked whom the leader would choose. **e** Romulus did not ask what had happened. **f** The guide had asked us how we were making the journey. **g** They were always asking when they would arrive there. **h** We had asked how many times Marius had been consul. **i** Surely Sulla asked whether the army had been beaten? **j** I want to see whether the ghost will come or not. **10 a** rogavistine num portae clausae sint necne? **b** roga num pueri in horto laborent. **c** rogabamus num statua viveret. **d** rogaverat num agricola esses. **e** cives rogant quis regina futura sit. **f** rogavitne num vulneratus essem? **g** rogant num cena parata sit. **h** rogaveram num Marius adventurus esset. **i** ancilla rogat num dormias necne. **j** quis scit quid acciderit?

Unit 15 ex. 11–13

11 a The old woman is advising the king to buy the books. **b** Stephanus persuaded his master to free Furius. **c** Holconius is seeing to it that the new baths are being built. **d** Sextus was forbidden to touch the drink. **e** The farmers will demand that the king abdicates. **f** We encouraged Plautus to write plays. **g** We shall order Terence to cook dinner. **h** Jupiter had allowed Minerva to help the Greeks. **i** Mother will allow us to chase the chickens. **j** He has ordered us to wash the floor. **12 a** We wish that father would show us the bear. **b** We had wished

that Lucius would not be drunk. **c** I want you to marry me. **d** Cicero wished that Catiline had been killed. **e** We all prefer you to stay at home. **f** The porters long for the burdens not to be heavy. **g** I wish I had found the ring. **h** You wished Cato had been elected. **i** Do you wish that the treasure had been found? **j** Hadrian desires that a wall be built. **13 a** postulo ut servum manumittas. **b** nos hortantur ut castra oppugnemus. **c** curavi ne togae sordidae essent. **d** impera custodi ne dormiat. **e** vos obsecro ne Caesarem interficiatis. **f** te monuimus ne in silvas errares. **g** cupimus ut ab aula discedas. **h** vetuerant pueros in flumine natate. **i** ea ei persuaserat ut malum consumeret. **j** eis permittemus ut equum emant.

Unit 16 ex. 1-3

1 a Although the woman was beautiful, the miser suspected her. **b** Although the standard had been captured, the legionaries fought bravely. **c** Although the shopkeepers may be unsophisticated, yet I shall buy many dresses. **d** Although the sword is fixed in the stone, Arthur will withdraw it. **e** Although Gaius is only seven years old, he nevertheless plays among the youths. **f** Even though it is growing late, the boys are creeping into the woods. **g** Even though Father has left, we are working hard. **h** Even if the gladiator is huge, I shall fight with him. **i** Although you have never seen my grandfather, you will certainly like him. **j** We would have beaten the barbarians even if the army had not been prepared. **2 a** Aemilia does not love Caelius because, no doubt, his father is poor. **b** Cicero slew the conspirators because, he said, the state was in the greatest danger. **c** Quintus will not go hunting, doubtless because he is afraid of the wild beasts. **d** The old man will arrive late because he left late. **e** Cassius hates Caesar because, no doubt, he loves Rome. **f** I sent the dog out because he was chasing the cat. **g** You are rich Cassius because, some say, you are lucky. **h** They have bought rods because they will be fishing tomorrow. **i** Since the journey is certainly long I shall go with you. **j** The boys are quarrelling because they are tired. **3 a** quamvis Alexander vulneratus esset, ferocius pugnavit. **b** quamquam Gaius ignavus est, rotam reficiet. **c** etsi regem necavisses, non effugissemus. **d** etsi flumen latissimum erat, ad ripam pervenimus. **e** mures ludunt quia feles abest. **f** Roma incensa est quod Nero aulam novam aedificare vellet. **g** rex me arcessivit quippe qui me admiretur. **h** princeps veniet cum te amet. **i** Titus non pugnabit quoniam mitis est. **j** quamquam vos videre non possumus, nihilominus verba vestra audire possumus.

Unit 16 ex. 4-7

4 a Let the boys eat dinner, provided that they have washed. **b** Let the workmen sleep today provided that they work hard tomorrow. **c** Invite Caecilius, provided that he does not bring his brother. **d** I shall choose a dress provided that you buy it. **e** Let the children talk as long as they are not fighting among themselves. **f** You will certainly see those young men, provided that the girls are also there. **g** Let the boys watch the play, provided that they are quiet. **h** Explore the house boys, provided that you do not wander into that part. **i** Let your daughter choose a husband, as long as she loves him. **j** Let the dogs play in the atrium provided that they do not break anything. **5 a** The poor man is eating the bread as if he may not eat again. **b** The she-wolf nourished the boys as if they were cubs. **c** The boys are playing just as the men are working. **d** Why have you spoken as if Catiline were not a traitor? **e** My son spends money as if he had received his inheritance. **f** A lion really does live in the cave, just as you often assert. **g** The young men are going sailing as if the winds are not strong. **h** The candidate built new baths, as he promised. **i** The spectators clapped as though the play had ended. **j** A poet makes men wiser just as a teacher teaches boys. **6 a** The fishermen were afraid that the nets would be broken. **b** The leaders are afraid that the reinforcements may not arrive. **c** We fear that Titus may not find the chest. **d** The shepherd was afraid that the wolves had taken the lamb. **e** The teacher was afraid that the children had walked into the woods. **f** The athletes fear that they will not win the prizes. **g** I was afraid that I would not get the money. **h** Cassius had been afraid that the traitor had revealed the plan to the consuls. **i** Is there a danger that we may be captured? **j** I was afraid that Caesar had crossed the Rubicon. **7 a** Rufus gladium gerit tamquam miles sit. **b** appropinquant iuvenes dummodo inermes sint. **c** periculum erat ne murus rueret. **d** coniurator sicario persuasit sicut serpens praedam decipit. **e** veniat Cicero dum ne loquatur. **f** timueruntne ne Sulla eum inveniret? **g** cras apud te cenabo, Tite, dummodo vinum tuum bonum sit. **h** me aspexit quasi me prius vidisset. **i** timebam ne exploratores cibum non invenissent. **j** captivos traduxit ceu servi essent.

Unit 16 ex. 8-10

8 a We had doubted whether you would arrive on time. **b** Who doubted but that Cicero would free the slave. **c** There is a doubt as to

whether the Carthaginians have really been beaten. **d** They doubted whether Valerius had written the will. **e** It is uncertain where the stranger has come from. **f** You were inclined to think that such a candidate would be very bad. **g** There was a doubt about whether Ulysses returned home. **h** Caesar was inclined to think that Cassius was not loyal. **i** Cloelia was inclined to think that the maidens would follow. **j** There was no doubt but that the ship was sinking.

9 a Valerius discouraged the boys from making a long journey. **b** The magistrates forbade the citizens to receive the ambassadors. **c** It is forbidden for us to defend that traitor. **d** The king did not prevent the prisoners from being freed. **e** The guards were being hindered from opening the gates. **f** Will they forbid us to touch the sacrifice?

g The centurion prevented the soldiers from sleeping for a long time. **h** The asses are hindered by heavy burdens from crossing the bridge. **i** Nothing stands in the way of us being friends. **j** Surely you will not prevent us from seeing the gladiators?

10 a Galli a gurgite impediti sunt ne flumen transierint. **b** Portia nos vetuit anseres vexare. **c** haud dubium est quin Romani vicum incendant. **d** omina non impediunt imperatorem ne proficiscatur. **e** Corneli, prohibebisne canes ne filium meum petant? **f** dubitavimus an discedere malles.

g dubito num Servius equitare possit. **h** quidam dubitaverunt num Augustus versus amaret. **i** magistratus, prohibete illum ne domum intret. **j** dubium est num fabri pontem perfecerint.

Unit 16 ex. 11–13

11 a No soldier was fighting so bravely but that he deserves a prize.

b It cannot happen that Claudius is elected. **c** No woman was so rich that she was not prudent. **d** There was no-one who would not follow Alexander the Great. **e** There is no-one who does not admire Brutus. **f** No boy is so good that he does not steal my apples. **g** It cannot happen that Caesar becomes dictator. **h** It cannot happen that Cloelia be given back. **i** There is no-one who does not believe that speaker. **j** There is no leader so harsh as not to spare prisoners.

12 a Why should the tribune not stand up to the consul? **b** That gladiator is very famous; indeed he will soon be a freedman.

c Well then, brother, save the infant! **d** Why should the refugee not stay here? **e** The young men were very strong; indeed Hercules had killed a lion. **f** So move the flock then, shepherds. **g** Why should a mother not love her son? **h** Well come on, boys, catch the ball.

i How couldn't you have seen that ball? **j** Why should we not pick

those flowers? **13 a** Caecilius non tam pauper est quin maiorem domum emere possit. **b** non potest fieri quin foedus renovetur. **c** nemo erat quin de nuptiis non cognoverit. **d** nullus nodus tam implicatus est quin solvi possit. **e** quin Sextus nos credat? **f** Quintus me non amat; quin heri mihi maledixit vituperavit. **g** quin Felix equum vendat? **h** nullus miles est quin mortem timeat. **i** quin carpite diem, liberi. **j** quin dominum tam crudelem adverser?